

FUSED PENTACYCLIC IMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES

The present invention relates to classes of fused pentacyclic imidazole derivatives, and to their use in therapy. More particularly, this invention is concerned with pharmacologically active substituted fused pentacyclic benzimidazole derivatives and
5 analogs thereof. In particular, the present invention is concerned with 6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one derivatives and analogs thereof.

These compounds are modulators of the signalling of $\text{TNF}\alpha$, and are accordingly of benefit as pharmaceutical agents, especially in the treatment of adverse inflammatory and
10 autoimmune disorders, neurological and neurodegenerative disorders, pain and nociceptive disorders, cardiovascular disorders, metabolic disorders, ocular disorders, and oncological disorders.

$\text{TNF}\alpha$ is the prototypical member of the Tumour Necrosis Factor (TNF) superfamily of proteins that share a primary function of regulating cell survival and cell
15 death. One structural feature common to all known members of the TNF superfamily is the formation of trimeric complexes that bind to, and activate, specific TNF superfamily receptors. By way of example, $\text{TNF}\alpha$ exists in soluble and transmembrane forms and signals through two receptors, known as TNFR1 and TNFR2, with distinct functional endpoints.

20 Various products capable of modulating $\text{TNF}\alpha$ activity are already commercially available. All are approved for the treatment of inflammatory and autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn's disease. All currently approved products are macromolecular and act by inhibiting the binding of human $\text{TNF}\alpha$ to its receptor. Typical macromolecular $\text{TNF}\alpha$ inhibitors include anti- $\text{TNF}\alpha$ antibodies; and soluble $\text{TNF}\alpha$
25 receptor fusion proteins. Examples of commercially available anti- $\text{TNF}\alpha$ antibodies include fully human antibodies such as adalimumab (Humira®) and golimumab (Simponi®), chimeric antibodies such as infliximab (Remicade®), and pegylated Fab' fragments such as certolizumab pegol (Cimzia®). An example of a commercially available soluble $\text{TNF}\alpha$ receptor fusion protein is etanercept (Enbrel®).

30 TNF superfamily members, including $\text{TNF}\alpha$ itself, are implicated in a variety of physiological and pathological functions that are believed to play a part in a range of conditions of significant medical importance (see, for example, M.G. Tansey & D.E.

Szymkowski, *Drug Discovery Today*, 2009, **14**, 1082-1088; and F.S. Carneiro *et al.*, *J. Sexual Medicine*, 2010, **7**, 3823-3834).

The compounds in accordance with the present invention, being potent modulators of human TNF α activity, are therefore beneficial in the treatment and/or prevention of various human ailments. These include autoimmune and inflammatory disorders; neurological and neurodegenerative disorders; pain and nociceptive disorders; cardiovascular disorders; metabolic disorders; ocular disorders; and oncological disorders.

In addition, the compounds in accordance with the present invention may be beneficial as pharmacological standards for use in the development of new biological tests and in the search for new pharmacological agents. Thus, in one embodiment, the compounds of this invention may be useful as radioligands in assays for detecting pharmacologically active compounds. In an alternative embodiment, certain compounds of this invention may be useful for coupling to a fluorophore to provide fluorescent conjugates that can be utilised in assays (e.g. a fluorescence polarisation assay) for detecting pharmacologically active compounds.

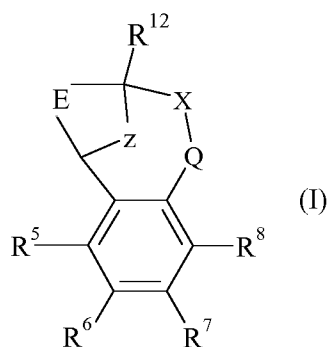
International patent applications WO2013/186229A1, WO2014/009295A1 and WO2014/009296A1 relate to fused imidazole derivatives which are modulators of the signalling of TNF α .

International patent applications WO2015/086525 and WO2015/086526 published June 18th 2015 relate to fused tricyclic imidazole derivatives which are modulators of the signalling of TNF α .

None of the prior art available to date, however, discloses or suggests the precise structural class of fused pentacyclic imidazole derivatives as provided by the present invention.

The present invention provides a compound of formula (I) or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof :

- 3 -

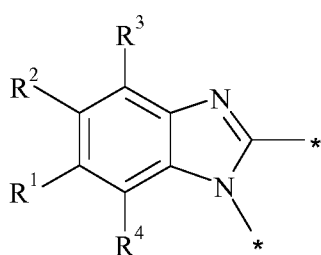


wherein

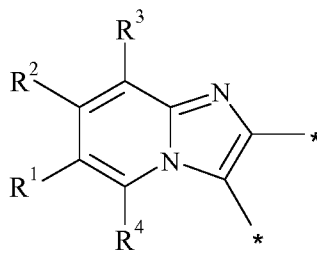
-X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -CO-N(R^f)-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, -SO₂-N(R^f)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-, -CH₂-CH₂-, -O-CH₂-, -CH₂-O-, -S-CH₂-, -SO-CH₂-, -SO₂-CH₂-, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -CH₂-N(R^g)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-, -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Z represents methylene;

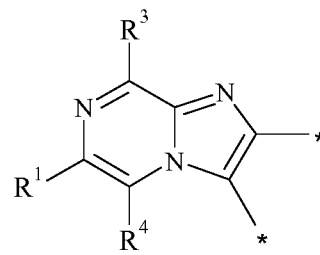
10 E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system selected from the groups of formula (Ea), (Eb) and (Ec),



(Ea)



(Eb)



(Ec)

wherein the asterisk (*) represents the site of attachment of E to the remainder of the molecule;

15 R¹ represents hydrogen, halogen, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, -OR^a, -SR^a, -SOR^a, -SO₂R^a, -NR^bR^c, -NR^cCOR^d, -NR^cCO₂R^d, -NHCONR^bR^c, -NR^cSO₂R^e, -COR^d, -CO₂R^d, -CONR^bR^c, -SO₂NR^bR^c, or -S(O)(N-R^b)R^e; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₇ cycloalkenyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 20 aryl-, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₇)cycloalkenyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₉)bicycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-

heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl- or (C₄₋₉)spiroheterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R¹ represents (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl-, which group may be
5 optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R² represents hydrogen, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy or -OR^a; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl; or C₁₋₆
10 alkyl, optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R⁵ and R⁸ independently represent hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, cyano, trifluoromethyl, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, -OR^a, or C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R⁶ and R⁷ independently represent hydrogen, halogen, trifluoromethyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl
15 or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;

R¹² represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R^b and R^c independently represent hydrogen or trifluoromethyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇
20 cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or

R^b and R^c, when taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are both
25 attached, represent a heterocyclic moiety selected from azetidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, oxazolidin-3-yl, isoxazolidin-2-yl, thiazolidin-3-yl, isothiazolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl, morpholin-4-yl, thiomorpholin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, homopiperidin-1-yl, homomorpholin-4-yl, homopiperazin-1-yl, (imino)(oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, (oxo)thiazinan-4-yl and (dioxo)thiazinan-4-yl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more
30 substituents;

R^d represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, aryl, C_{3-7} heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R^e represents C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R^f represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, or C_{3-7} heterocycloalkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; and

R^g represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{3-7} heterocycloalkyl, -CO-(C_{1-6})alkyl, or -SO₂-(C_{1-6})alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R^g represents -CO-(C_{3-7})heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C_{3-7})cycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C_{3-7})heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl or -SO₂-heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R^g represents heteroaryl or (C_{2-6})alkoxycarbonyl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

The present invention also provides a compound of formula (I) as defined above or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in therapy.

In another aspect, the present invention also provides a compound of formula (I) as defined above or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in the treatment and/or prevention of disorders for which the administration of a modulator of TNF α function is indicated.

In another aspect, the present invention provides a compound of formula (I) as defined above or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment and/or prevention of an inflammatory or autoimmune disorder, a neurological or neurodegenerative disorder, pain or a nociceptive disorder, a cardiovascular disorder, a metabolic disorder, an ocular disorder, or an oncological disorder.

In another aspect, the present invention provides for the use of a compound of formula (I) as defined above, or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament useful for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders for which the administration of a modulator of TNF α function is indicated.

In another aspect, the present invention provides for the use of a compound of formula (I) as defined above, or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament useful for the treatment of an inflammatory or autoimmune disorder, a neurological or neurodegenerative disorder, pain or a nociceptive disorder, a cardiovascular disorder, a metabolic disorder, an ocular disorder, or an oncological disorder.

The present invention also provides a method for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders for which the administration of a modulator of TNF α function is indicated which comprises administering to a patient in need of such treatment an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined above, or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another aspect, the present invention provides a method for the treatment and/or prevention of an inflammatory or autoimmune disorder, a neurological or neurodegenerative disorder, pain or a nociceptive disorder, a cardiovascular disorder, a metabolic disorder, an ocular disorder, or an oncological disorder, which comprises administering to a patient in need of such treatment an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined above or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Where any of the groups in the compounds of formula (I) above is stated to be optionally substituted, this group may be unsubstituted, or substituted by one or more substituents. Typically, such groups will be unsubstituted, or substituted by one or two substituents. Suitable substituents for each particular groups of compounds formula (I) are further described here after in the present specification.

The present invention includes within its scope salts of the compounds of formula (I) above. For use in medicine, the salts of the compounds of formula (I) will be pharmaceutically acceptable salts. Other salts may, however, be useful in the preparation of the compounds of use in the invention or of their pharmaceutically acceptable salts. Standard principles underlying the selection and preparation of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are described, for example, in *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Salts: Properties, Selection and Use*, ed. P.H. Stahl & C.G. Wermuth, Wiley-VCH, 2002.

The present invention includes within its scope solvates of the compounds of formula (I) above. Such solvates may be formed with common organic solvents or water.

The present invention also includes within its scope co-crystals of the compounds of formula (I) above. The technical term “co-crystal” is used to describe the situation where neutral molecular components are present within a crystalline compound in a definite stoichiometric ratio. The preparation of pharmaceutical co-crystals enables
5 modifications to be made to the crystalline form of an active pharmaceutical ingredient, which in turn can alter its physicochemical properties without compromising its intended biological activity (see *Pharmaceutical Salts and Co-crystals*, ed. J. Wouters & L. Quere, RSC Publishing, 2012).

The present invention includes within its scope N-oxides of compounds of formula
10 (I) above. Particular examples of N-oxides according to the present invention include pyrimidine N-oxide and pyridine N-oxide as illustrated in the Examples. The term “alkyl” as used herein refers to aliphatic hydrocarbon groups which may be straight or branched and may comprise 1 to 20 carbon atoms in the chain, suitably 1 to 15 carbon atoms in the chain, more suitably 1 to 10 carbon atoms in the chain. Suitable alkyl groups which may
15 be present on the compounds of use in the invention include straight-chained and branched C₁₋₆ alkyl groups, for example C₁₋₄ alkyl groups. Illustrative alkyl groups include methyl and ethyl groups, and straight-chained or branched propyl, butyl and pentyl groups. Suitable alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, and isopropyl. Derived expressions such as “C₁₋₆ alkoxy”, “C₁₋₆ alkylthio”, “C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl” and “C₁₋₆ alkylamino” are to
20 be construed accordingly.

The term “C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl” as used herein refers to monovalent groups of 3 to 7 carbon atoms derived from a saturated monocyclic hydrocarbon. Suitable C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl groups may comprise benzo-fused analogues thereof. Illustrative C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, benzocyclobutenyl, cyclopentyl, indanyl, cyclohexyl and
25 cycloheptyl.

The term “C₄₋₉ bicycloalkyl” as used herein refers to monovalent groups of 4 to 9 carbon atoms derived from a saturated bicyclic hydrocarbon. The term “C₄₋₇ cycloalkenyl” as used herein refers to monovalent groups of 4 to 7 carbon atoms derived from a partially unsaturated monocyclic hydrocarbon. Illustrative C₄₋₇cycloalkenyl groups include
30 cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl and cycloheptenyl.

The term “aryl” as used herein, refers to an unsaturated aromatic carbocyclic group of from 6 to 14 carbon atoms having a single ring (e.g. phenyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g. naphthyl). Illustrative aryl groups include phenyl.

Illustrative aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl groups include benzyl, phenylethyl and phenylpropyl.

5 The term “C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl” as used herein refers to saturated monocyclic rings containing 3 to 7 carbon atoms and at least one heteroatom selected from oxygen, sulphur and nitrogen, and may comprise benzo-fused analogues thereof. Illustrative heterocycloalkyl groups include oxetanyl, azetidiny, tetrahydrofuranyl, dihydrobenzo-furanyl, dihydrobenzothienyl, pyrrolidiny, indoliny, dihydroisoindoliny, isoindoliny,
 10 oxazolidiny, thiazolidiny, isothiazolidiny, imidazolidiny, tetrahydropyranyl, chromanyl, tetrahydro-thiopyranyl, piperidiny, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoliny, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoliny, piperaziny, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoxaliny, hexahydro-[1,2,5]thiadiazolo[2,3-*a*]pyraziny, homopiperaziny, morpholiny, benzoxaziny, thiomorpholiny, azepanyl, oxazepanyl, diazepanyl, thiadiazepanyl, azocanyl,
 15 (imino)(oxo)thiazinanyl, (oxo)thiazinanyl, (dioxo)thiazinanyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl, (oxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl, (dioxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl and (oxo)thiomorpholiny.

 The term “C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkenyl” as used herein refers to monounsaturated or polyunsaturated monocyclic rings containing 3 to 7 carbon atoms and at least one heteroatom selected from oxygen, sulphur and nitrogen, and may comprise benzo-fused
 20 analogues thereof. Illustrative heterocycloalkenyl groups include thiazoliny, imidazoliny, dihydropyranyl, dihydrothiopyranyl, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridiny, 1,2-dihydropyridiny and 1,2-dihydropyrimidiny. The term “C₄₋₉ heterobicycloalkyl” as used herein refers to a C₄₋₉ bicycloalkyl as defined herein, wherein one or more of the carbon atoms have been replaced by one or more heteroatoms selected from oxygen, sulphur and
 25 nitrogen. Illustrative heterobicycloalkyl groups include 3-azabicyclo[3.1.0]hexanyl, 2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl, 6-azabicyclo[3.2.0]heptanyl, 3-azabicyclo[3.1.1]heptanyl, 3-azabicyclo[4.1.0]heptanyl, 2-oxabicyclo[2.2.2]octanyl, quinuclidiny, 2-oxa-5-azabicyclo-[2.2.2]octanyl, 3-azabicyclo[3.2.1]octanyl, 8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]octanyl, 3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]octanyl, 3,8-diazabicyclo[3.2.1]octanyl, 3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonanyl, 3-oxa-7-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonanyl and 3,9-diazabicyclo[4.2.1]nonanyl. Illustrative
 30 heterobicycloalkyl groups additionally include 3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl.

The term "C₄₋₉ spiroheterocycloalkyl" as used herein refers to saturated bicyclic ring systems containing 4 to 9 carbon atoms and at least one heteroatom selected from oxygen, sulphur and nitrogen, in which the two rings are linked by a common atom.

Illustrative spiroheterocycloalkyl groups include 5-azaspiro[2.3]hexanyl, 5-azaspiro-
5 [2.4]heptanyl, 2-azaspiro[3.3]heptanyl, 2-oxa-6-azaspiro[3.3]heptanyl, 2-oxa-6-azaspiro-
[3.4]octanyl, 2-oxa-6-azaspiro[3.5]nonanyl, 7-oxa-2-azaspiro[3.5]nonanyl, 2-oxa-7-
azaspiro[3.5]nonanyl and 2,4,8-triazaspiro[4.5]decanyl.

The term "heteroaryl" as used herein represents aromatic carbocyclic groups of from 5 to 14 carbon atoms having a single ring or multiple condensed rings, wherein one
10 or more of the said carbon atoms have been replaced by one or more heteroatoms selected from oxygen, sulphur and nitrogen. Illustrative heteroaryl groups include furyl, benzofuryl, dibenzofuryl, thienyl, benzothienyl, thieno[2,3-*c*]pyrazolyl, thieno[3,4-*b*][1,4]dioxinyl, dibenzothienyl, pyrrolyl, indolyl, 2,3-dihydro-1H-isoindolyl, pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[3,2-*c*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[3,4-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazolo[1,5-*a*]pyridinyl, pyrazolo[3,4-*d*]pyrimidinyl, indazolyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydroindazolyl, oxazolyl, benzoxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, benzothiazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, benzimidazolyl, imidazo[2,1-*b*]thiazolyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridinyl, imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridinyl, purinyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyrimidinyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyrazinyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, [1,2,4]triazolo[1,5-*a*]pyrimidinyl, benzotriazolyl, tetrazolyl,
15 pyridinyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, naphthyridinyl, pyridazinyl, cinnolinyl, phthalazinyl, pyrimidinyl, quinazolinyl, pyrazinyl, quinoxalinyl, pteridinyl, triazinyl and chromenyl groups.

The term "halogen" as used herein is intended to include fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine atoms, typically fluorine, chlorine or bromine atoms.

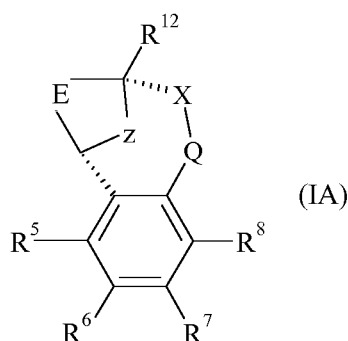
25 Where the compounds of formula (I) have one or more asymmetric centres, they may accordingly exist as enantiomers. Where the compounds of use in the invention possess two or more asymmetric centres, they may additionally exist as diastereomers. The invention is to be understood to extend to the use of all such enantiomers and diastereomers, and to mixtures thereof in any proportion, including racemates. Formula (I)
30 and the formulae depicted hereinafter are intended to represent all individual stereoisomers and all possible mixtures thereof, unless stated or shown otherwise. In addition, compounds of formula (I) may exist as tautomers, for example keto ($\text{CH}_2\text{C}=\text{O}$) $\leftrightarrow$ enol

(CH=CHOH) tautomers or amide (NHC=O) $\leftrightarrow$ hydroxyimine (N=COH) tautomers. Formula (I) and the formulae depicted hereinafter are intended to represent all individual tautomers and all possible mixtures thereof, unless stated or shown otherwise.

An illustrative example of a tautomer in accordance with the present invention, is
 5 2-oxo-(1H)-pyridinyl which is a tautomer of 2-hydroxy-pyridinyl.

Another illustrative example of a tautomer in accordance with the present invention, is 2-oxo-(1H)-pyrimidinyl which is a tautomer of 2-hydroxy-pyrimidinyl.

A particular sub-class of compounds in accordance with the present invention is the sub-class of compounds of formula (IA), or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically
 10 acceptable salt thereof,



wherein E, Z, -X-Q-, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above.

It is to be understood that each individual atom present in formula (I), or in the formulae depicted hereinafter, may in fact be present in the form of any of its naturally
 15 occurring isotopes, with the most abundant isotope(s) being preferred. Thus, by way of example, each individual hydrogen atom present in formula (I), or in the formulae depicted hereinafter, may be present as a ¹H, ²H (deuterium) or ³H (tritium) atom, preferably ¹H. Similarly, by way of example, each individual carbon atom present in formula (I), or in the formulae depicted hereinafter, may be present as a ¹²C, ¹³C or ¹⁴C atom, preferably ¹²C.

20 Generally, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -CO-N(R^f)-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, -SO₂-N(R^f)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-, -CH₂-CH₂-, -O-CH₂-, -CH₂-O-, -S-CH₂-, -SO-CH₂-, -SO₂-CH₂-, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -CH₂-N(R^g)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-, -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be substituted by
 25 one or more substituents.

More generally, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -CO-N(R^f)-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, -SO₂-N(R^f)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-, -CH₂-CH₂-, -O-CH₂-, -CH₂-O-, -S-CH₂-, -SO-CH₂-, -SO₂-CH₂-, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -CH₂-N(R^g)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-, -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)- or -N(R^f)-C(S)-.

5 Typically, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -CO-N(R^f)-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, -SO₂-N(R^f)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-, -CH₂-CH₂-, -O-CH₂-, -CH₂-O-, -S-CH₂-, -SO-CH₂-, -SO₂-CH₂-, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -CH₂-N(R^g)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂- or -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-.

In a first embodiment, -X-Q- represents -O-. In a second embodiment, -X-Q-
 10 represents -O-C(O)-. In a third embodiment according to the invention, -X-Q- represents -C(O)-O-. In a fourth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -O-C(CH₃-CN)-. In a fifth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -S-. In a sixth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -SO-. In a seventh embodiment, -X-Q- represents -SO₂-. In an eighth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-. In a ninth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-CO-. In a tenth embodiment, -
 15 X-Q- represents -CO-N(R^f)-. In an eleventh embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-SO₂-. In a twelfth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -SO₂-N(R^f)-. In a thirteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -S(O)(NR^f)-. In a fourteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-CH₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-CH₂-. In a fifteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents - optionally substituted -O-CH₂-. In one
 20 aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -O-CH₂-. In a sixteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-O-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-O-. In a seventeenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -S-CH₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -S-CH₂-. In an eighteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -SO-CH₂-. In one aspect of that
 25 embodiment, -X-Q- represents -SO-CH₂-. In a nineteenth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -SO₂-CH₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -SO₂-CH₂-. In a twentieth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-S-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-S-. In a twenty-first embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-SO-. In one aspect
 30 of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-SO-. In a twenty-second embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-SO₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-SO₂-. In a twenty-third embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -N(R^g)-CH₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-

CH₂-. In a twenty-fourth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-N(R^g)-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-N(R^g)-. In a twenty-fifth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-. In a twenty-sixth embodiment, -X-Q- represents optionally substituted -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-. In one aspect of that embodiment, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-. In a twenty-seventh embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(S)-. In a twenty-eighth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -N=S(O)(CH₃)-. In a twenty-ninth embodiment, -X-Q- represents -O-C(=CH₂)-. In a thirtieth embodiment -X-Q- represents -S(=N-CN)-. Typical substituents on -X-Q- include halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl and carboxy. Additional substituents on -X-Q- include trifluoromethyl. Further substituents on -X-Q- include (C₂₋₆)alkylcarbonyl, (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl, and hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl.

Particular examples of substituents on -X-Q- include fluoro, methyl, carboxy, trifluoromethyl, methylcarbonyl, deuterated methyl, ethoxycarbonyl, hydroxyisopropyl, and hydroxymethyl.

Suitable substituents on -X-Q- include fluoro, methyl and carboxy.

Appropriately, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-; or -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, O-CH₂-, -, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted.

Particularly, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, or -N(R^f)-C(S)-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted.

Suitably, -X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, or -N(R^f)-C(S)-.

Typically, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(O)-, -O-C(O)- or -O-C(CH₃-CN)-.

Appositely, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(O)-.

Generally, Z represents methylene.

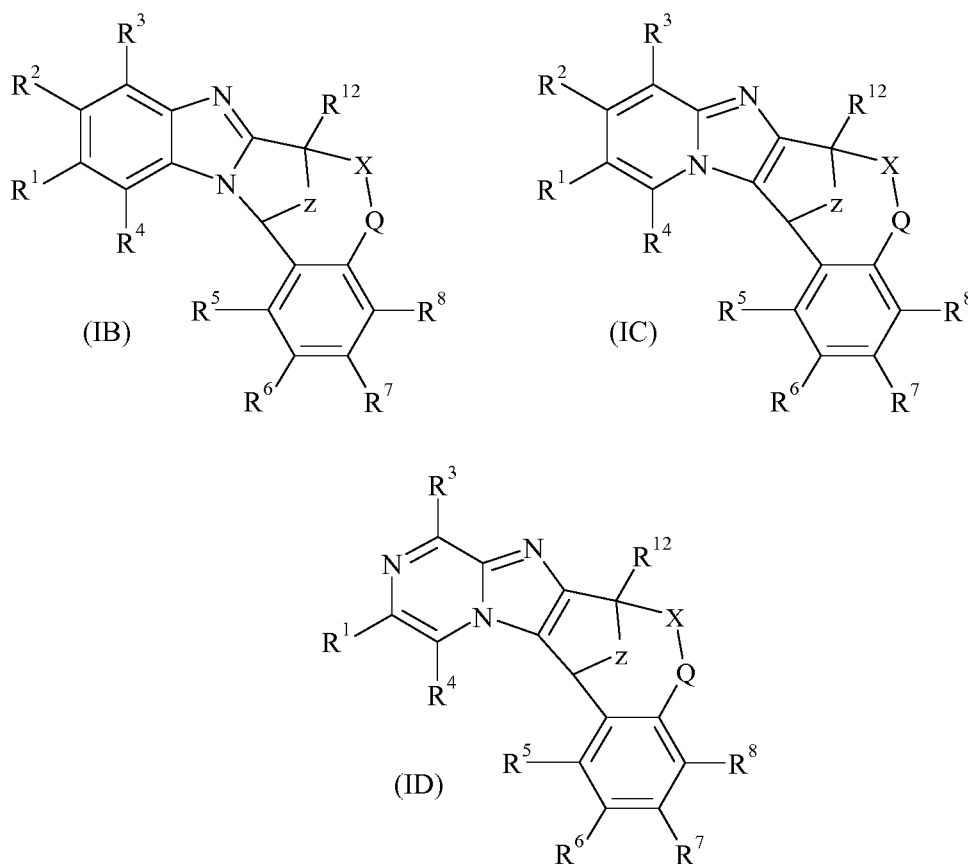
Generally, E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system of formula (Ea) or a fused heteroaromatic ring system of formula (Eb).

In a first embodiment according to the present invention, E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system of formula (Ea).

In a second embodiment according to the present invention, E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system of formula (Eb).

5 In a third embodiment according to the present invention, E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system of formula (Ec).

Particular sub-classes of compounds in accordance with the present invention include compounds of formula (IB), (IC), and (ID).



10

wherein -X-Q-, Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above.

Particular sub-classes of compounds in accordance with the present invention include compounds of formula (IB) and (IC), wherein -X-Q-, Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶,
 15 R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above.

A particular sub-class of compounds in accordance with the present invention is the sub-class of compounds of formula (IB), wherein -X-Q-, Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above.

5 A further particular sub-class of compounds in accordance with the present invention is the sub-class of compounds of formula (IC), wherein -X-Q-, Z, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above.

Generally, R¹ represents hydrogen, halogen, or cyano; or aryl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)bicycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₉)spiroheterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl, or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Typically, R¹ represents hydrogen, halogen, or cyano; or aryl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)bicycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl- or (C₄₋₉)spiroheterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

More typically, R¹ represents halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl, or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Even more typically, R¹ represents halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, or (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Particularly, R¹ represents hydrogen, halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

More particularly, R¹ represents halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

30 Suitably, R¹ represents hydrogen; or R¹ represents aryl or heteroaryl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Appositely, R¹ represents aryl or heteroaryl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

More suitably, R¹ represents heteroaryl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents. In a first embodiment, R¹ represents hydrogen.

5 In a second embodiment, R¹ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents bromo. In another aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents chloro.

In a third embodiment, R¹ represents cyano.

10 In a fourth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted aryl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted phenyl.

In fifth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents azetidiny.

15 In a sixth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted heteroaryl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted pyrimidinyl. In another aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted pyridinyl.

In a seventh embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl-. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclohexylpyrazolyl-. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclohexylpyridinyl-. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclopropylpyrimidinyl-. In a fourth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclobutylpyrimidinyl-. In a fifth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclopentylpyrimidinyl-. In a sixth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclohexylpyrimidinyl-. In a seventh aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclohexylpyrazinyl-. In an eighth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted cyclopropylpyridinyl.

25 In an eighth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₃₋₇)-heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted pyrrolidinylpyridinyl-. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted tetrahydropyranylpyridinyl-. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted piperidinylpyridinyl-. In a fourth aspect

of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted piperazinyipyridinyl-. In a fifth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted morpholinylpyridinyl-. In a sixth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted thiomorpholinylpyridinyl-. In a seventh aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted diazepanylpyridinyl-. In an eighth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted oxetanylpurimidinyl-. In a ninth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted azetidinylpurimidinyl-. In a tenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted tetrahydrofuranylpurimidinyl-. In an eleventh aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted pyrrolidinylpurimidinyl-. In a twelfth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted tetrahydropyranylpurimidinyl-. In a thirteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted piperidinylpurimidinyl-. In a fourteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted piperazinylpurimidinyl-. In a fifteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted morpholinylpurimidinyl-. In a sixteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted thiomorpholinylpurimidinyl-. In a seventeenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted azepanylpurimidinyl-. In an eighteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted oxazepanylpurimidinyl-. In a nineteenth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted diazepanylpurimidinyl-. In a twentieth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted thiadiazepanylpurimidinyl-. In a twenty-first aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted oxetanylpurazinyl-. In a twenty-second aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted piperidinylpurazinyl-. In a twenty-third aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted tetrahydropyranylpyridinyl-. In twenty-third aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents (imino)(oxo)thiazinanyl-purimidinyl-. In twenty-fourth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents (oxo)thiazinanyl-purimidinyl-. In twenty-fifth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents (dioxo)thiazinanyl-purimidinyl-. In a twenty-sixth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents substituted (dioxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-purimidinyl-. In a twenty-seventh aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents substituted tetrahydrothiophenyl-purimidinyl-. In a twenty-eighth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents substituted (dioxo)thiomorpholinyl-purimidinyl-. In a twenty-ninth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents substituted azetidinyl-pyrazolyl. In a thirtieth aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents substituted

(oxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl. In a thirty-first aspect, R¹ represents substituted (oxo)thiomorpholinyl.

In a ninth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₄₋₉)bicycloalkyl-heteroaryl-.

5 In a tenth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₄₋₉)-heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl-. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-pyrimidinyl-. In a second aspect of this embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl)-pyrimidinyl-. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R¹
10 represents optionally substituted (3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)-pyrimidinyl-. In a fourth aspect, R¹ represents optionally substituted (3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonanyl)-pyrimidinyl-.

In an eleventh embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₄₋₉)-spiroheterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-.

15 In a twelfth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted 1,2-dihydropyridinyl. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted 1,2-dihydropyrimidinyl.

In a thirteenth embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ represents optionally substituted imidazolyl-phenyl.
20

Typically, R¹ represents chloro or cyano; or phenyl, pyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, cyclopropyl-pyridinyl-, cyclobutyl-pyrimidinyl, cyclobutyl-pyridinyl-, cyclohexyl-pyrimidinyl-, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-pyrimidinyl-, azetidinyl-
25 pyrimidinyl-, azetidinyl-pyridinyl, pyrrolidinyl-pyridinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-phenyl-, piperazinyl-pyridinyl-, piperazinyl-pyrimidinyl-, pyrazolyl-, morpholinyl-pyrimidinyl-, thiomorpholinyl-pyrimidinyl-, (dioxo)thiomorpholinyl-pyrimidinyl-, (oxo)thiomorpholinyl-pyrimidinyl-, oxetanyl-pyridinyl-, oxetanyl-pyrimidinyl-, imidazolyl-phenyl, diazepanyl-pyrimidinyl-, (oxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl-,
30 (dioxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl-, tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl azetidinyl-pyrazolyl-, (2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl)-pyrimidinyl-, (3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)-pyrimidinyl-, (3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonanyl)-pyrimidinyl-,

tetrahydropyranyl-pyrimidinyl, azetidiny, 1,2-dihydropyridinyl, or 1,2-dihydropyrimidinyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Particularly, R¹ represents hydrogen, chloro or cyano; or phenyl, pyridinyl, or pyrimidinyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Illustratively, R¹ represents pyrimidinyl, which may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Typical examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from halogen, halo(C₁₋₆)alkyl, cyano, cyano(C₁₋₆)alkyl, nitro(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl, phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoroethyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, hydroxy, hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, trifluoroethoxy, carboxy(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyloxy, C₁₋₆ alkylthio, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl, (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphonyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, oxo, amino, amino-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di(C₁₋₆)alkylamino, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkylamino, *N*-[(C₁₋₆)alkyl]-*N*-[hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl]amino, (C₂₋₆)alkylcarbonylamino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonylamino, *N*-[(C₁₋₆)alkyl]-*N*-[(C₁₋₆)alkylsulphonyl]amino, bis[(C₁₋₆)alkyl-sulphonyl]amino, *N*-[(C₁₋₆)alkyl]-*N*-[carboxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl]amino, carboxy(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-amino, carboxy(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkylamino, formyl, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonyl, (C₂₋₆)alkyl-carbonyloxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, carboxy, carboxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, morpholinyl(C₁₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl-methylidenyl, aminocarbonyl, aminosulphonyl, (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphoximinyl and [(C₁₋₆)alkyl][*N*-(C₁₋₆)alkyl]sulphoximinyl. Additional examples of optional substituents on R¹ include C₁₋₆ alkyl phosphate-C₁₋₆ alkyl, sulphate-C₁₋₆ alkyl, carboxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl-carbonyloxy-C₁₋₆ alkyl, and phosphate- methoxy- C₁₋₆ alkyl. A further additional example of optional substituent on R¹ include (C₂₋₆) alkoxycarbonyl-amino-C₁₋₆ alkyl. Additional optional substituents on R¹ include difluoromethyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-sulphanyl-amino-, di(C₁₋₆)alkylamino (C₁₋₆)alkyl, di(C₁₋₆)alkenylamino (C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl-amino-C₁₋₆ alkyl, and tetrahydrofuranyl.

Illustrative examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from halogen, cyano, cyano(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, (hydroxy)(C₁₋₆)alkyl, amino, (amino)(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonyl, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl, (C₂₋₆)

alkoxycarbonyl-amino-C₁₋₆ alkyl, phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylthio, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl, oxo, (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphoximinyl, (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphanyl-amino-, di(C₁₋₆)alkylamino (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkylcarbonylamino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, di(C₁₋₆)alkenylamino (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkylcarbonylamino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl-amino-C₁₋₆ alkyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, sulphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl, and carboxy-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-carbonyloxy-(C₁₋₆)alkyl.

Particular examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, (hydroxy)(C₁₋₆) alkyl, (amino)(C₁₋₆) alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl-amino-C₁₋₆ alkyl, phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl, oxo and (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphoximinyl.

Suitable examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, (hydroxy)(C₁₋₆) alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl, oxo and (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphoximinyl.

Particular examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from (hydroxy)(C₁₋₆) alkyl and (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl.

Typical examples of particular substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from fluoro, chloro, fluoromethyl, fluoroisopropyl, cyano, cyanoethyl, nitromethyl, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, phosphate-isopropyl, isopropylmethyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoroethyl, ethenyl, hydroxy, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyisopropyl, methoxy, isopropoxy, methoxyisopropyl, trifluoro-ethoxy, carboxycyclobutyl, methylthio, methylsulphonyl, methylsulphonylmethyl, methylsulphonylethyl, oxo, amino, aminomethyl, aminoisopropyl, methylamino, dimethylamino, methoxyethylamino, *N*-(hydroxyethyl)-*N*-(methyl)amino, acetaminomethyl, methylsulphonylamino, *N*-methyl-*N*-(methylsulphonyl)amino, bis(methylsulphonyl)amino, *N*-(carboxyethyl)-*N*-(methyl)amino, carboxycyclopentylamino, carboxycyclopropylmethylamino, formyl, acetyl, acetoxymethyl, carboxy, carboxymethyl, carboxyethyl, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, *n*-butoxycarbonyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonylmethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, ethoxycarbonylethyl, morpholinylethoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonylmethylidenyl, methylsulphonylaminocarbonyl, acetaminosulphonyl, methoxyamino-

carbonyl, tetrazolyl, tetrazolylmethyl, hydroxyoxadiazolyl, aminocarbonyl, amino-sulphonyl, methylsulphoximinyl and (methyl)(*N*-methyl)sulphoximinyl. Additional typical examples of optional substituents on R¹ include ethyl phosphate-isopropyl, sulphate-isopropyl, carboxy-ethyl-carbonyloxy-isopropyl, and phosphate-methoxy-isopropyl. A further additional typical example of substituents on R¹ include (tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino-isopropyl. Other additional typical examples of substituents on R¹ include (tert-butyl)carbonyl, methoxycarbonylamino-isopropyl, dimethylaminoisopropyl, (tert-butyl)sulphinyl-amino, (tert-butyl)sulphonylamino, methylsulphonylaminoisopropyl, methylcarbonylamino-isopropyl, cyanoisopropyl, difluoromethyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, di(propenyl)aminoisopropyl and hydroxyisobutyl.

Appropriate examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from methyl, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, hydroxyisopropyl, methoxy, methoxyisopropyl, phosphate-isopropyl, (tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino-isopropyl, aminoisopropyl, dimethylaminoisopropyl, methylsulphonyl, methylsulphoximinyl, oxo, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl, (methoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl, methylthio, (tert-butyl)sulphinyl-amino, amino, (tert-butyl)sulphonyl-amino, methylsulphonylamino-isopropyl, methylcarbonylamino-isopropyl, fluoro, cyano, cyanoisopropyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, di(propenyl)aminoisopropyl, sulphate-isopropyl, carboxy-ethyl-carbonyloxy-isopropyl and (hydroxy)isobutyl.

Illustrative examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from methyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, hydroxyisopropyl, methoxy, methoxyisopropyl, phosphate-isopropyl, (tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino-isopropyl, aminoisopropyl, methylsulphonyl and methylsulphoximinyl.

Suitable examples of optional substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from methyl, hydroxy, hydroxyisopropyl, methoxy, methoxyisopropyl, phosphate-isopropyl, methylsulphonyl and methylsulphoximinyl.

Particular examples of substituents on R¹ include one, two or three substituents independently selected from hydroxyisopropyl and methoxyisopropyl.

In a particular embodiment, R¹ is substituted by hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ is substituted by hydroxyisopropyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R¹ is substituted by 2-hydroxyprop-2-yl.

In another particular embodiment, R¹ is substituted by (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R¹ is substituted by methoxyisopropyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R¹ is substituted by 2-methoxyprop-2-yl.

Illustrative values of R¹ include chloro, cyano, methylsulphonyl-phenyl,
 5 methylsulphoximinyl-phenyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclobutylpyrimidinyl,
 hydroxyisopropylpyridinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl,
 (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, phosphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl,
 methoxypyridinyl, methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, 2-oxo-pyridin-(1H)-yl, (*tert*-
 butoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl-pyrimidinyl, aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-
 10 azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(trifluoromethyl)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl,
 (methylsulphonyl)(methyl)phenyl, (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyridinyl, [
 (hydroxy)(trifluoromethyl)azetidiny](methyl)pyrimidinyl
 methylsulphonylcyclopropylpyridinyl, (dimethyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl,
 (hydroxyisopropyl)(trifluoromethyl)pyrimidinyl, (*tert*-
 15 butoxycarbonyl)(hydroxy)pyrrolidine-pyridinyl, (hydroxy)pyrrolidine-pyridinyl,
 (methoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl-pyrimidinyl, piperazinylpyridinyl,
 (methylsulphonyl)piperazinyl-pyridinyl, (dimethylamino)isopropylpyrimidinyl,
 (oxo)piperazinylpyrimidinyl, (N-methyl)pyrazolyl, (methylthio)(methyl)phenyl,
 morpholinylpyrimidinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphinylamino)cyclobutylpyridinyl,
 20 (amino)cyclobutylpyridinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphonylamino)oxetanylpyridinyl,
 (amino)oxetanylpyridinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphonylamino)oxetanylpyridinyl,
 pyrrolidinylpyridinyl, (dimethyl)imidazolylphenyl,
 (methylsulphonyl)aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, methylcarbonylaminoisopropylpyrimidinyl,
 pyrrolidinyl-phenyl, (oxo)diazepanylpyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(methyl)azetidiny-
 25 pyrimidinyl, thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl, (oxo)thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl,
 (dioxo)thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl, (difluoro)(hydroxy)cyclohexylpyrimidinyl,
 (hydroxy)(oxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(dioxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-
 pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)oxetanylpyrimidinyl,
 (methylsulphonyl)azetidiny-2,5-pyrazolyl, (oxo)(methyl)-1,2-dihydropyridinyl, (oxo)-1,2-
 30 dihydropyrimidinyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclohexylpyrimidinyl,
 cyanoisopropylpyrimidinyl, (cyano)(methyl)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl, (2-oxa-5-
 azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl)-pyrimidinyl-, (3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)-pyrimidinyl-,
 (oxo)(3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonanyl)-pyrimidinyl-, (hydroxyisopropyl)azetidinyl,

(difluoro)azetidinyipyrimidinyl, tetrahydropyranyipyrimidinyl, methylsulphoximinylpyridinyl, (difluoromethyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, (tetrahydrofuranyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, di(propenyl)aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, sulphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, carboxy-ethyl-carbonyloxy-isopropyl-pyrimidinyl and (hydroxy)isobutylpyrimidinyl. Specific values of R¹ include chloro, methylsulphonyl-phenyl, methylsulphoximinyl-phenyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclobutylpyrimidinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyridinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, phosphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, methoxypyridinyl, methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, 2-oxo-pyridin-10 (1H)-yl, (tert-butoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl-pyrimidinyl, aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(trifluoromethyl)azetidinyipyrimidinyl, (methylsulphonyl)(methyl)phenyl and (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyridinyl.

Particular values of R¹ include methylsulphonyl-phenyl, methylsulphoximinyl-phenyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclobutylpyrimidinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyridinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl; phosphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, methoxypyridinyl, methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl and 2-oxo-pyridin-(1H)-yl.

Selected values of R¹ include hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-hydroxy-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl; methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-methoxy-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl; aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-amino-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl; and phosphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-phosphate-propane-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl.

In one embodiment, R¹ represents 2-(2-hydroxy-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl. In another embodiment, R¹ represents 2-(2-amino-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl. In a further embodiment, R¹ represents 2-(2-phosphate-propane-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl.

Illustrative values of R¹ include hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-hydroxy-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl, and methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, particularly 2-(2-methoxy-propan-2-yl)-pyrimidin-5-yl.

Typically, R² represents hydrogen, halogen, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy or -OR^a; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Suitably, R² represents hydrogen or halogen.

In a first embodiment, R^2 represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^2 represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^2 represents fluoro. In another aspect of that embodiment, R^2 represents chloro. In a third embodiment, R^2 represents cyano. In a fourth embodiment, R^2 represents nitro. In a fifth embodiment, R^2 represents hydroxy. In a sixth embodiment, R^2 represents trifluoromethyl. In a seventh embodiment, R^2 represents trifluoromethoxy. In an eighth embodiment, R^2 represents $-OR^a$. In a ninth embodiment, R^2 represents optionally substituted C_{1-6} alkyl. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R^2 represents C_{1-6} alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^2 represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R^2 represents ethyl.

10 In a second aspect of that embodiment, R^2 represents monosubstituted methyl or monosubstituted ethyl.

Typical examples of optional substituents on R^2 include C_{2-6} alkoxy carbonyl.

Typical examples of particular substituents on R^2 include ethoxy carbonyl.

Typical values of R^2 include hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, $-OR^a$, methyl and ethoxy carbonyl ethyl.

15

Specific values of R^2 include hydrogen, bromo and fluoro.

Particular values of R^2 include hydrogen and fluoro.

Generally, R^3 represents hydrogen, halogen, trifluoromethyl, or C_{1-6} alkyl.

Typically, R^3 represents hydrogen, halogen or C_{1-6} alkyl.

20 In a first embodiment, R^3 represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^3 represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^3 represents fluoro. In a third embodiment, R^3 represents optionally substituted C_{1-6} alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^3 represents C_{1-6} alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^3 represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R^3 represents ethyl. In a fourth embodiment, R^3 represents trifluoromethyl.

25

Illustratively, R^3 represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.

In a particular embodiment, R^3 represents hydrogen.

Generally, R^4 represents hydrogen, halogen, trifluoromethyl, or C_{1-6} alkyl.

Typically, R^4 represents hydrogen, halogen or C_{1-6} alkyl.

In a first embodiment, R⁴ represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R⁴ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁴ represents fluoro. In a third embodiment, R⁴ represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁴ represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁴ represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁴ represents ethyl. In a fourth embodiment, R⁴ represents trifluoromethyl.

Illustratively, R⁴ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.

In a particular embodiment, R⁴ represents hydrogen.

Typically, R⁵ represents halogen, cyano, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, -OR^a, or C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Generally, R⁵ represents halogen, -OR^a, difluoromethoxy or trifluoromethoxy.

In a first embodiment, R⁵ represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R⁵ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁵ represents chloro. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R⁵ represents fluoro. In a third embodiment, R⁵ represents cyano. In a fourth embodiment, R⁵ represents hydroxy. In a fifth embodiment, R⁵ represents trifluoromethyl. In a sixth embodiment, R⁵ represents difluoromethoxy. In a seventh embodiment, R⁵ represents trifluoromethoxy. In an eighth embodiment, R⁵ represents -OR^a. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁵ represents methoxy. In a ninth embodiment, R⁵ represents C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁵ represents methylsulphonyl. In a tenth embodiment, R⁵ represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁵ represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁵ represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁵ represents ethyl.

Suitably, R⁵ represents fluoro, methoxy, difluoromethoxy or trifluoromethoxy.

Appositely, R⁵ represents fluoro, methoxy or difluoromethoxy.

Suitably, R⁵ represents difluoromethoxy.

Generally, R⁶ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl.

In a first embodiment, R⁶ represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R⁶ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents chloro. In a second

aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents fluoro. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents bromo. In a fourth embodiment, R⁶ represents trifluoromethyl. In a fifth embodiment, R⁶ represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents C₁₋₄ alkyl. In a second aspect of that embodiment R⁶ represents C₁₋₃ alkyl. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents C₁₋₂ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁶ represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁶ represents ethyl. In a fifth embodiment, R⁶ represents C₁₋₆ alkoxy. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R⁶ represents methoxy.

Particularly, R⁶ represents hydrogen, bromo or trifluoromethyl.

10 Illustratively, R⁶ represents hydrogen or bromo.

Suitably, R⁶ represents hydrogen.

In a first embodiment, R⁷ represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R⁷ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁷ represents chloro. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R⁷ represents fluoro. In a third embodiment, R⁷ represents trifluoromethyl. In a fourth embodiment, R⁷ represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R⁷ represents C₁₋₄ alkyl. In a second aspect of that embodiment R⁷ represents C₁₋₃ alkyl. In a third aspect of that embodiment, R⁷ represents C₁₋₂ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁷ represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁷ represents ethyl. In a fifth embodiment, R⁷ represents C₁₋₆ alkoxy.

20 In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R⁷ represents methoxy.

Illustratively, R⁷ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.

Suitably, R⁷ represents hydrogen.

Generally, R⁸ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl.

In a first embodiment, R⁸ represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R⁸ represents halogen. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁸ represents chloro. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R⁸ represents fluoro. In a third embodiment, R⁸ represents cyano. In a fourth embodiment, R⁸ represents hydroxy. In a fifth embodiment, R⁸ represents trifluoromethyl. In a sixth embodiment, R⁸ represents difluoromethoxy. In a seventh embodiment, R⁸ represents trifluoromethoxy. In an eighth embodiment, R⁸ represents -OR^a. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁸ represents methoxy. In a ninth embodiment, R⁸ represents C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁸

25

30

represents methylsulphonyl. In a tenth embodiment, R⁸ represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R⁸ represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁸ represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R⁸ represents unsubstituted ethyl. In an eleventh embodiment, R⁸ represents trifluoromethyl.

Particularly, R⁸ represents hydrogen, chloro or trifluoromethyl

Illustratively, R⁸ represents hydrogen or chloro.

Suitably, R⁸ represents hydrogen.

Generally, R¹² represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl.

Suitably, R¹² represents hydrogen or methyl.

Apositely, R¹² represents hydrogen.

Generally, R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Generally, R^b and R^c independently represent hydrogen or trifluoromethyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or

R^b and R^c, when taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are both attached, represent azetidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, oxazolidin-3-yl, isoxazolidin-2-yl, thiazolidin-3-yl, isothiazolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl, morpholin-4-yl, thiomorpholin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, homopiperidin-1-yl, homomorpholin-4-yl, homopiperazin-1-yl, (imino)(oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, (oxo)thiazinan-4-yl or (dioxo)thiazinan-4-yl any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Generally, R^d represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, aryl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Generally, R^e represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Typical examples of suitable substituents which may be present on R^a, R^b, R^c, R^d or R^e, or on the heterocyclic moiety -NR^bR^c, include halogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkylthio, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphinyl, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl, hydroxy, hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, amino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, cyano, trifluoromethyl, oxo, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonyl, carboxy, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonyloxy, amino, C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di(C₁₋₆)alkylamino, phenylamino, pyridinylamino, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonylamino, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonylamino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonylamino, C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonylamino, aminocarbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkylaminocarbonyl and di(C₁₋₆)alkylaminocarbonyl.

Typical examples of specific substituents which may be present on R^a, R^b, R^c, R^d, or R^e, or on the heterocyclic moiety -NR^bR^c, include fluoro, chloro, bromo, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, methoxy, isopropoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, methoxymethyl, methylthio, ethylthio, methylsulphinyl, methylsulphonyl, hydroxy, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl, aminomethyl, cyano, trifluoromethyl, oxo, acetyl, carboxy, methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl, acetoxymethyl, amino, methylamino, ethylamino, dimethylamino, phenylamino, pyridinylamino, acetylaminomethyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonylamino, acetylaminomethyl, methylsulphonylamino, aminocarbonyl, methylaminocarbonyl and dimethylaminocarbonyl.

Suitably, R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

In a first embodiment, R^a represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a first aspect of that embodiment, R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents methyl. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R^a represents substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents methoxyethyl. In a second embodiment, R^a represents optionally substituted aryl. In a first aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents aryl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents phenyl. In a second aspect of that embodiment, R^a represents monosubstituted aryl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents methylphenyl. In a third embodiment, R^a represents optionally substituted aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^a represents aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents benzyl. In a fourth embodiment, R^a represents optionally substituted heteroaryl. In one aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents heteroaryl. In a fifth embodiment, R^a represents optionally substituted heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In a particular

aspect of this embodiment, R^a represents dioxoisindolylpropyl. In a sixth embodiment, R^a represents C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl. In a seventh embodiment, R^a represents C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl.

Appositely, R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. Illustratively, R^a represents methyl.

Typically, R^b represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl or C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Suitably, R^b represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl.

In a first embodiment, R^b represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^b represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^b represents methyl.

Typically R^c represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Suitably, R^c represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl.

In a first embodiment, R^c is hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^c represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a one aspect of that embodiment, R^c represents methyl. In a another aspect of that embodiment, R^c represents ethyl.

Appositely, R^c represents hydrogen or ethyl.

Alternatively, the moiety -NR^bR^c may suitably represent azetidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, oxazolidin-3-yl, isoxazolidin-2-yl, thiazolidin-3-yl, isothiazolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl, morpholin-4-yl, thiomorpholin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, homopiperidin-1-yl, homomorpholin-4-yl or homopiperazin-1-yl, (imino)(oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, (oxo)thiazinan-4-yl or (dioxo)thiazinan-4-yl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Specific values of the heterocyclic moiety -NR^bR^c include azetidin-1-yl, hydroxyazetidin-1-yl, hydroxymethylazetidin-1-yl, (hydroxy)(hydroxymethyl)azetidin-1-yl, aminomethyl-azetidin-1-yl, cyanoazetidin-1-yl, carboxyazetidin-1-yl, aminoazetidin-1-yl, aminocarbonylazetidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, aminomethylpyrrolidin-1-yl, oxopyrrolidin-1-yl, acetylaminomethylpyrrolidin-1-yl, *tert*-butoxycarbonylaminopyrrolidin-1-yl, oxo-oxazolidin-3-yl, hydroxyisoxazolidin-2-yl, thiazolidin-3-yl, oxothiazolidin-3-yl, dioxo-isothiazolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl,

hydroxypiperidin-1-yl, hydroxymethylpiperidin-1-yl, aminopiperidin-1-yl, acetylaminopiperidin-1-yl, *tert*-butoxycarbonylaminopiperidin-1-yl, methylsulphonylaminopiperidin-1-yl, morpholin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, methylpiperazin-1-yl, methylsulphonylpiperazin-1-yl, oxopiperazin-1-yl, acetylpiperazin-1-yl, 5 ethoxycarbonylpiperazin-1-yl, oxohomopiperazin-1-yl, (imino)(oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, (oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, and (dioxo)thiazinan-4-yl.

Typically, R^d represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

10 Selected examples of suitable substituents on R^d include halogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, oxo, C₂₋₆ alkylcarbonyloxy and di(C₁₋₆)alkylamino.

Selected examples of particular substituents on R^d include fluoro, methyl, methoxy, oxo, acetoxy and dimethylamino.

Suitably, R^d represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl.

15 In a first embodiment, R^d represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^d represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^d represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a third embodiment, R^d represents optionally substituted aryl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^d represents phenyl. In a fourth embodiment, R^d represents optionally substituted heteroaryl.

Appositely, R^d represents hydrogen or methyl.

20 Typically, R^e represents C₁₋₆ alkyl or aryl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Selected examples of suitable substituents on R^e include C₁₋₆ alkyl, especially methyl.

25 In a first embodiment, R^e represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^e represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment especially methyl. In a second embodiment, R^e represents optionally substituted aryl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^e represents phenyl. In another aspect of that embodiment, R^e represents monosubstituted aryl.

Suitably, R^e represents methyl, propyl or methylphenyl.

Generally, R^f represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, or C_{4-6} heterocycloalkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Suitably, R^f represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, which group may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Generally, R^g represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, $-\text{CO}-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CO}-(C_{3-7})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{3-7})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-heteroaryl}$, heteroaryl or $(C_{2-6})\text{alkoxycarbonyl}$, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

More generally, R^g represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, $-\text{CO}-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CO}-(C_{3-7})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-heteroaryl}$, heteroaryl or $(C_{2-6})\text{alkoxycarbonyl}$, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Typically, R^g represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, $-\text{CO}-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CO}-(C_{3-7})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{3-7})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-aryl}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-heteroaryl}$, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Interestingly, R^g represents hydrogen; or C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, C_{4-6} heterocycloalkyl, $-\text{CO}-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, or $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

Suitably, R^g represents hydrogen, optionally substituted C_{1-6} alkyl, $-\text{CO}-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$ or $-\text{SO}_2-(C_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$.

Typically, substituents on R^g include independently halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxy and C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl. Additional substituents on R^g include trifluoromethyl, C_{4-9} heterobicycloalkyl, $(C_{1-6})\text{alkylsulphonyl}$, $\text{tri}(C_{1-6})\text{alkylsilyloxy}$, hydroxy and $(C_{1-6})\text{alkoxy}$.

Appositely, substituents on R^f and R^g include independently halogen and C_{1-6} alkyl.

Particular examples of substituents on R^g include independently methyl, trifluoromethyl, ethoxycarbonyl, 3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl, methylsulphonyl, (tert-butyl)(di-methyl)silyloxyethyl, hydroxy and methoxy.

Particular examples of substituent on R^f include trifluoromethyl, carboxy and hydroxy.

In a first embodiment, R^f represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^f represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^f represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^f represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R^f represents ethyl. In a further particular aspect of this embodiment, R^f represents isopropyl. In another aspect of that embodiment, R^f represents deuterated methyl. In a further aspect of that embodiment, R^f represents substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a third embodiment, R^f represents optionally substituted C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^f represents C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl.

Particular values of R^f include hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, (carboxy)methyl, (trifluoromethyl)methyl, (hydroxyisopropyl)methyl and deuterated methyl.

Illustrative values of R^f include hydrogen, methyl, ethyl and isopropyl.

In a first embodiment, R^g represents hydrogen. In a second embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^g represents methyl. In another particular aspect of this embodiment, R^g represents ethyl. In a further particular aspect of this embodiment, R^g represents isopropyl. In a third embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl. In a fourth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^g represents -CO-CH₃. In a fifth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In one aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents -SO₂-(C₁₋₆)alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R^g represents -SO₂-CH₃. In a sixth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -CO-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents -CO-azetidiny. In a seventh embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents -SO₂-cyclopropyl. In an eighth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl. In a ninth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-aryl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-phenyl. In a tenth embodiment, R^g represents

optionally substituted -SO₂-heteroaryl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted -SO₂-pyridinyl. In an eleventh embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted heteroaryl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted pyrimidinyl. In a twelfth embodiment, R^g represents optionally substituted (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl. In a particular aspect of that embodiment, R^g represents ethoxycarbonyl.

Illustrative values of R^g include hydrogen, methyl, carboxymethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, methylcarbonyl, methylsulphonyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)methylcarbonyl, azetidiny carbonyl, (methylsulphonyl)azetidiny carbonyl, pyridinylsulphonyl, cyclopropylsulphonyl, (tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl, hydroxyethyl, phenylsulphonyl, (methoxy)pyridinylsulphonyl, (pyridine-2(1H)-one)sulphonyl, pyrimidinyl and ethoxycarbonyl.

Selected values of R^g include hydrogen, methyl, carboxymethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, methylcarbonyl, methylsulphonyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)methylcarbonyl, azetidiny carbonyl, (methylsulphonyl)azetidiny carbonyl, pyridinylsulphonyl, cyclopropylsulphonyl, (tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl, hydroxyethyl, phenylsulphonyl and (methoxy)pyridinylsulphonyl.

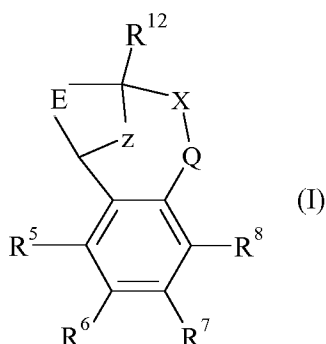
Particular values of R^g include hydrogen, methyl, carboxymethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, methylcarbonyl and methylsulphonyl.

Specific values of R^g include hydrogen and methyl.

Illustrative values of -X-Q- include -O-, -O-CO-, -O-C(CH₃)-, -S-, -SO-, SO₂-, -NH-, -N(CO-CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-, -N(CH₂-CO-O-CH₂-CH₃)-, -N[(CO-CH₂-(3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)]-, -N[CO-(azetidin-3-yl)]-, -N[CO-(methylsulphonyl)azetidin-3-yl)]-, -N(CH₂-COOH), -N[(tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl]-, -N(SO₂-pyridine-3-yl)-, -N(SO₂-cyclopropyl)-, -N(CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-, -N(SO₂-phenyl)-, -N[SO₂-(6-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)]-, -NH-CO-, -N(CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CH₂-COOH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CF₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-C(OH)(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CD₃)-CO-, -NH-CH₂-, -N(CH₂-COOH)-CH₂-, -NH-CH(CF₃)-, -NH-CH(CH₃)-, -NH-C(S)-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, O-

CH(CF₃)-, -CH(COOC₂H₅)-S-, -CH₂-S(O)-, -CH₂-S(O)₂-, -CH(CH(OH)(CH₃)₂)-S-, -CH(CH₂OH)-S-, -O-C(=CH₂)-, -N[S(O)₂-(pyridin-1H-2-one)], -NH-S(O)₂-, -N(pyrimidinyl)-, -N(COOC₂H₅)-, -S(=N-CN)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)- and -N(C₂H₅)-CO-.

In a particular embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of formula
 5 (I) or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof :

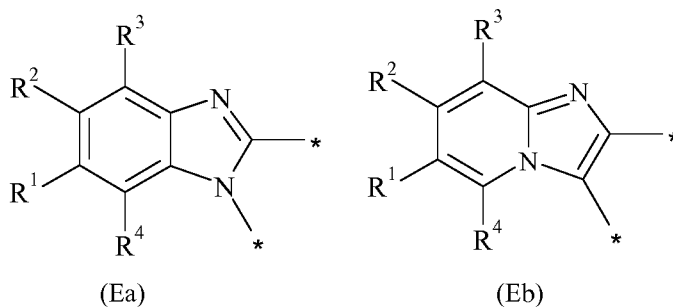


wherein

X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, or -SO₂-; or -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, O-CH₂-, -, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be
 10 optionally substituted;

Z represents methylene;

E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system selected from the groups of
 15 formula (Ea) and (Eb);



wherein the asterisk (*) represents the site of attachment of E to the remainder of the molecule;

R¹ represents halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl ,
 20

(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl, or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R² represents hydrogen or halogen;

R³ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;

5 R⁴ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;

R⁵ represents halogen, -OR^a, difluoromethoxy or trifluoromethoxy;

R⁶ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl;

R⁷ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;

R⁸ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl;

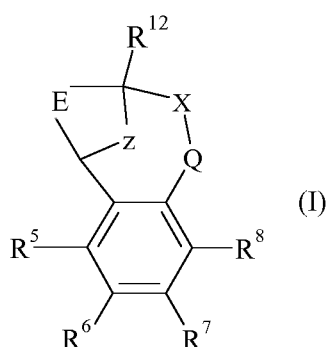
10 R¹² represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R^f represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, which group may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; and

R^g represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SO₂-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CO-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, heteroaryl or (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

In a particular aspect of that embodiment, the present invention provides a compound of formula (I) or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,



X-Q- include -O-, -O-CO-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, SO₂-, -NH-, -N(CO-CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-, -N(CH₂-CO-O-CH₂-CH₃)-, -N[(CO-CH₂-(3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)]-, -N[CO-(azetidin-3-yl)]-, -N[CO-(methylsulphonyl)azetidin-

3-yl)]-, -N(CH₂-COOH), -N[(*tert*-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl]-, -N(SO₂-pyridine-3-yl)-, -N-(SO₂-cyclopropyl)-, -N(CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-, -N(SO₂-phenyl)-, -N[SO₂-(6-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)]-, -NH-CO-, -N(CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CH₂-COOH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CF₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-C(OH)(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CD₃)-CO-, -NH-CH₂-, -N(CH₂-COOH)-CH₂-, -NH-CH(CF₃)-, -NH-CH(CH₃)-, -NH-C(S)-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, O-CH(CF₃)-, -CH(COOC₂H₅)-S-, -CH₂-S(O)-, -CH₂-S(O)₂-, -CH(CH(OH)(CH₃)₂)-S-, -CH(CH₂OH)-S-, -O-C(=CH₂)-, -N[S(O)₂-(pyridin-1H-2-one)], -NH-S(O)₂-, -N(pyrimidinyl)-, -N(COOC₂H₅)-, -S(=N-CN)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)- and -

10 N(C₂H₅)-CO-;

R¹ represents chloro, cyano, methylsulphonyl-phenyl, methylsulphoximinyl-phenyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclobutylpyrimidinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyridinyl, hydroxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, phosphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, methoxypyridinyl, methoxyisopropylpyrimidinyl, 2-oxo-pyridin-1H-yl, (*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl-pyrimidinyl, aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(trifluoromethyl)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl, (methylsulphonyl)(methyl)phenyl, (methyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyridinyl, [(hydroxy)(trifluoromethyl)azetidiny](methyl)pyrimidinyl

20 methylsulphonylcyclopropylpyridinyl, (dimethyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, (hydroxyisopropyl)(trifluoromethyl)pyrimidinyl, (*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)(hydroxy)pyrrolidine-pyridinyl, (hydroxy)pyrrolidine-pyridinyl, (methoxycarbonyl)aminoisopropyl-pyrimidinyl, piperazinylpyridinyl, (methylsulphonyl)piperazinyl-pyridinyl, (dimethylamino)isopropylpyrimidinyl,

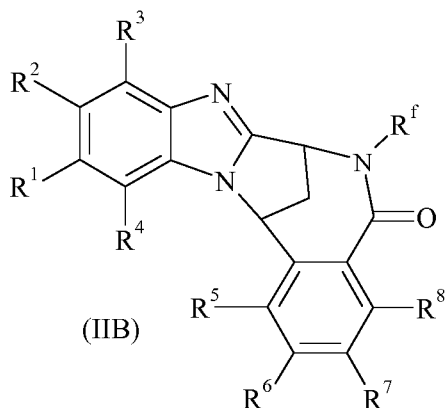
25 (oxo)piperazinylpyrimidinyl, (N-methyl)pyrazolyl, (methylthio)(methyl)phenyl, morpholinylpyrimidinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphinylamino)cyclobutylpyridinyl, (amino)cyclobutylpyridinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphinylamino)oxetanylpyridinyl, (amino)oxetanylpyridinyl, ((*tert*-butyl)sulphonylamino)oxetanylpyridinyl, pyrrolidinylpyridinyl, (dimethyl)imidazolylphenyl,

30 (methylsulphonyl)aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, methylcarbonylaminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinyl-phenyl, (oxo)diazepanylpyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(methyl)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl, thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl, (oxo)thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl,

- (dioxo)thiomorpholinylpyrimidinyl, (difluoro)(hydroxy)cyclohexylpyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(oxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)(dioxo)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)tetrahydrothiophenyl-pyrimidinyl, (hydroxy)oxetanylpyrimidinyl, (methylsulphonyl)azetidiny-2,5-pyrazolyl, (oxo)(methyl)-1,2-dihydropyridinyl, (oxo)-
- 5 1,2-dihydropyrimidinyl, (dihydroxy)(methyl)cyclohexylpyrimidinyl, cyanoisopropylpyrimidinyl, (cyano)(methyl)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl, (2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]heptanyl)-pyrimidinyl-, (3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)-pyrimidinyl-, (oxo)(3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]nonanyl)-pyrimidinyl-, (hydroxyisopropyl)azetidiny-, (difluoro)azetidiny-pyrimidinyl,
- 10 tetrahydropyranylpyrimidinyl, methylsulphoxyminy-pyridinyl, (difluoromethyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, (tetrahydrofuranyl)(hydroxyisopropyl)pyrimidinyl, di(propenyl)aminoisopropylpyrimidinyl, sulphate-isopropylpyrimidinyl, carboxy-ethyl-carbonyloxy-isopropyl-pyrimidinyl and (hydroxy)isobutylpyrimidinyl;
- 15 R^2 represents hydrogen, bromo or fluoro;
 R^3 represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;
 R^4 represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;
 R^5 represents halogen, methoxy, difluoromethoxy or trifluoromethoxy;
 R^6 represents hydrogen, bromo, chloro, or trifluoromethyl;
- 20 R^7 represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl;
 R^8 represents hydrogen, chloro and trifluoromethyl;
 R^{12} represents hydrogen or methyl;
 R^f represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, (carboxy)methyl, (trifluoromethyl)methyl, (hydroxyisopropyl)methyl or deuterated methyl;
- 25 R^g represents hydrogen, methyl, carboxymethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, methylcarbonyl, methylsulphonyl, (3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)methylcarbonyl, azetidiny-carbonyl, (methylsulphonyl)azetidiny-carbonyl, pyridinylsulphonyl, cyclopropylsulphonyl, (tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl, hydroxyethyl, phenylsulphonyl, (methoxy)pyridinylsulphonyl, (pyridine-2(1H)-
- 30 one)sulphonyl, pyrimidinyl or ethoxycarbonyl; and

Z and E are as defined in said particular embodiment.

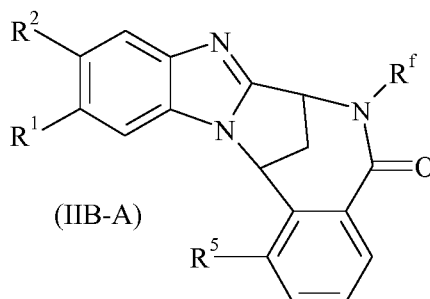
A particular sub-group of the compounds of formula (IB) above is represented by the compounds of formula (IIB) and *N*-oxides thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof :



5

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 and R^f are as defined above.

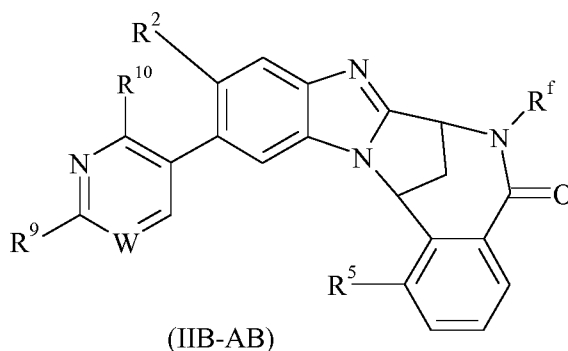
A particular sub-group of compounds of formula (IIB) above is represented by the compounds of formula (IIB-A) and *N*-oxides thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof :



10

wherein wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^5 and R^f are as defined above.

A particular sub-group of compounds of formula (IIB-A) above is represented by the compounds of formula (IIB-AB) and *N*-oxides thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,;



wherein,

W represents N or C-H;

R⁹ represents hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, amino(C₁₋₆)alkyl or
 5 phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl;

R¹⁰ represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl; and

R², R⁵ and R^f are as defined above.

In one embodiment, W represents N. In another embodiment, W represents C-H.

Suitably, R⁹ represents hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl or (C₁₋₆)alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl.

10 Illustratively, R⁹ represents hydroxyisopropyl or methoxyisopropyl.

Particular values of R⁹ include 2-hydroxy-prop-2-yl and 2-methoxy-prop-2-yl.

In one embodiment, R⁹ represents hydroxyisopropyl. In a particular aspect of that
 embodiment, R⁹ represents 2-hydroxy-prop-2-yl.

In another embodiment, R⁹ represents methoxyisopropyl. In a particular aspect of
 15 that embodiment, R⁹ represents 2-methoxy-prop-2-yl.

In a further embodiment, R⁹ represents aminoisopropyl. In a particular aspect of
 that embodiment, R⁹ represents 2-amino-prop-2-yl.

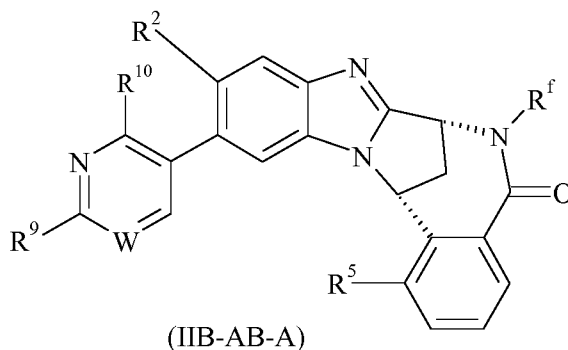
In another embodiment, R⁹ represents phosphate(C₁₋₆)alkyl. . In a particular aspect
 of that embodiment, R⁹ represents 2-phosphate-prop-2-yl.

20 In one embodiment, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen. In another embodiment, R¹⁰
 represents C₁₋₆ alkyl. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, R¹⁰ represents methyl.

Illustratively, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen or methyl.

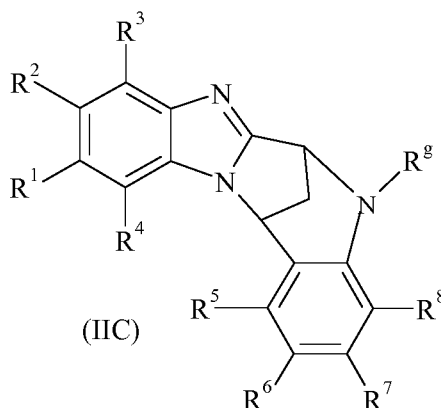
Particularly, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen.

A particular sub-group of compounds of formula (IIB-AB) above is represented by the compounds of formula (IIB-AB-A) and *N*-oxides thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof :



5 wherein W, R^f, R², R⁵, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are as defined above.

Another particular sub-group of the compounds of formula (IB) above is represented by the compounds of formula (IIC) and *N*-oxides thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof :



10 wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R^g are as defined above.

Specific novel compounds in accordance with the present invention include each of the compounds whose preparation is described in the accompanying Examples, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof, and co-crystals thereof.

15 Therefore, in a particular aspect, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) which are selected from the group consisting of (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-methoxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-

- (difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-(propan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-one; (2Z)-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-ylidene]acetonitrile; (2E)-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-ylidene]acetonitrile; (7R,14R) and (7S, 14S)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-d][2]benzazocin-5(6H)-one; (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine; [(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]acetic acid; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-5(14H)-thione; (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine; 2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (7R,14R)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-methoxy-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1,10-difluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine; 2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-

- (difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 1-[(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]ethanone; 1-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]ethanone;
- 5 (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-
- 10 (difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzoxazepine; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzoxazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-11-carbonitrile; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-
- 15 7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(6-oxo-1,6-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-
- 20 (difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6-methyl-pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6-methyl-pyrimidin-5-yl]-
- 25 6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(*S*-methylsulfonylimidoyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (1*R*,11*R*)-18-
- 30 (difluoromethoxy)-6-fluoro-5-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-3,9,12-triazapentacyclo[9.8.1.0²,10³,8⁰,14¹⁹]icosa-2(10),4,6,8,14(19),15,17-heptaen-13-one hydrochloride; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(cis-1,3-dihydroxy-3-methylcyclobutyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-

b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; ethyl [(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]acetate; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-
5 methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; *tert*-butyl (2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-
yl)carbamate; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-
6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-
10 amine; azetidin-3-yl[(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]methanone; [(6*R*,12*R*)-11-
(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl][1-(methylsulfonyl)azetidin-3-
yl]methanone; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
15 methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
azetidin-3-yl[(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]methanone; *cis*-1-{5-
[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-
20 methylcyclobutane-1,3-diol; (6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-{2-[(1*s*,5*s*)-3,7-dioxa-9-
azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine; [(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-
fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]acetic acid; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-
25 fluoro-7-(pyridin-3-ylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 1-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-
(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-
c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol; 2-{5-
[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
30 methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-
[(6*R*,12*R*)-7-(cyclopropylsulfonyl)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-
[(6*R*,12*R*)-7-(2-{*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)ethyl]-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-

7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(2-hydroxyethyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(phenylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-(5-{(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-[(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)sulfonyl]-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(phenylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-(5-{(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-[(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)sulfonyl]-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol; [(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-oxo-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]acetic acid; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxyethyl)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(trideutero)methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{6-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyridin-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (6*R*,12*R*)-3,10-dibromo-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine; (6*R*,12*R*)-2,8,10-trichloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-*d*][2]benzazocin-5(6*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-

1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[(1*S*,5*S*)-3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-methyl-4-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(5*R* or 5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(5*R* or 5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 1-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone; 1-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-(methylsulfonyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-

- [(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
- 5 (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-
- 10 (difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-{6-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-2-methylpyridin-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-
- 15 (difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepine; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (6*R*,7*R*,12*S*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepine 7-oxide; (6*R*,7*S*,12*S*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-
- 20 methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepine 7-oxide; 2-{5-[(6*R*,7*R*,12*S*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-oxido-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*R*,7*S*,12*S*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-oxido-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-
- 25 (difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepine 7,7-dioxide; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,7-dioxido-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 1-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-
- 30 yl]ethanone; 1-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone; 1-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-

hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone;
1-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone; (7*R*,14*R*)-10-fluoro-1-hydroxy-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5-oxido-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methano-5 λ -4-benzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{6-[1-(methylsulfonyl)cyclopropyl]pyridin-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dimethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dimethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4,6-dimethylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,14-dihydro-7*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][2,5]benzoxazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,14-dihydro-7*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][2,5]benzoxazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-12-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-4-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-9-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-

- b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-*c*][1]benzazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(*cis*-1,3-dihydroxy-3-methylcyclobutyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; Ethyl (7*R*,14*S*)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate; ethyl (7*R*,14*S*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate; 2-{5-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxido-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,5-dioxido-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
- 2-{5-[(6*R*,7*R*,14*S*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*S*,7*R*,14*S*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; 2-{5-[(6*R*,7*R*,14*S*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol;
- (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyridin-3-yl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*,12*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-amine, dihydrochloride salt; *tert*-Butyl 3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-1-carboxylate; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(3-hydroxypyrrolidin-3-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one, dihydrochloride salt; methyl

(2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methylidene-5,14-dihydro-7*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][2,5]benzoxazocine; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methyl pyrimidin-5-yl}-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5] benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(piperazin-1-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-[6-(piperazin-1-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-{6-[4-(methylsulfonyl)piperazin-1-yl]pyridine-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[2-(dimethylamino)propan-2-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 1-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-(1-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]-2-(3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)ethanone; (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-[(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)sulfonyl]-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine; 5-{[(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]sulfonyl}pyridin-2(1*H*)-one; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,5-dioxido-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-methyl-4-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(pyrimidin-2-yl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine; ethyl-(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-7(12*H*)-carboxylate; ethyl-(6*R*,12*R*)-11-

(difluoromethoxy)-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-7(12*H*)-carboxylate; *N*-(1-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}cyclobutyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[6-(1-aminocyclobutyl)pyridin-3-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; *N*-(3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[6-(3-aminooxetan-3-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; *N*-(3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide; *N*-(3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]-1-oxidopyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; [(6*R*,7*E*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6*H*-6,12-methano-7*λ*-4-benzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzothiazepin-7(12*H*)-ylidene]cyanamide; *N*-(2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)methanesulfonamide; *N*-(2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)acetamide; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(pyrrolidin-2-yl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-11-[2-(5-oxo-1,4-diazepan-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-

- 5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-11-[4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxy-3-methylazetidin-1-yl)-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-trideutero-methyl-11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1-oxidothiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-11-[2-(4,4-difluoro-1-hydroxycyclohexyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxy-1,1-dioxidotetrahydrothiophen-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (3R)-3-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-hydroxytetrahydrothiophenium-1-olate; (3S)-3-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-hydroxytetrahydrothiophenium-1-olate; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxyoxetan-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{1-[1-(methylsulfonyl)azetidin-3-yl]-1H-pyrazol-4-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-hydroxypyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1,4-dihydroxy-4-methylcyclohexyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; 2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-2-methylpropanenitrile; 1-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-methylazetidine-3-carbonitrile; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[(1S,4S)-2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(thiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one; (7R,14R)-1-

- (difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(3,3-difluoroazetidin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-
- 5 (difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(7-oxo-3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]non-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1,1-dioxidothiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-
- 10 7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(1-methyl-6-oxo-1,6-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-
- 15 aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-trideutero methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(trifluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(3-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)azetidin-1-yl)-6,7-dihydro-
- 20 7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-((2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-10-fluoro-1-(trifluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-((2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-
- 25 (difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(difluoromethyl)-2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-11-[2-(2-
- 30 hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-11-[2-(2-

hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-
 1-(difluoromethoxy)-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-{2-[di(prop-2-en-
 5 1-yl)amino]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-11-
 [6-(*S*-methylsulfonimidoyl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(*S*-
 methylsulfonimidoyl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
 10 *b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-{2-[di(prop-2-en-
 1-yl)amino]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(2-((2*R**)-
 hydroxybutan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-
 methanobenzo[*f*]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazocin-5(14*H*)-one; (7*R*,14*R*)-1-
 15 (difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(2-((2*S**)-hydroxybutan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-
 dihydro-7,14-methanobenzo[*f*]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazocin-5(14*H*)-one; 2-{5-
 [(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-
 methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl
 phosphate, disodium salt; 2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-methyl-5-oxo-
 20 5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-
 2-yl}propan-2-yl phosphate, disodium salt; ammonium 2-(5-((7*R*,14*R*)-1-
 (difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-
 methanobenzo[*f*]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazocin-11-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-yl
 sulphate; and 4-((2-(5-((7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-
 25 tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzo[*f*]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazocin-11-yl)pyrimidin-
 2-yl)propan-2-yl)oxy)-4-oxobutanoic acid.

The compounds in accordance with the present invention are beneficial in the
 treatment and/or prevention of various human ailments. These include autoimmune and
 inflammatory disorders; neurological and neurodegenerative disorders; pain and
 30 nociceptive disorders; cardiovascular disorders; metabolic disorders; ocular disorders; and
 oncological disorders.

Inflammatory and autoimmune disorders include systemic autoimmune disorders,
 autoimmune endocrine disorders and organ-specific autoimmune disorders. Systemic

autoimmune disorders include systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), psoriasis, psoriatic arthropathy, vasculitis, inflammatory myopathy (including polymyositis, dermatomyositis, inclusion body myositis), scleroderma, multiple sclerosis, systemic sclerosis, ankylosing spondylitis, rheumatoid arthritis, non-specific inflammatory arthritis, juvenile
5 inflammatory arthritis, juvenile idiopathic arthritis (including oligoarticular and polyarticular forms thereof), anaemia of chronic disease (ACD), Still's disease (juvenile and/or adult onset), Behçet's disease and Sjögren's syndrome. Autoimmune endocrine disorders include thyroiditis. Organ-specific autoimmune disorders include Addison's disease, haemolytic or pernicious anaemia, acute kidney injury (AKI; including cisplatin-
10 induced AKI), diabetic nephropathy (DN), obstructive uropathy (including cisplatin-induced obstructive uropathy), glomerulonephritis (including Goodpasture's syndrome, immune complex-mediated glomerulonephritis and antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA)-associated glomerulonephritis), lupus nephritis (LN), minimal change disease, Graves' disease, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, inflammatory bowel disease
15 (including Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, indeterminate colitis and pouchitis), pemphigus, atopic dermatitis, autoimmune hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, autoimmune pneumonitis, autoimmune carditis, myasthenia gravis, spontaneous infertility, osteoporosis, osteopenia, erosive bone disease, chondritis, cartilage degeneration and/or destruction, fibrosing disorders (including various forms of hepatic and pulmonary
20 fibrosis), asthma, rhinitis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), respiratory distress syndrome, sepsis, fever, muscular dystrophy (including Duchenne muscular dystrophy) and organ transplant rejection (including kidney allograft rejection).

Additional inflammatory and autoimmune disorders include scleritis, Takayasu arteritis, giant cell arteritis, scleritis, hidradenitis suppurativa, pyoderma gangrenosum,
25 sarcoidosis, polymyalgia rheumatica, axial spondyloarthritis. Neurological and neurodegenerative disorders include Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, ischaemia, stroke, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, spinal cord injury, head trauma, seizures and epilepsy.

Cardiovascular disorders include thrombosis, cardiac hypertrophy, hypertension,
30 irregular contractility of the heart (e.g. during heart failure), and sexual disorders (including erectile dysfunction and female sexual dysfunction). Modulators of TNF α function may also be of use in the treatment and/or prevention of myocardial infarction (see J.J. Wu *et al.*, *JAMA*, 2013, **309**, 2043-2044).

Metabolic disorders include diabetes (including insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus and juvenile diabetes), dyslipidemia and metabolic syndrome.

Ocular disorders include retinopathy (including diabetic retinopathy, proliferative retinopathy, non-proliferative retinopathy and retinopathy of prematurity), macular
5 oedema (including diabetic macular oedema), age-related macular degeneration (ARMD), vascularisation (including corneal vascularisation and neovascularisation), retinal vein occlusion, and various forms of uveitis (including iritis) and keratitis

Oncological disorders, which may be acute or chronic, include proliferative disorders, especially cancer, and cancer-associated complications (including skeletal
10 complications, cachexia and anaemia). Particular categories of cancer include haematological malignancy (including leukaemia and lymphoma) and non-haematological malignancy (including solid tumour cancer, sarcoma, meningioma, glioblastoma multiforme, neuroblastoma, melanoma, gastric carcinoma and renal cell carcinoma). Chronic leukaemia may be myeloid or lymphoid. Varieties of leukaemia include
15 lymphoblastic T cell leukaemia, chronic myelogenous leukaemia (CML), chronic lymphocytic/lymphoid leukaemia (CLL), hairy-cell leukaemia, acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL), acute myelogenous leukaemia (AML), myelodysplastic syndrome, chronic neutrophilic leukaemia, acute lymphoblastic T cell leukaemia, plasmacytoma, immunoblastic large cell leukaemia, mantle cell leukaemia, multiple myeloma, acute
20 megakaryoblastic leukaemia, acute megakaryocytic leukaemia, promyelocytic leukaemia and erythroleukaemia. Varieties of lymphoma include malignant lymphoma, Hodgkin's lymphoma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, lymphoblastic T cell lymphoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, follicular lymphoma, MALT1 lymphoma and marginal zone lymphoma. Varieties of non-haematological malignancy include cancer of the prostate, lung, breast,
25 rectum, colon, lymph node, bladder, kidney, pancreas, liver, ovary, uterus, cervix, brain, skin, bone, stomach and muscle. Modulators of TNF α function may also be used to increase the safety of the potent anticancer effect of TNF (see F.V. Hauwermeiren *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 2013, **123**, 2590-2603).

Compounds according to the present invention can be particularly beneficial for the
30 treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, psoriatic arthropathy, axial spondyloarthritis, juvenile idiopathic arthritis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, uveitis, Behçet's disease and Takayasu arteritis.

The present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound in accordance with the invention as described above, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, in association with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers.

- 5 Pharmaceutical compositions according to the invention may take a form suitable for oral, buccal, parenteral, nasal, topical, ophthalmic or rectal administration, or a form suitable for administration by inhalation or insufflation.

For oral administration, the pharmaceutical compositions may take the form of, for example, tablets, lozenges or capsules prepared by conventional means with
10 pharmaceutically acceptable excipients such as binding agents (e.g. pregelatinised maize starch, polyvinylpyrrolidone or hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose); fillers (e.g. lactose, microcrystalline cellulose or calcium hydrogenphosphate); lubricants (e.g. magnesium stearate, talc or silica); disintegrants (e.g. potato starch or sodium glycollate); or wetting agents (e.g. sodium lauryl sulphate). The tablets may be coated by methods well known in
15 the art. Liquid preparations for oral administration may take the form of, for example, solutions, syrups or suspensions, or they may be presented as a dry product for constitution with water or other suitable vehicle before use. Such liquid preparations may be prepared by conventional means with pharmaceutically acceptable additives such as suspending agents, emulsifying agents, non-aqueous vehicles or preservatives. The preparations may
20 also contain buffer salts, flavouring agents, colouring agents or sweetening agents, as appropriate.

Preparations for oral administration may be suitably formulated to give controlled release of the active compound.

For buccal administration, the compositions may take the form of tablets or
25 lozenges formulated in conventional manner.

The compounds of formula (I) may be formulated for parenteral administration by injection, e.g. by bolus injection or infusion. Formulations for injection may be presented in unit dosage form, e.g. in glass ampoules or multi-dose containers, e.g. glass vials. The compositions for injection may take such forms as suspensions, solutions or emulsions in
30 oily or aqueous vehicles, and may contain formulatory agents such as suspending, stabilising, preserving and/or dispersing agents. Alternatively, the active ingredient may

be in powder form for constitution with a suitable vehicle, e.g. sterile pyrogen-free water, before use.

In addition to the formulations described above, the compounds of formula (I) may also be formulated as a depot preparation. Such long-acting formulations may be administered by implantation or by intramuscular injection.

For nasal administration or administration by inhalation, the compounds according to the present invention may be conveniently delivered in the form of an aerosol spray presentation for pressurised packs or a nebuliser, with the use of a suitable propellant, e.g. dichlorodifluoromethane, fluorotrichloromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethane, carbon dioxide or other suitable gas or mixture of gases.

The compositions may, if desired, be presented in a pack or dispenser device which may contain one or more unit dosage forms containing the active ingredient. The pack or dispensing device may be accompanied by instructions for administration.

For topical administration the compounds of use in the present invention may be conveniently formulated in a suitable ointment containing the active component suspended or dissolved in one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. Particular carriers include, for example, mineral oil, liquid petroleum, propylene glycol, polyoxyethylene, polyoxypropylene, emulsifying wax and water. Alternatively, the compounds of use in the present invention may be formulated in a suitable lotion containing the active component suspended or dissolved in one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. Particular carriers include, for example, mineral oil, sorbitan monostearate, polysorbate 60, cetyl esters wax, cetaryl alcohol, benzyl alcohol, 2-octyldodecanol and water.

For ophthalmic administration the compounds of use in the present invention may be conveniently formulated as micronized suspensions in isotonic, pH-adjusted sterile saline, either with or without a preservative such as a bactericidal or fungicidal agent, for example phenylmercuric nitrate, benzylalkonium chloride or chlorhexidine acetate. Alternatively, for ophthalmic administration compounds may be formulated in an ointment such as petrolatum.

For rectal administration the compounds of use in the present invention may be conveniently formulated as suppositories. These can be prepared by mixing the active component with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at room temperature but

liquid at rectal temperature and so will melt in the rectum to release the active component. Such materials include, for example, cocoa butter, beeswax and polyethylene glycols.

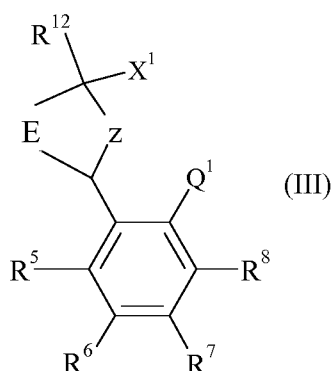
The quantity of a compound of use in the invention required for the prophylaxis or treatment of a particular condition will vary depending on the compound chosen and the condition of the patient to be treated. In general, however, daily dosages may range from around 10 ng/kg to 1000 mg/kg, typically from 100 ng/kg to 100 mg/kg, e.g. around 0.01 mg/kg to 40 mg/kg body weight, for oral or buccal administration, from around 10 ng/kg to 50 mg/kg body weight for parenteral administration, and from around 0.05 mg to around 1000 mg, e.g. from around 0.5 mg to around 1000 mg, for nasal administration or administration by inhalation or insufflation.

If desired, a compound in accordance with the present invention may be co-administered with another pharmaceutically active agent, e.g. an anti-inflammatory molecule.

It will be apparent to the person skilled in the art that there are various synthetic pathways that can lead to the compounds according to the invention. The following processes are aimed at illustrating some of these synthetic pathways but should not be construed in any way as a limitation on how the compounds according to the invention should be made.

It will also be apparent to the person skilled in the art that there may be variations in the synthetic pathways depending on the sub-classes of compounds of formula (I).

Compounds of formula (I) above, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclisation or includes reaction of an intermediate of formula (III),



wherein E, Z, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R¹² are as defined above;

X^1 represents hydroxy, -SH, CH_2-OH , $-CO_2H$, $-NHR^f$, $-NHR^g$, $-C(O)-NHR^f$, Y, or $-CH_2-Y$;

Q^1 represents hydrogen, hydroxy, halogen, amino, $-SR^i$, $-CO_2H$, $-CH_2-Y$, $-CO-R^j$ or $-CH(OH)-CF_3$

5 Y represents a suitable leaving group;

R^f and R^g are as defined above,

R^i represents hydrogen, methyl, $-CH-C(O)-O-C_2H_5$, or $-(CH_2)_2-C(O)-O-CH_2-CH(CH_2CH_3)$ $[(CH_2)_3CH_3]$; and

R^j represents hydrogen or methyl.

10 Suitably, Y represents halogen or (C_{1-6}) alkylsulphonate.

Appositely, Y represents bromo or methylsulphonate.

Suitably, R^f and R^g represent hydrogen.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -O- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an
15 intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents a leaving group Y, e.g. halogen, preferably bromo, and Q^1 represents hydroxy, in the presence of a base, for example sodium hydride or silver carbonate.

Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -O- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular
20 cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents hydroxy and Q^1 represents a leaving group Y, e.g. halogen, preferably bromo, in the presence of a base, e.g. an inorganic base such as cesium carbonate, and copper iodide, at elevated temperature.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents
25 $-O-C(CH_2-CN)-$ may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents hydroxy and Q^1 represents $-CO_2H$, in the presence of cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane.

Such intramolecular cyclization is conveniently performed at elevated temperature in a suitable solvent, e.g., toluene.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-O-C(O)-$ may be prepared by the same process as described above for compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-O-C(CH_3-CN)-$, followed by treatment with a base, e.g., potassium hydroxide.

- 5 Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-O-C(O)-$ may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents hydroxy and Q^1 represents $-CO_2H$, in the presence of an acid, e.g. a mineral acid, in a suitable solvent.
- 10 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-C(O)-O-$ may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents $-CO_2H$ and Q^1 represents $-OH$, in the presence of thionyl chloride, or alternatively, by using a suitable coupling reagent, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.
- 15 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-S-$, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents $-SH$ and Q^1 represents halogen, in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, according to a method analogous to that described in Stambuli J. et al, *J. Org. Chem.*, 2009, 74, 4005-4008.
- 20 Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-S-$, may be prepared by a process which comprises reacting an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents $-OH$ and Q^1 represents $-S-(CH_2)_2-C(O)-O-CH_2-CH(CH_2CH_3)[(CH_2)_3CH_3]$, with methanesulphonylchloride in the presence of a base, e.g. N,N-diisopropylethylamine, in a suitable solvent, e.g.
- 25 tetrahydrofuran, to afford the corresponding compound wherein X^1 represents a mesylate moiety, followed by reaction with a solution of sodium ethoxide.

- Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and $-X-Q-$ represents $-N(R^g)-$, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents $-NHR^g$ and
- 30 Q^1 represents halogen, in the presence of a suitable transition metal catalyst, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

The intramolecular cyclization may be conveniently effected in the presence of palladium(II)acetate and (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)1,1'-binaphthyl, in the presence of base, e.g., potassium carbonate or cesium carbonate, in a suitable solvent, e.g., toluene, at elevated temperature.

5 Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-, and R^g represents hydrogen, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 is a leaving group Y, e.g. methylsulphonate, and Q^1 represents amino. The reaction is conveniently effected by first protecting the amino group of Q^1 with
10 a suitable protecting group, e.g. *tert*-butoxy carbonyl, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art, followed by subsequent addition of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydride in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethyl formamide.

 Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-, and R^g represents -CO-(C_{3-7})heterocycloalkyl, may be prepared by a
15 process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents -NHR ^{g} , wherein R^g is as defined above, and Q^1 represents halogen. The reaction is conveniently effected by addition of a suitable base, e.g. cesium acetate, and cuprous iodide in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethylsulfoxide, at elevated temperature. Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-
20 Q- represents -N(R^g)-, and R^g represents respectively (C_{2-6})alkoxycarbonyl, heteroaryl-SO₂-heteroaryl or -SO₂-aryl may be prepared via an analogous method to the one described here above for R^g representing -CO-(C_{3-7})heterocycloalkyl.

 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen or methyl, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(O)-, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular
25 cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen or methyl, X^1 represents -NHR ^{f} and Q^1 is halogen, preferably chloro, in the presence of carbon monoxide and a transition metal catalyst.

 The reaction is conveniently carried out at elevated temperature, e.g. 100°C or 150°C, and under an elevated pressure of carbon monoxide, in a suitable solvent, e.g., a cyclic ether such as 1,4-dioxane, or dimethylsulfoxide or dimethylacetamide
30 e.g.,

 The transition metal catalyst of use in the above reaction is suitably selected from dichloro [bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II),

[bis(diphenylphosphino)xanthene] palladium(II) and 2,2-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetracyclohexyl-1 λ^5 , 3 λ^5 palladacyclohexane.

Alternatively, a solution of palladium (II) acetate and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene in a suitable solvent may be used.

5 An analogous reaction may be performed using molybdenum hexacarbonyl as an alternative source of carbon monoxide.

Such intramolecular cyclization is conveniently performed in the presence of a base, e.g. an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate or by activation using molecular sieves.

10 Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein, -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(O)-, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein, X¹ represents -NHR^f, R^f represents hydrogen, and Q¹ is -COOH, in the presence of 4-methylmorpholine and (1-cyano-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethylidenaminooxy) dimethylamino-morpholinocarbenium hexafluorophosphate
15 (COMU). The reaction is conveniently effected in acetonitrile.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -C(O)-N(R^f)- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, X¹ is -C(O)-NH(R^f) and Q¹ is halogen, preferably bromine, in the presence of a suitable coupling reagent,
20 according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -C(O)-N(R^f)-, and R^f represents hydrogen, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, X¹ represents -CO₂H and Q¹ represents amino. The reaction may be
25 conveniently effected with a suitable coupling agent, e.g., 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDC), according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-SO₂- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of
30 an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, X¹ represents -NHR^f and Q¹ represents -SH, in the presence of hydrogen peroxide and thionyl chloride

according to a method analogous to that described by K. Bahrami, M. M. Khodaei, M. Soheilzad, *J. Org. Chem.*, 2009, 74, 9287-9291.

The reaction is conveniently performed at room temperature in a suitable solvent, e.g. an apolar solvent such as acetonitrile and in the presence of an organic base, e.g.

5 pyridine.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -SO₂-N(R^f)-, and R^f represents hydrogen, may be prepared by a process analogous to the one described above for -X-Q- which represents -N(R^f)-SO₂-, from an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X¹ represents -SH and Q¹ represents
10 amino. The reaction is conveniently effected by first protecting the amino group of Q¹ with a suitable protecting group according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-CH₂- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X¹ represents -CH₂-CO₂H
15 and Q¹ represents hydrogen, for example applying Friedel Crafts reaction conditions, in the presence of polyphosphoric acid. The resulting intermediate, wherein -X-Q- represents -CH₂-C(O)- is subsequently reduced according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents R^{12} represents hydrogen and
20 -O-CH₂- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X¹ represents hydroxy and Q¹ represents -CH₂-Y, wherein Y is a leaving group, e.g. halogen, preferably bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents
25 -CH₂-O- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X¹ represents -CH₂-OH and Q¹ represents halogen, preferably bromo. This reaction is conveniently effected in the presence of a suitable transition metal catalyst, e.g. palladium (II) or copper (II) catalyst, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

30 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -S-CH₂ may be prepared by a process analogous to the process of preparation of compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -O-CH₂- starting from intermediates

of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents -SH and Q^1 represents -CH₂-Y.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -CH₂-S- may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 is -CH₂-Y, Y is a suitable leaving group, e.g. halogen, and Q^1 represents -SH, in the presence of suitable base according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -CH₂-N(R^g)-, and R^g represents hydrogen, may be prepared by a process which comprises intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 is -CH₂-Y, wherein Y is a suitable leaving group, e.g. methylsulphonate, and Q^1 represents amino. The reaction is conveniently effected by first protecting the amino group of Q^1 with a suitable protecting group, e.g. *tert*-butoxy carbonyl, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art, followed by subsequent addition of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydride in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethyl formamide.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-CH₂- and R^g represents hydrogen may be prepared by a process involving intramolecular cyclization of the corresponding compound of formula (III) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, X^1 represents -NH(R^g) and wherein Q^1 represents formyl. The reaction is conveniently effected by (i) reaction with an acid, e.g. trifluoroacetic acid, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane and (ii) reduction of the compound obtained as a result of step (i) with an appropriate reducing agent, e.g. polymer supported cyano borohydride or borane-dimethylsulphide complex, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran or a mixture of tetrahydrofuran and ethanol.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-CH(CH₃)- and R^g represents hydrogen may be prepared according to a method analogous as the one described here above for compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-CH₂-, but from intermediate of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents acetyl.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12} represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)-CH(CF₃)- and R^g represents hydrogen may be prepared according to a method analogous to the one described here above for compounds of formula (I) wherein R^{12}

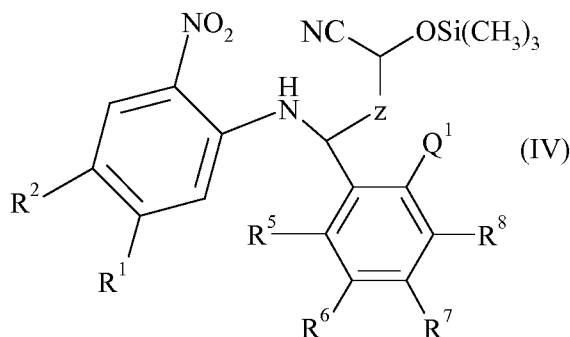
represents hydrogen and -X-Q- represents -N(R⁸)-CH₂-, by reacting compound obtained as a result of step (i) with (trifluoromethyl)trimethyl silane, in the presence of trifluoroacetic acid and potassium hydrogen fluoride, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethylformamide.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents –
 5 N=S(O)(CH₃)- may be prepared by a process involving intramolecular cyclization of the corresponding compound of formula (III) wherein, X¹ represents -NH(R⁸), R⁸ represents hydrogen, and wherein Q¹ represents -SCH₃. The reaction is conveniently effected by (i) adding bromine in dichloromethane followed by (ii) oxidation e.g. with m-chloroperbenzoic acid.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents –O-
 10 CH(CF₃)- may be prepared by a process involving intramolecular cyclization of the corresponding compound of formula (III) wherein, X¹ represents -hydroxy and wherein Q¹ represents -CH(OH)CF₃. The reaction is conveniently effected using cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at elevated
 15 temperature, e.g. 100°C.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹² represents hydrogen, -X-Q- represents –O-
 C(=CH₂)- may be prepared by a process involving intramolecular cyclization of the corresponding compound of formula (III) wherein, X¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromo, and wherein Q¹ represents -CO-R^j and R^j represents CH₃. The reaction is conveniently effected
 20 in the presence of sodium hydride in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at low temperature.

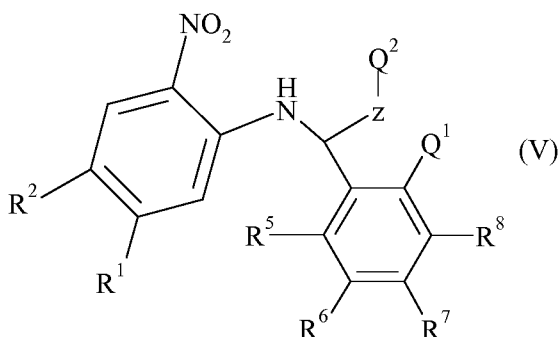
Intermediates of formula (III) wherein E represents (Ea) as defined above, and X¹ represents hydroxy, may be prepared by a process which comprises the intramolecular cyclisation and desilylation of an intermediate of formula (IV),



wherein Z, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above.

The reaction is suitably performed in the presence of tin(II) chloride at elevated temperature in a polar solvent, e.g. ethanol.

- 5 Intermediate (IV) as defined above may be prepared by a process comprising reacting intermediate (V),

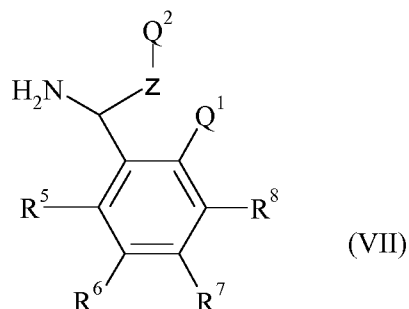
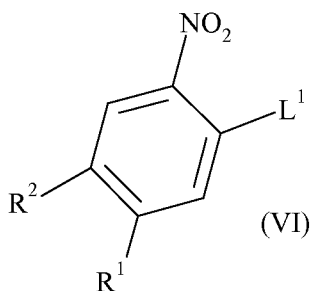


wherein Q² represents -C(O)-H, and R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above; with zinc iodide and triethylsilyl cyanide in the presence of a base, e.g.

- 10 triethylamine.

Typically, the intermediate of formula (V) wherein Q² represents -C(O)-H may be prepared from the corresponding intermediate wherein Q² represents -CO₂R^h and R^h represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, by reduction with a conventional reducing agent, e.g. a metal hydride, such as diisobutyl-aluminium hydride (DIBAL-H).

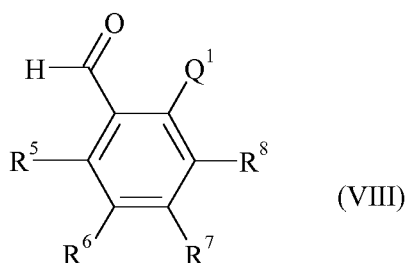
- 15 The intermediate of formula (V) wherein Q² represents -CO₂R^h may be obtained by a process which comprises reacting an intermediate of formula (VI) with an intermediate of formula (VII),



wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , Z , Q^1 and Q^2 are as defined above; and L^1 is a suitable leaving group, e.g. a halogen atom, for example bromine.

The reaction is conveniently performed in the presence of a base, e.g. an inorganic base, such as potassium carbonate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. an apolar solvent such as acetonitrile, at elevated temperature.

Intermediates of formula (VII) may be prepared by a multi-step process starting from an intermediate of formula (VIII),



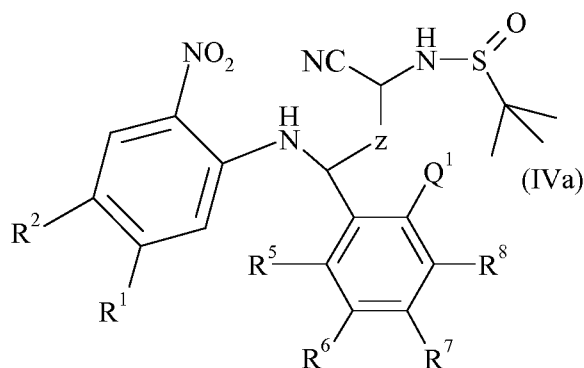
wherein R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 and Q^1 are as defined above; which process comprises the following steps:

- (i) Reaction of intermediate (VIII) with (S)-*t*-butylsulfinamide in the presence of $K_3PO_4/KHPO_4$ in a suitable solvent, e.g. THF;
- (ii) Reacting the compound obtained from step (i) with a compound of formula L^2-Z-Q^2 , wherein Z and Q^2 are as defined above and L^2 is a suitable leaving group, e.g. halogen, such as bromine, and activated zinc metal dust prepared according to conditions described in Hilpert, H. et al, *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, 2013, 56(10), 3980-3995, in the presence of transition metal salt, e.g. copper chloride at elevated temperature;
- (iii) Subsequent reaction with a strong mineral acid, e.g. hydrogen chloride.

Intermediates of formula (VIII) wherein R^5 represents halogen, e.g. chloro, may be transformed into the corresponding intermediate of formula (VIII) wherein R^5 represents difluoromethoxy by a process which comprises (i) reaction with potassium hydroxide, in water at low temperature and (ii) reaction with diethyl(bromodifluoromethyl)phosphonate, at low temperature.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein E represents (Ea) as defined above, and $-X^1$ represents $-NH(R^g)$ and R^g represents hydrogen, may be prepared by a process which

comprises the reduction, intramolecular cyclization and desulfination of an intermediate of formula (IVa),

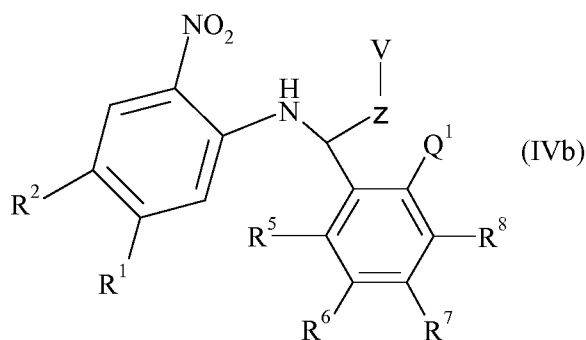


wherein Z, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above.

- 5 The reaction is suitably performed in the presence of tin(II) chloride, followed by addition of a strong acid, e.g. hydrogen chloride, at elevated temperature in a polar solvent, e.g. ethanol.

- 10 Alternatively, the reduction and cyclization may be performed by a process involving (i) reduction using hydrogen under pressure, in the presence of zinc bromine and of platinum on charcoal and (ii) addition of a strong acid, e.g. hydrogen chloride, at elevated temperature in a polar solvent, e.g. ethanol.

Intermediates of formula (IVa), may be prepared by a multi-step process starting from corresponding intermediates (IVb),



15

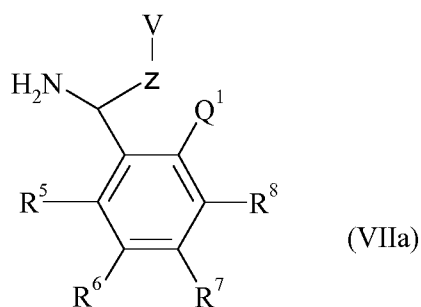
wherein Z, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above, and V represents CH=CH₂, which process comprises:

- (i) Reacting intermediate (IVb) with sodium periodate, in the presence of potassium dioxo(dioxo)osmium hydrate and 2,6-dimethyl pyridine, followed by addition of

sodium thiosulfate, to afford corresponding intermediates of formula (IVb) wherein V represents CH=O;

- (ii) Reacting intermediates of formula (IVb) wherein V represents CH=O with (R)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide, in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, eg. titanium (IV) isopropoxide, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, to afford corresponding intermediate of formula (IVb) wherein V represents CH=N-(SO)-*tert*-butyl;
- (iii) Further reaction with sodium cyanide, in the presence of scandium triflate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, to afford intermediates of formula (IVa).

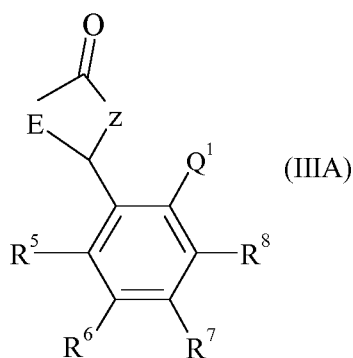
Intermediates of formula (IVb) wherein Z, R¹, R², R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above, and V represents CH=CH₂, may be prepared by a process comprising reacting intermediates of formula (VIIa),



wherein Z, V, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and Q¹ are as defined above for intermediates of formula (IVb), with an intermediate of formula (VI) as defined above, wherein L¹ is a halogen, e.g. fluorine, under conditions analogous to those described for the preparation of intermediates of formula (V).

Intermediates of formula (VIIa) may be prepared by a process analogous to the one described for intermediates of formula (VII), but wherein Q² is replaced by V.

Intermediates of formula (III), wherein E represents (Eb) or (Ec), as defined above, and wherein X¹ represents hydroxy may be prepared from intermediates of formula (IIIA),

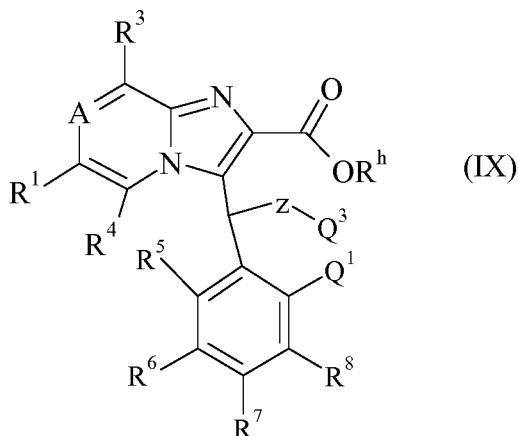


wherein R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , Z and Q^1 are as defined above; by reduction of the carbonyl moiety according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents $-N H(R^f)$, R^f represents hydrogen and R^{12} represents methyl may be prepared from intermediate of formula (IIIA) using the following sequence of steps :

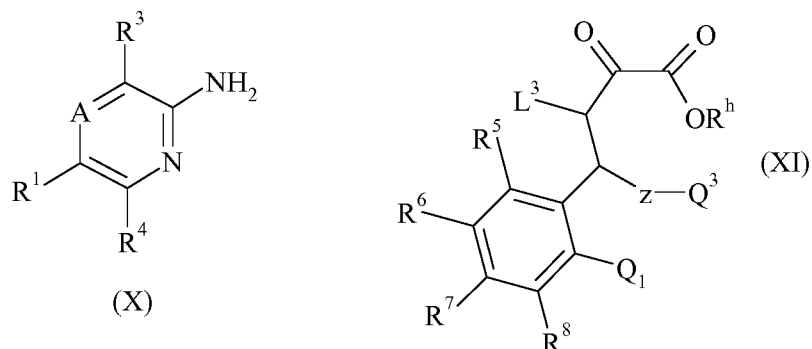
- (i) Reacting intermediate of formula (IIIA) with 2-methyl-2-propanesulfinamide in the presence of Titanium (IV) isopropoxide, in a solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at a suitable temperature, e.g. 50°C ;
- 10 (ii) Adding a solution of methylmagnesium bromide, at low temperature, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane;
- (iii) Removing the *tert*-butyl sulphinyl moiety in the presence of a strong acid, e.g. HCl, in a suitable solvent, e.g. 1,4-dioxane.

Intermediates of formula (IIIA) may be prepared by a process which comprises
15 intramolecular cyclization of an intermediate of formula (IX),



wherein A is N or C-R², Q³ is an electron withdrawing group, preferably an ester moiety, and R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^h, Z and Q¹ are as defined above; in the presence of a base, in a suitable solvent at elevated temperature.

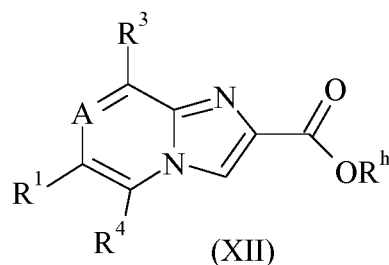
- Intermediates of formula (IX) may be prepared by a process which includes
 5 reacting an intermediate of formula (X) with an intermediate of formula (XI),



wherein A, R¹, R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^h, Z, Q¹ and Q³ are as defined above; and L³ is a suitable leaving group, typically a halogen atom, e.g. bromo.

- 10 The reaction is conveniently effected at an elevated temperature in a suitable solvent, e.g. a (C₁₋₄)alkanol such as ethanol, or an ether such as 1,4-dioxane or dimethoxyethane, and in the presence of magnesium sulphate.

- Alternatively, intermediates of formula (IX), wherein Q³ is -CO₂H, may be prepared according to a process which comprises reacting an intermediate of formula
 15 (XII),



- wherein A, R¹, R³, R⁴, and R^h are as defined above; with an intermediate of
 20 formula (VIII) as defined above, in the presence of Meldrum's acid, according to a method analogous to the one described in international patent application WO 2009/156091 or by M. Kerr et al. in J. Org. Chem 2013, 78, 10534.

The reaction is conveniently effected in a suitable solvent e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of proline and magnesium sulphate, at elevated temperature, e.g. 80°C.

Where they are not commercially available, the starting materials of formula (VI), (VIII), (X), (XI) and (XII) may be prepared by methods analogous to those described in the accompanying Examples, or by standard methods well known from the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents amino, may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 is hydroxy, by a process which comprises (i) treatment with diphenylphosphorylazide and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at low temperature, e.g. 0°C, and (ii) subsequent azawittig reaction using triphenylphosphine, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a mixture of water and toluene.

Intermediates of formula (III), wherein E represents (Eb) or (Ec), as defined above, and wherein X^1 represents amino may be prepared from intermediates of formula (IIIA), wherein R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , Z and Q^1 are as defined above; by a process which comprises reacting intermediates of formula (IIIA) with a C_{1-6} alkylsulfinamide, e.g. (R)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide, in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, e.g. titanium tetrakis ethanolate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, followed by reduction with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents a leaving group Y, e.g. halogen or (C_{1-6}) alkylsulphonate, may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 is hydroxy, according to standard methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents -SH, may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 is hydroxy or a leaving group Y, according to standard methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents -CO₂H may be prepared by hydrolysis of corresponding intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents cyano, according to standard methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents cyano may be prepared by nucleophilic substitution of intermediates of formula (III) wherein X^1 represents a leaving

group Y, and Y represents (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphonate-, according to standard methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -CH₂OH may be prepared by reduction of the corresponding intermediate of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -CO₂H, in the presence of a suitable reducing reagent, e.g., BH₃.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -CH₂-Y may be prepared from Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -CH₂OH, according to methods analogous to those described here above for intermediates of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents a leaving group Y, e.g. halogen or (C₁₋₆)alkylsulphonate.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -NH(R^g) and R^g represents -CO-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl may be prepared by reacting compounds of formula (III) wherein X¹ represents -NH₂ with a (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-COOH, in the presence of a base, e.g. N,N-diisopropylethylamine, and a coupling agent, e.g. HATU (*N*-[(dimethylamino)-1*H*-1,2,3-triazolo-[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-ylmethylene]-*N*-ethylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate *N*-oxide), in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethylformamide.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents formyl may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromine, by a process involving (i) reaction with potassium vinylfluoroborate, in the presence of a base and a transition metal catalyst and (ii) reaction with sodium periodate and osmium tetroxide, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. a cyclic ether, such as 1,4-dioxane, at a suitable temperature, e.g. 0°C.

Suitable bases include inorganic bases, such as cesium carbonate and suitable transition metal catalysts include 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride-dichloromethane complex.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents acetyl may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromine, by a process involving (i) reaction with tributyl(1-ethoxyvinyl)tin, in the presence of bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II)-dichloride, in a suitable solvent, e.g. toluene, at elevated temperature, and (ii) reaction with an acid, e.g. *para*-toluenesulphonic acid.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents -S-(CH₂)-(CH₂)-C(O)-O-CH₂-CH (CH₂CH₃) [(CH₂)₃CH₃], may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromine, by a process involving reaction with 3-

mercaptopropionic acid-2-ethylester, in the presence of a suitable transition metal catalyst, e.g. tris(benzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene, in a suitable solvent, e.g. 1,4-dioxane, at elevated temperature.

Similarly, intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents $-S-CH_2-C(O)-O-C_2H_5$ [(CH₂)₃CH₃], may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents halogen, e.g. bromine, by a process involving reaction with ethylthioglycolate, in the presence of a suitable transition metal catalyst, e.g. tris(benzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene, in a suitable solvent, e.g. 1,4-dioxane, at elevated temperature.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents $-S-CH_3$ may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents halogen, e.g. bromine, by a process which involves treatment with sodium thiomethoxide in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethylsulphoxide, at elevated temperature.

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents $-CH(OH)-CF_3$ may be prepared from intermediates of formula (III) wherein Q^1 represents $-C(O)-H$, by a process which involves reaction with tetrabutylammoniumfluoride, followed by (trifluoromethyl)trimethylsilane, in a suitable solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at low temperature.

It will be understood that any compound of formula (I) initially obtained from any of the above processes may, where appropriate, subsequently be elaborated into a further compound of formula (I) by techniques known from the art.

As an alternative to the methods described here above, compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents $-O-CH_2-$ may be prepared by a process involving reduction of compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents $-O-C(O)-$ carried out according to the method described in Sakai et al, *J. Org. Chem.* **2007**, 72, 5920-5922.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents $-N(R^g)-CH_2-$ may be prepared in a similar fashion from compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents $-N(R^f)-CO-$ or under any other conditions used for reduction of a lactam, known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents $-S-$, $-CH_2-S-$ or $-S-CH_2-$ may be transformed into compounds of formula (I) wherein $-X-Q-$ represents respectively $-SO-$

or -SO₂-; -CH₂-SO- or -CH₂-SO₂-; -SO-CH₂- or -SO₂-CH₂-, by performing oxidation according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -SO-, -CH₂-SO- or -SO-CH₂- may be transformed into compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents respectively
5 -S(O)(NH)-, -CH₂-S(O)(NH)-, or -S(O)(NH)-CH₂-, by a method analogous to that described in Okamura, H. et al, *Organic Letters*, 2004, 6(8), 1305-1307.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -S- may be transformed into compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -S(=N-CN)- by a process involving reaction with iodobenzene diacetate, in the presence of cyanamide. The reaction is
10 conveniently effected in acetonitrile at low temperature, e.g. 0°C.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(O)- may be converted into the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -N(R^f)-C(S)- by treatment with Lawesson's reagent according to methods known to the skilled person in the art.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -NH- may be further transformed into compounds of formula (I) wherein -X-Q- represents -N(R^g)- wherein R^g is an optionally substituted -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, by reaction with chloracetyl chloride, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane. Substituents may subsequently be introduced on the (C₁₋₆)alkyl moiety by treatment with a suitable base according to a method analogous
15 to the ones described in the accompanying Examples.

Compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent hydrogen, may further be transformed into the corresponding compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl, or its deuterated equivalent, by reaction with the corresponding
25 optionally substituted C₁₋₆ alkyl halide or deuterated equivalent, e.g. C₁₋₆ alkyl iodide or its deuterated equivalent, in the presence of a base, e.g. cesium carbonate or potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (KHMDS), in a suitable solvent, e.g., dimethylformamide or THF

Compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g
30 represent hydrogen, may further be transformed into the corresponding compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent acetyl by reaction

with acetic anhydride, in the presence of base, e.g. pyridine, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane.

Compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent hydrogen, may further be transformed into the corresponding compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent methyl, by reaction
5 with formaldehyde, in a suitable solvent, e.g. 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, followed by reaction with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride.

Compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent hydrogen, may further be transformed into the corresponding compounds of formula (I) or intermediates of formula (III) wherein R^f or R^g represent (C_{1-6})alkyl-
10 sulphonyl by treatment with the appropriate (C_{1-6}) alkylsulphonyl halide, e.g. methane sulphonyl chloride, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. N,N-diisopropylethylamine or triethylamine, in a suitable solvent e.g. dichloromethane.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains a
15 hydroxy group may be alkylated by treatment with the appropriate alkyl halide in the presence of a base, e.g. sodium hydride, or silver oxide.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains hydroxy may be converted into the corresponding fluoro-substituted compound by treatment with diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST) or bis(2-methoxyethyl)aminosulfur
20 trifluoride (BAST). A compound of formula (I) which contains hydroxy may be converted into the corresponding difluoro-substituted compound via a two-step procedure which comprises: (i) treatment with an oxidising agent, e.g. manganese dioxide; and (ii) treatment of the carbonyl-containing compound thereby obtained with DAST.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains an
25 N-H moiety may be alkylated by treatment with the appropriate alkyl halide, typically at an elevated temperature in an organic solvent such as acetonitrile; or at ambient temperature in the presence of a base, e.g. potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent, e.g. THF, in the presence of tetra-butylammonium bromide; or at elevated temperature in the presence of a base, e.g. sodium hydride, with or without tetra-butylammonium iodate, in a
30 suitable solvent, e.g. THF; or at elevated temperature in the presence of an alkali metal carbonate such as potassium carbonate or cesium carbonate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a dipolar aprotic solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide. A compound of formula (I)

which contains an N-H moiety may be methylated by treatment with formaldehyde in the presence of a reducing agent, e.g. sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains an N-H moiety may be acylated by treatment with the appropriate acid chloride, e.g. acetyl chloride, or with the appropriate carboxylic acid anhydride, e.g. acetic anhydride, typically
5 at ambient temperature in the presence of a base, e.g. an organic base such as triethylamine.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains an N-H moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound wherein the nitrogen
10 atom is substituted by C₁₋₆ alkyl-sulphonyl, e.g. methylsulphonyl, by treatment with the appropriate C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl chloride, e.g. methanesulphonyl chloride, or with the appropriate C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonic acid anhydride, e.g. methanesulphonic anhydride, typically at ambient temperature in the presence of a base, e.g. an organic base such as triethylamine or *N,N*-diisopropylethyl-amine.

15 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains an N-H moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound wherein the nitrogen atom is substituted by C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, e.g. methoxycarbonyl, by treatment with the corresponding C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl halide, in the presence of a base, e.g. potassium carbonate, in a suitable solvent, e.g., *N,N'*-dimethylformamide.

20 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) substituted by amino (-NH₂) may be converted into the corresponding compound substituted by C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonylamino, e.g. methylsulphonyl-amino, or bis[(C₁₋₆)alkylsulphonyl]amino, e.g. bis(methylsulphonyl)amino, by treatment with the appropriate C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl halide, e.g. a C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl chloride such as methanesulphonyl chloride, in the presence of a
25 suitable base, e.g. *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine, in a suitable solvent e.g. dichloromethane

Similarly a compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) substituted by amino may be transformed into the corresponding compound of formula (I) or intermediate of formula (III) substituted by NH-SO₂-(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, NH-SO₂-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, NH-SO₂-aryl or NH-SO₂-heteroaryl respectively from the
30 corresponding (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-sulphonylhalide, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-sulphonyl halide, aryl-sulphonyl-halide or heteroaryl-sulphonyl-halide.

Similarly, a compound of formula (I) substituted by hydroxy (-OH) may be converted into the corresponding compound substituted by C₁₋₆ alkyl-sulphonyloxy, e.g. methylsulphonyloxy, by treatment with the appropriate C₁₋₆ alkyl-sulphonyl halide, e.g. a C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl chloride such as methanesulphonyl chloride.

5 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) substituted by amino (-NH₂) may be converted into the corresponding compound substituted by (tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl-NH- by treatment with (bromoethoxy)-tert-butyltrimethylsilane, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. potassium carbonate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethyl formamide, at elevated temperature.

10 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) containing the moiety -S- may be converted into the corresponding compound containing the moiety -S(O)- by treatment with 3-chloroperoxy-benzoic acid. Likewise, a compound of formula (I) containing the moiety -S(O)- may be converted into the corresponding compound containing the moiety -S(O)₂- by treatment with 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid.

15 Alternatively, a compound of formula (I) containing the moiety -S- may be converted into the corresponding compound containing the moiety -S(O)₂- by treatment with Oxone® (potassium peroxymonosulfate).

20 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) containing an aromatic nitrogen atom may be converted into the corresponding N-oxide derivative by treatment with 3-chloroperoxy-benzoic acid.

25 A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) which contains a carbonyl may be converted into the corresponding alcohol by treatment with a suitable borohydride, e.g. lithium-tri-*sec*-butyl-borohydride or sodium borohydride, in a suitable solvent e.g. THF. A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromo, may be converted into the corresponding compound wherein R¹ represents an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl moiety by treatment with the appropriately substituted aryl or heteroaryl boronic acid or a cyclic ester thereof formed with an organic diol, e.g. pinacol, 1,3-propanediol or neopentyl glycol. The reaction is typically effected at elevated temperature in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, e.g. [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), or bis[3-(diphenylphosphanyl)cyclopenta-2,4-dien-1-yl]iron-dichloropalladium-dichloromethane complex, and a base, e.g. an inorganic

30

base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or cesium carbonate, or potassium phosphate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. 1,4-dioxane or a mixture of 1,4-dioxane and water.

Alternatively, a compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ represents halogen, e.g. bromo, may be converted into the corresponding compound wherein R¹ represents an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl moiety by treatment with the appropriately substituted aryl or heteroaryl boronic acid, in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, e.g. tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0), and tricyclohexylphosphoniumtetrafluoroborate, in the presence of a base, e.g. potassium phosphate, in a suitable solvent, e.g. cyclic ether, such as 1,4-dioxane. The reaction is conveniently effected at elevated temperature and microwave technology may be used. A compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ represents 2-oxo-(1H)-pyridinyl may be obtained by treatment of the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ represents 2-methoxypyridinyl, with pyridine hydrochloride at elevated temperature, e.g. 160°C.

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ represents an ester moiety may be obtained by reacting the corresponding compound of formula (I) or the intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ is halogen, e.g. chloride, with a base, e.g. sodium carbonate, and the corresponding alcohol moiety in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, typically bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II).

A compound of formula (I) or an intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ represents cyano may be obtained by reacting the corresponding compound of formula (I) or the intermediate of formula (III) wherein R¹ is halogen, e.g. chloride, with zinc cyanide, in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, e.g. tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium, in a suitable solvent, e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide. The reaction is conveniently effected at elevated temperature, e.g. 180°C, using microwave technology.

In general, a compound of formula (I) containing a -C=C- functionality may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a -CH-CH- functionality by catalytic hydrogenation, typically by treatment with a hydrogenation catalyst, e.g. palladium on charcoal, under an atmosphere of hydrogen gas, optionally in the presence of a base, e.g. an alkali metal hydroxide such as sodium hydroxide.

A compound of formula (I) containing an ester moiety, e.g. a C₂₋₆ alkoxycarbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl or ethoxycarbonyl, may be converted into the

corresponding compound containing a carboxy ($-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$) moiety by treatment with an acid, e.g. a mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid.

A compound of formula (I) containing an ester moiety, e.g. a C_{2-6} alkoxy carbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl or ethoxycarbonyl, may alternatively be converted into the
5 corresponding compound containing a carboxy ($-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$) moiety by treatment with a base, e.g. an alkali metal hydroxide selected from lithium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide; or an organic base such as sodium methoxide or sodium ethoxide.

A compound of formula (I) containing a carboxy ($-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$) moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing an amide moiety by treatment with
10 the appropriate amine in the presence of a condensing agent such as 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide.

A compound of formula (I) containing a carbonyl ($\text{C}=\text{O}$) moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a $-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{OH})-$ moiety by treatment with methylmagnesium bromide. Similarly, a compound of formula (I) containing a carbonyl
15 ($\text{C}=\text{O}$) moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a $-\text{C}(\text{CF}_3)(\text{OH})-$ moiety by treatment with (trifluoromethyl)trimethylsilane and cesium fluoride. A compound of formula (I) containing a carbonyl ($\text{C}=\text{O}$) moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a $-\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{NO}_2)(\text{OH})-$ moiety by treatment with nitromethane.

20 A compound of formula (I) containing a hydroxymethyl moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a formyl ($-\text{CHO}$) moiety by treatment with an oxidising agent such as Dess-Martin periodinane. A compound of formula (I) containing a hydroxymethyl moiety may be converted into the corresponding compound containing a carboxy moiety by treatment with an oxidising agent such as
25 tetrapropylammonium perruthenate.

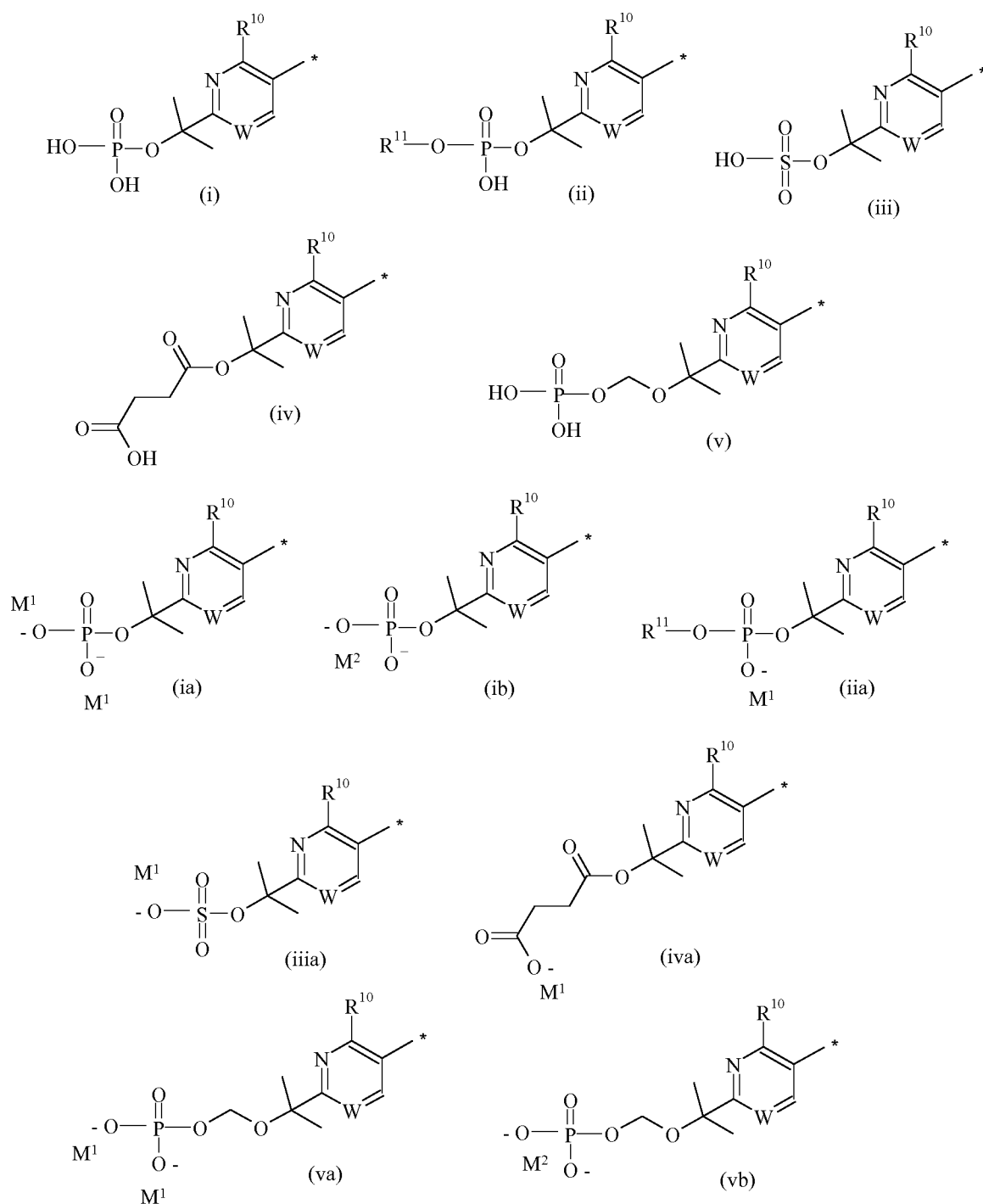
A compound of formula (I) containing an aryl or an heteroaryl moiety may be transformed into the corresponding compound containing an aryl or heteroaryl moiety where a hydrogen atom has been substituted by a chloro or bromo substituent by reaction respectively with N-chlorosuccinimide or N-bromosuccinimide, in a suitable solvent, e.g.
30 dimethylformamide, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art.

A compound of formula (I) containing an aryl moiety bearing a difluoromethoxy group may be transformed into the corresponding compound containing an aryl moiety

where the difluoromethoxy group has been substituted by a hydroxy group, by reaction with sodium*bis*(trimethylsilyl)amide, in a suitable solvent, e.g. THF, at low temperature.

A compound of formula (I) containing an aryl or an heteroaryl moiety may be transformed into the corresponding compound containing an aryl or heteroaryl moiety where a
5 hydrogen atom has been substituted by a trifluoromethyl substituent by reaction respectively with (i) trifluoroacetic acid in a suitable solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, (ii) addition of trifluoromethanesulphonyl chloride, followed by [4,4'-Bis(tert-butyl)-2,2'-bipyridine]bis[3,5-difluoro-2-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-2-pyridinyl]phenyl]iridium(III)
hexafluorophosphate, according to conditions analogous to those described by McMillan
10 ate al. in Nature, 2011, 480, 224.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides compounds of formula (I), in particular compounds of formula (IB), (IC) or (ID) as defined above, wherein R¹ represents a substituted heteroaryl selected from the groups represented by formula (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v), and their respective corresponding salts represented by formula (ia), (ib), (iia),
15 (iiia), (iva), (va), and (vb):



wherein

the asterisk (*) represents the site of attachment of R^1 to the remainder of the molecule;

5 W and R^{10} are as defined above ;

R^{11} represents C_{1-6} alkyl;

M^1 represents a monovalent cation; and

M^2 represents a divalent cation.

In a first aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g., represented by the group of formula (i), or salts thereof, represented respectively by groups of
5 formula (ia) or (ib).

In a second aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by C_{1-6} alkyl phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl e.g., represented by the group of formula (ii), or salts thereof, represented by formula (iia).

In a third aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds
10 of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by sulphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (iii), or salts thereof represented by formula (iiia).

In a fourth aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by carboxy-(C_{1-6})alkyl-carbonyloxy- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (iv), or salts thereof represented by
15 formula (iva).

In a fifth aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate- methoxy- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g., as represented by the group of formula (v), or salts thereof represented respectively by the groups of formula (va) or (vb).

20 Typical examples of monovalent cation M^1 in accordance with the present invention include alkali metal cations or cations represented by formula $^+NH(R^k)_3$ wherein R^k represents hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl.

Suitably, R^{11} represents ethyl.

In a first embodiment M^1 represents Na^+ . In a second embodiment, M^1 represents
25 K^+ . In a third embodiment, M^1 represents $^+NH_4$. In a fourth embodiment M^1 represents $^+NH(C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})_3$. In a particular aspect of this embodiment, M^1 represents $^+NH(CH_2CH_3)_3$.

Suitably, M^1 represents Na^+ .

Typical examples of divalent cations M^2 in accordance with the present invention
30 include alkaline earth metal cations.

Suitably, M^2 represents Ca^{2+} .

In a particular aspect of this embodiment, the present invention relates to compounds of formula (I), in particular compounds of formula (IB), (IC) or (ID) as defined above, wherein R^1 represents a substituted heteroaryl selected from the groups represented by formula (i), (iii), (iv), and their respective salts of formula (iiia), (va) and (vb).

A compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g., as represented above by formula (i) may be prepared from the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is substituted by hydroxy- C_{1-6} alkyl by i) treatment with di benzyl N,N-di-isopropylphosphoramidite in a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, followed by treatment with hydrogen peroxide at low temperature and ii) subsequent hydrogenolysis, e.g. using hydrogen gas under pressure, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium on charcoal, according to a method analogous to those described by S. P. Green et al. in *Organic Process Research & Development*, **2002**, 6, 109-112. A compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by a salt of phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by formula (ia) or formula (ib) above, wherein M^1 and M^2 are independently alkali metal cation or alkaline earth metal cation, may be prepared by performing the above described hydrogenolysis step (ii) in the presence of a suitable alkali metal base or alkaline earth metal base. A compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by C_{1-6} alkyl phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented above by formula (ii), may be prepared from the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is substituted by hydroxy- C_{1-6} alkyl by: i) first reacting cyanoethylphosphoramidite with a compound of formula R^{11} -OH, in the presence of diisopropylethylamine in a suitable solvent e.g. dichloromethane, ii) addition of compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is substituted by hydroxy- C_{1-6} alkyl in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, (iii) followed by oxidation and subsequent treatment with a suitable base, according to a method analogous to those described by Nam, N-H. et al. in *Bio-org. Med Chem.*, **2004**, 12, 6255 or Bennani, L. et al. in international patent application WO 2012/177707 A1.

A compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by sulphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented above by formula (iii), may be prepared by treatment of the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is substituted by hydroxy- C_{1-6} alkyl, with pyridine:sulphur trioxide complex, according to a method analogous to the one

described by E. Lacko *et al.* in *Current Medicinal Chemistry*, **2012**, *19*, 4699, or alternatively, by treatment with chloro sulphonic acid in the presence of triethylamine, according to a method analogous to the one described in C. Guo *et al.* in international patent application WO 2004/087720 A1.

- 5 A compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is heteroaryl substituted by carboxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl-carbonyloxy-C₁₋₆ alkyl e.g. as represented by the group of formula (iv), may be prepared by reacting the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is substituted by hydroxy-C₁₋₆ alkyl, with an appropriate anhydride, e.g. succinic anhydride, in the presence of dimethylaminopyridine, in a suitable solvent, e.g. pyridine, at elevated
10 temperature, according to a method analogous to the one described by C. Liu *et al.*, in *Molecular Pharmaceutics*, **2014**, *57*, 7509 or W.N. Washburn *et al.* in *J. Med. Chem*, **2014**, *57*, 7509.

- A compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate-methoxy-C₁₋₆ alkyl e.g. as represented by the group of formula (v), may be prepared by
15 reacting the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is substituted by hydroxy-C₁₋₆ alkyl, with a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydride, in a suitable solvent, e.g. dimethoxyethane, followed by addition of chloromethyldi-*tert*-butyl-phosphate, and subsequent dealkylation, at high temperature, according to a method analogous to the one described in international patent application WO 2012/135082 A1.

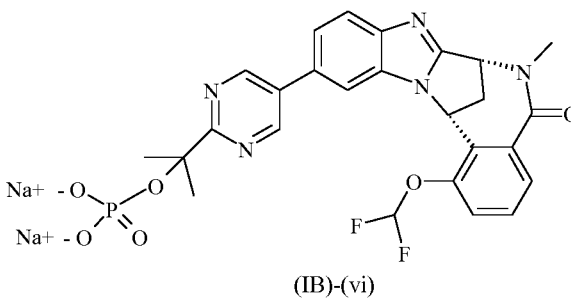
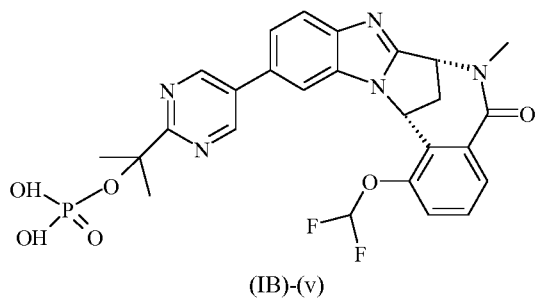
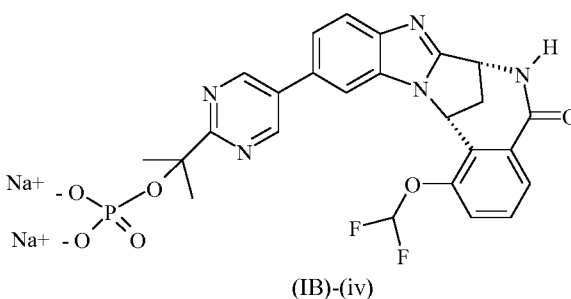
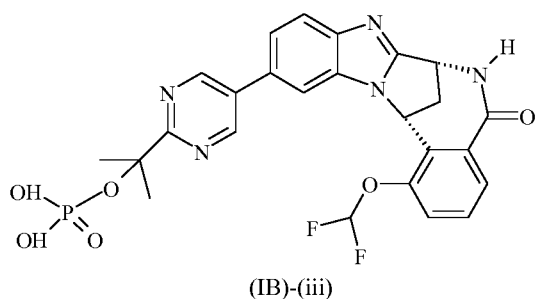
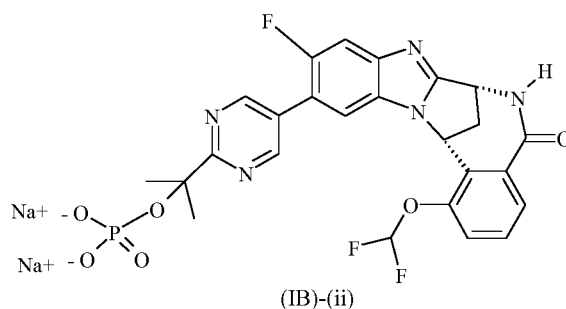
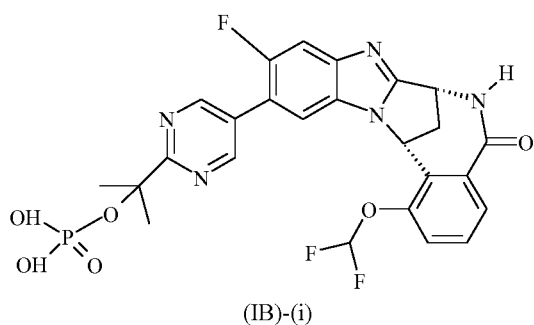
- 20 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹ is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate-C₁₋₆ alkyl, e.g. as represented by formula (i), which can be isolated as a result of the above hydrogenolysis step (ii), may be transformed into the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is heteroaryl substituted by a salt of phosphate-C₁₋₆ alkyl, e.g. as represented by formula (ia) wherein M¹ represents an alkali metal cation or a cation of formula
25 ⁺NH(R^k)₃ or may be transformed into the corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein R¹ is heteroaryl substituted by a salt of phosphate-C₁₋₆ alkyl, e.g., as represented by formula (ib), wherein M² represents an alkaline earth metal cation, by treatment with the corresponding base, i.e. respectively an alkali metal base or the corresponding base of formula N(R^k)₃ or an alkaline earth metal base, in a suitable solvent according to methods
30 known to the person skilled in the art. Suitable alkali metal bases include sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide.

Suitable alkaline earth metal bases include calcium hydroxide.

Suitable bases of formula $N(R^k)_3$ include ammonia (NH_3) and triethylamine.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted independently by C_{1-6} alkyl phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (ii), or by sulphate- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (iii), or by carboxy(C_{1-6})alkyl-carbonyloxy- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (iv), or by phosphate-methoxy- C_{1-6} alkyl, e.g. as represented by the group of formula (v), may be transformed into their respective corresponding salts represented by formula (iia), (iiia), (iva), (va) and (vb), according to a method analogous to the one described above for compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is heteroaryl substituted by phosphate- C_{1-6} alkyl.

Illustrative examples of compounds according to the present invention wherein R^1 is a substituted heteroaryl selected from the groups represented by formula (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v), and their respective salts of formula (ia), (ib), (iia), (iiia), (iva), (va) as defined above, include the following compounds :



Chemical structure of compound 10: A complex molecule featuring a pyridine ring substituted with a tert-butyl phosphate group (Na⁺ counterions) and a 4-ethyl-1H-indole-3-carboxamide moiety. The indole ring is further substituted with a 2-fluoroethoxy group.

CC(C)N1C(=O)c2cc(OC(F)F)ccc2[C@H]1c3ccccc3n4c5cc(ccc5n4)C6=CC=CC=C6C7=CC=CC=C7C8=CC=CC=C8C9(C)C(C)OP(=O)(O)O9CC(C)N1C(=O)c2cc(OC(F)F)ccc2N1c3cc4ccccc4n3-c5ccnc(C(C)(C)OP(=O)([O-])[O-])c5.[Na+]

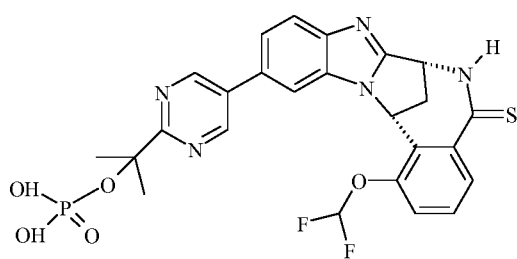
Na +

CC(C)(OP(=O)(O)O)c1ncnc(c1)-c2cc(F)c3nc4c(c2)O[C@H]5C(=O)c6cc(OC(F)F)ccc6O5CC(C)(COP(=O)([O-])[O-])[Na+].CC1(C)N2C(=O)Oc3ccccc3c2N1c1cc(F)cc(cc1N)C4=NC=CC=C(C=C4)N5C=CC=CC=C5

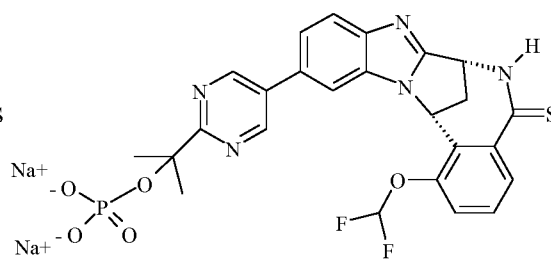
Na +

CC(C)(COP(=O)(O)O)c1ncnc(c1)-c2cc3c(c2)c4c(c3)c5ccccc5c4OC(F)F[C@H]6C=CC#N[C@@H]7C[C@H](C2=CN=C3C=C(C=C3)F)O67[illegible]

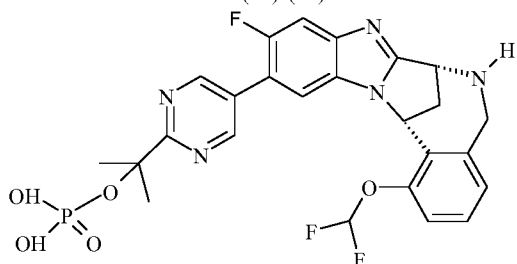
(IB)-(xiv)



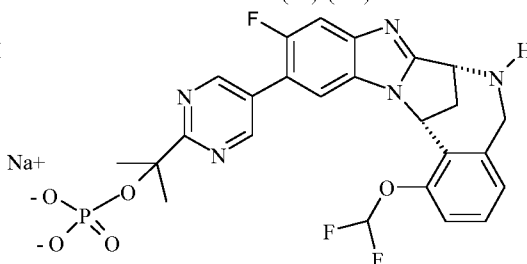
(IB)-(xv)



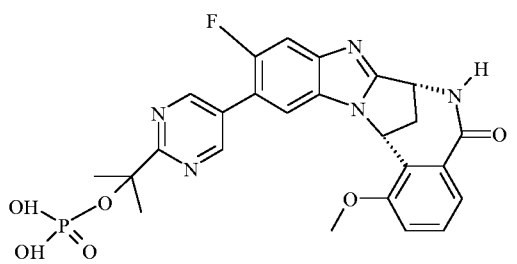
(IB)-(xvi)



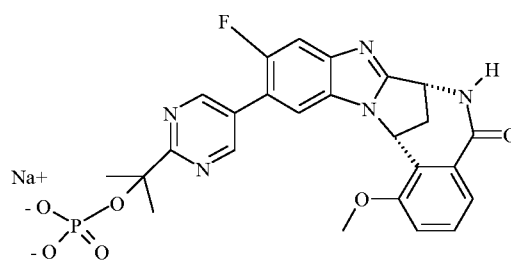
(IB)-(xvii)



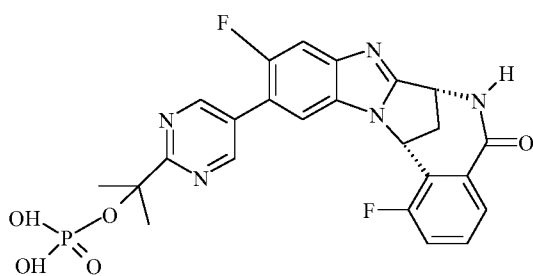
(IB)-(xviii)



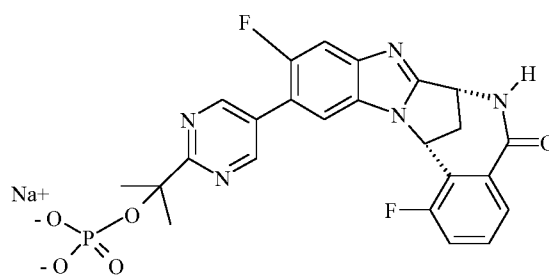
(IB)-(xix)



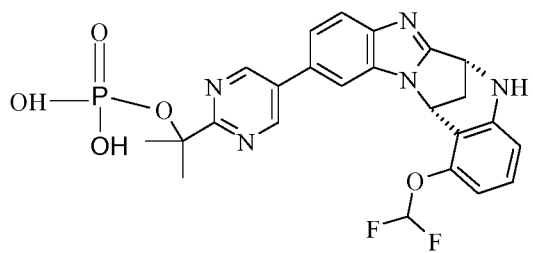
(IB)-(xx)



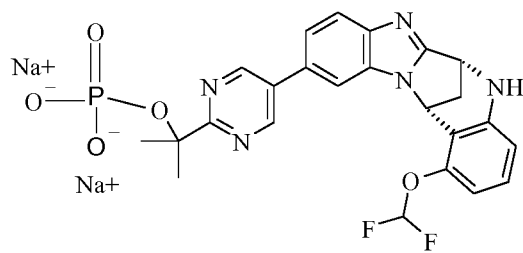
(IB)-(xxi)



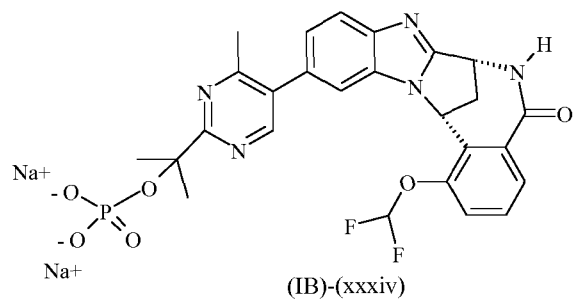
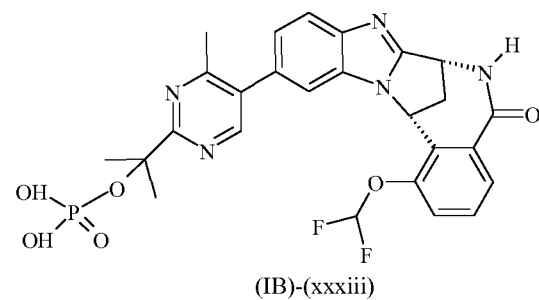
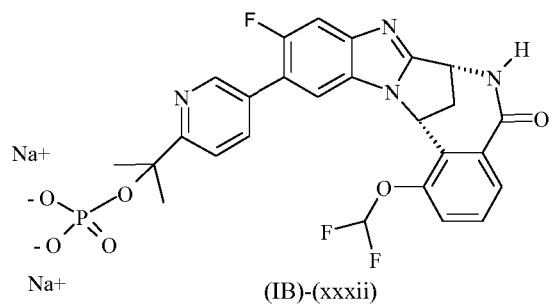
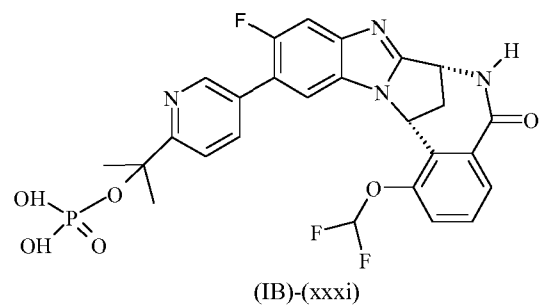
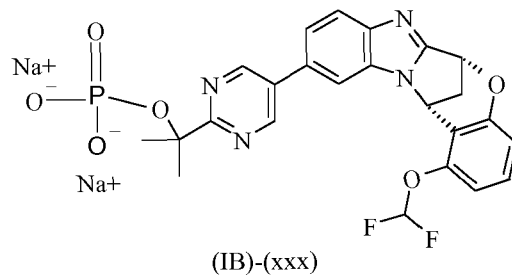
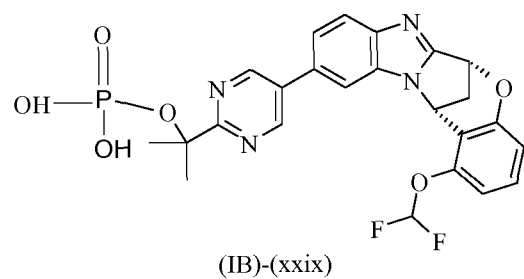
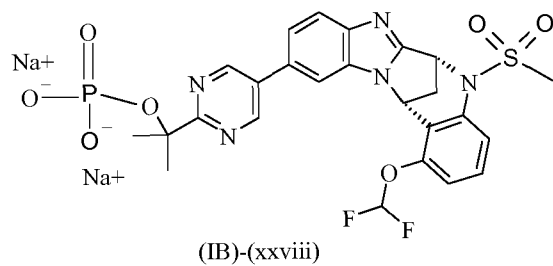
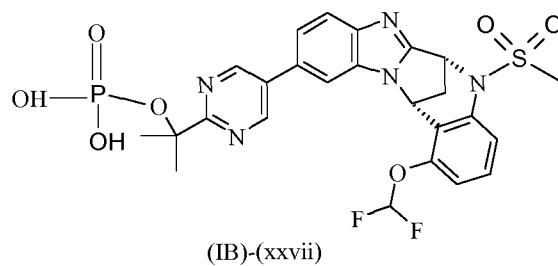
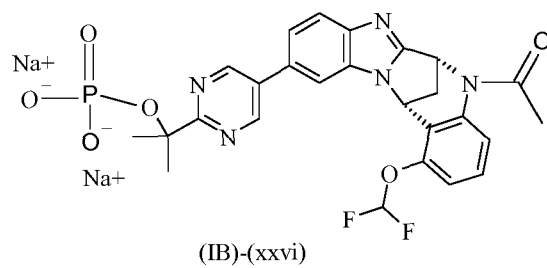
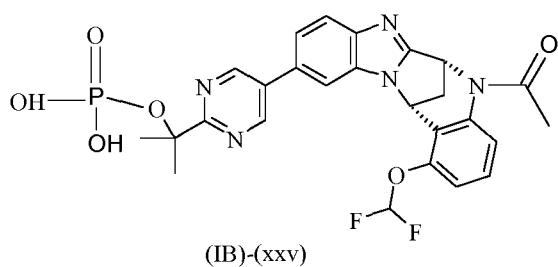
(IB)-(xxii)

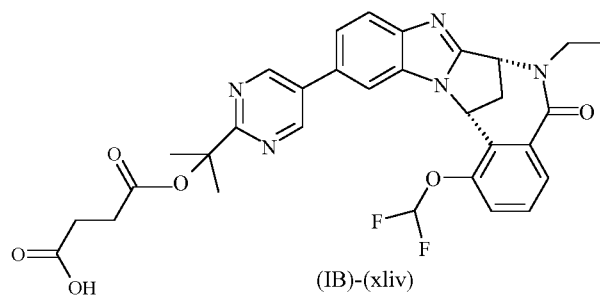
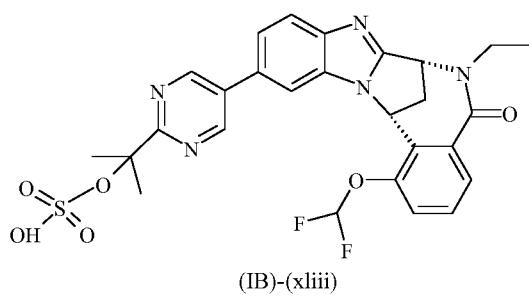
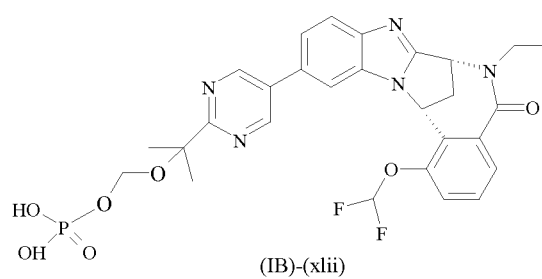
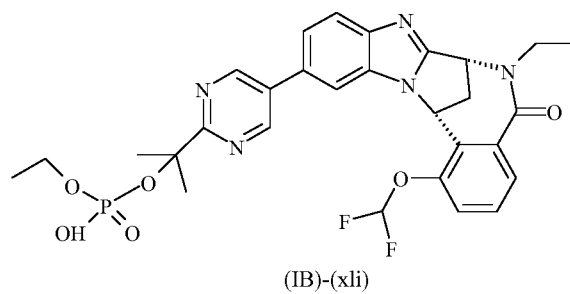
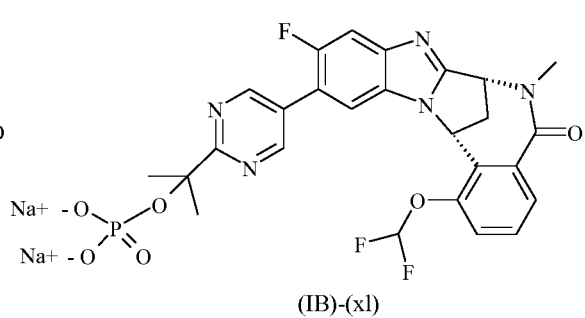
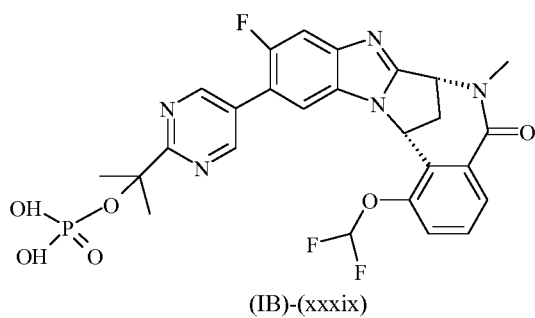
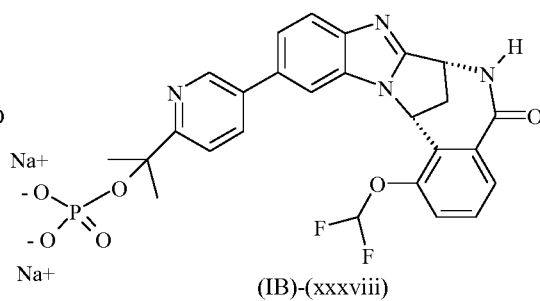
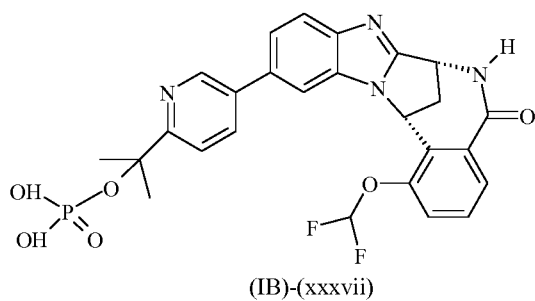
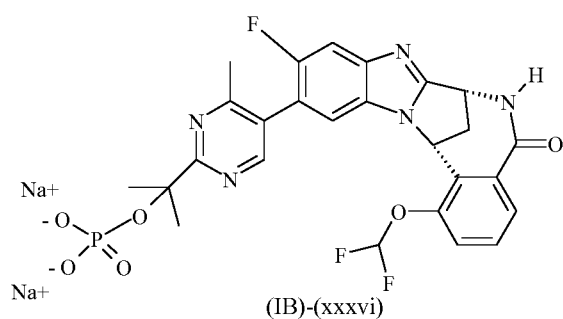
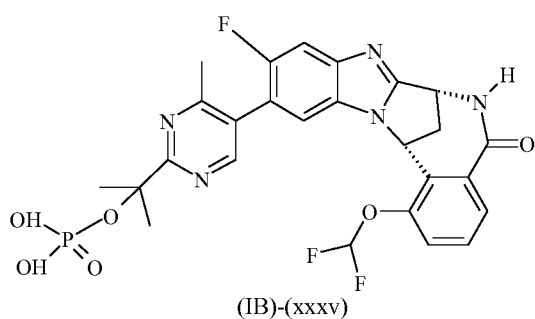


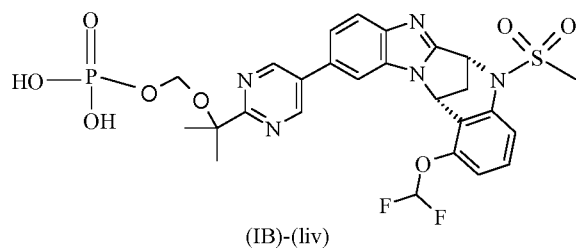
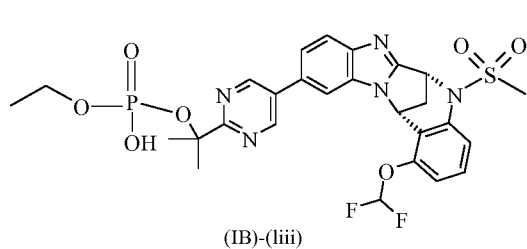
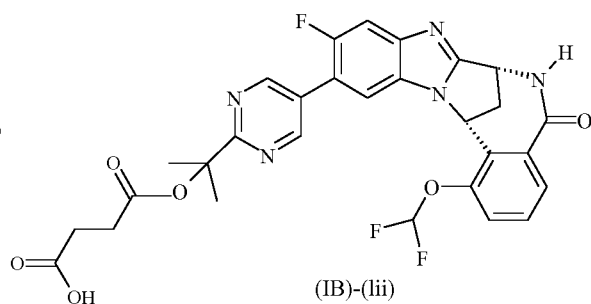
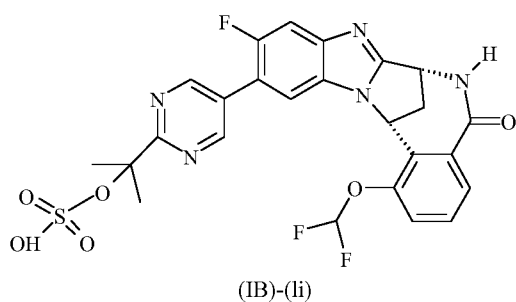
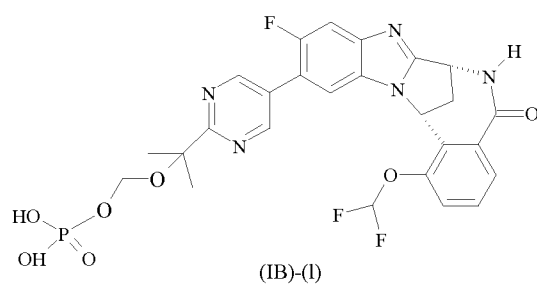
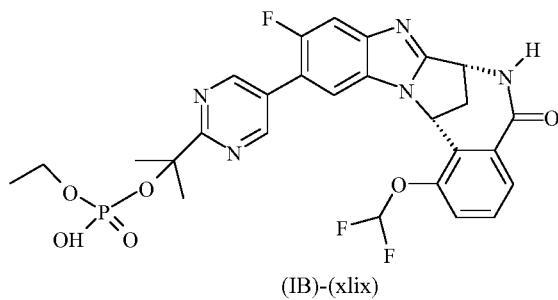
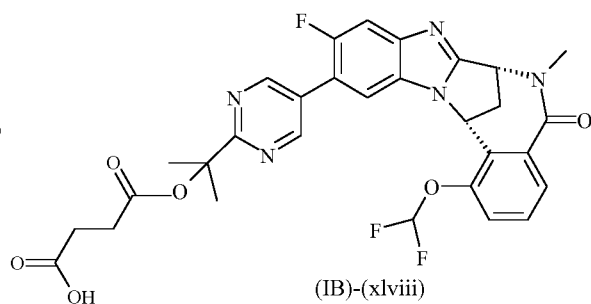
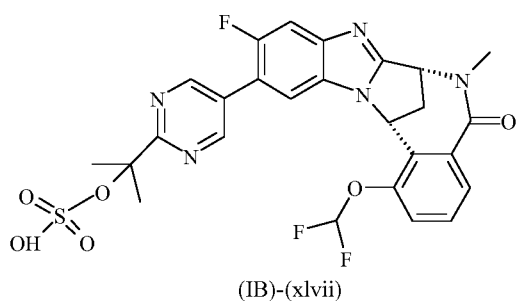
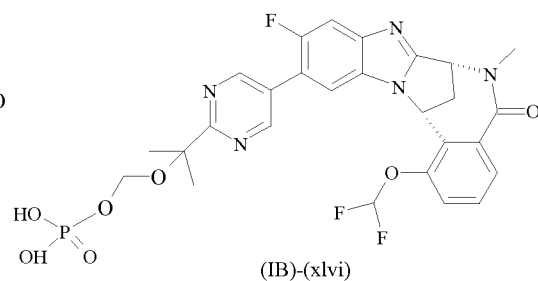
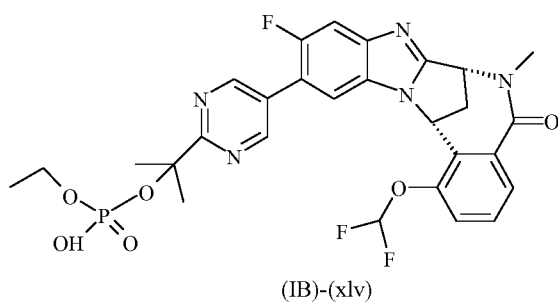
(IB)-(xxiii)

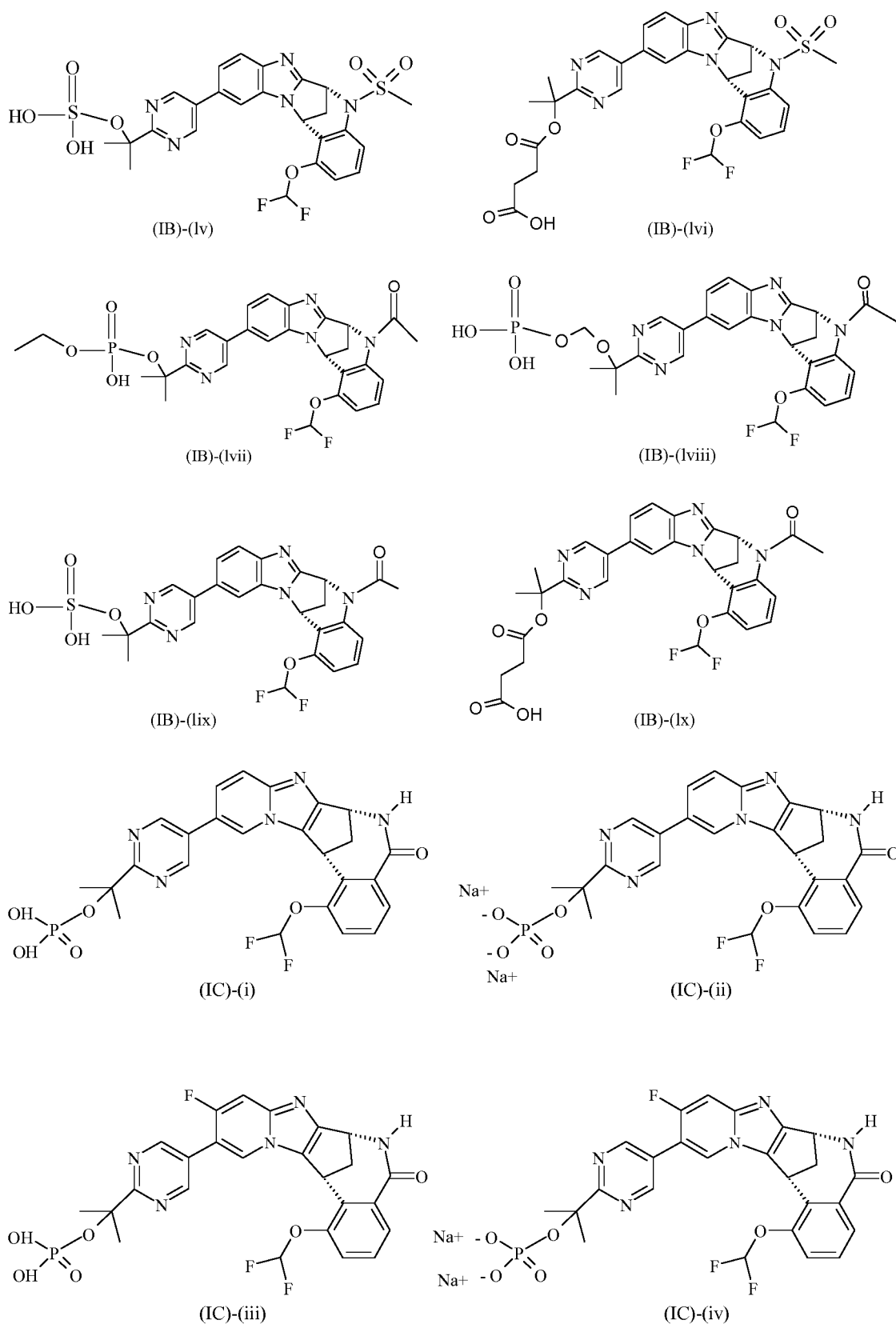


(IB)-(xxiv)









5

Where a mixture of products is obtained from any of the processes described above for the preparation of compounds according to the invention, the desired product can be

separated therefrom at an appropriate stage by conventional methods such as preparative HPLC; or column chromatography utilising, for example, silica and/or alumina in conjunction with an appropriate solvent system.

Where the above-described processes for the preparation of the compounds according to the invention give rise to mixtures of stereoisomers, these isomers may be separated by conventional techniques. In particular, where it is desired to obtain a particular enantiomer of a compound of formula (I) this may be produced from a corresponding mixture of enantiomers using any suitable conventional procedure for resolving enantiomers. Thus, for example, diastereomeric derivatives, e.g. salts, may be produced by reaction of a mixture of enantiomers of formula (I), e.g. a racemate, and an appropriate chiral compound, e.g. a chiral base. The diastereomers may then be separated by any convenient means, for example by crystallisation, and the desired enantiomer recovered, e.g. by treatment with an acid in the instance where the diastereomer is a salt. In another resolution process a racemate of formula (I) may be separated using chiral HPLC. Moreover, if desired, a particular enantiomer may be obtained by using an appropriate chiral intermediate in one of the processes described above. Alternatively, a particular enantiomer may be obtained by performing an enantiomer-specific enzymatic biotransformation, e.g. an ester hydrolysis using an esterase, and then purifying only the enantiomerically pure hydrolysed acid from the unreacted ester antipode. Chromatography, recrystallisation and other conventional separation procedures may also be used with intermediates or final products where it is desired to obtain a particular geometric isomer of the invention. Alternatively the non desired enantiomer may be racemized into the desired enantiomer, in the presence of an acid or a base, according to methods known to the person skilled in the art, or according to methods described in the accompanying Examples.

During any of the above synthetic sequences it may be necessary and/or desirable to protect sensitive or reactive groups on any of the molecules concerned. This may be achieved by means of conventional protecting groups, such as those described in *Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry*, ed. J.F.W. McOmie, Plenum Press, 1973; and T.W. Greene & P.G.M. Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley & Sons, 3rd edition, 1999. The protecting groups may be removed at any convenient subsequent stage utilising methods known from the art.

Compounds in accordance with the present invention potentially neutralise the activity of TNF α in a commercially available HEK-293 derived reporter cell line known as HEK-Blue™ CD40L. This is a stable HEK-293 transfected cell line expressing SEAP (secreted embryonic alkaline phosphatase) under the control of the IFN β minimal promoter fused to five NF- κ B binding sites. Secretion of SEAP by these cells is stimulated in a concentration-dependent manner by TNF α . When tested in the HEK-293 bioassay, also referred to herein as the reporter gene assay, compounds of the present invention exhibit an IC₅₀ value of 50 μ M or less, generally of 20 μ M or less, usually of 5 μ M or less, typically of 1 μ M or less, suitably of 500 nM or less, ideally of 100 nM or less, and preferably of 25 nM or less (the skilled person will appreciate that a *lower* IC₅₀ figure denotes a *more active* compound).

Certain compounds in accordance with the present invention potentially inhibit the binding of a fluorescence conjugate to TNF α when tested in the fluorescence polarisation assay described herein. Indeed, when tested in that assay, compounds of the present invention exhibit an IC₅₀ value of 50 μ M or less, generally of 20 μ M or less, usually of 5 μ M or less, typically of 1 μ M or less, suitably of 500 nM or less, ideally of 100 nM or less, and preferably of 25 nM or less (as before, the skilled person will appreciate that a *lower* IC₅₀ figure denotes a *more active* compound).

The compounds of the Examples have been tested in one or both of the assays described below.

Fluorescence Polarisation Assay

Preparation of Compound (A)

1-(2,5-Dimethylbenzyl)-6-[4-(piperazin-1-ylmethyl)phenyl]-2-(pyridin-4-ylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole – hereinafter referred to as “*Compound (A)*” – can be prepared by the procedure described in Example 499 of WO 2013/186229; or by a procedure analogous thereto.

Preparation of fluorescence conjugate

Compound (A) (27.02 mg, 0.0538 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (2 mL). 5 (-6) Carboxy-fluorescein succinimyl ester (24.16 mg, 0.0510 mmol) (Invitrogen catalogue number: C1311) was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) to give a bright yellow solution. The two solutions were mixed at room temperature, the mixture turning red in colour. The

mixture was stirred at room temperature. Shortly after mixing a 20 μ L aliquot was removed and diluted in a 80:20 mixture of AcOH:H₂O for LC-MS analysis on the 1200RR-6140 LC-MS system. The chromatogram showed two closely eluting peaks at retention times of 1.42 and 1.50 minutes, both with mass $(M+H)^+ = 860.8$ amu, corresponding to the two products formed with the 5- and 6-substituted carboxyfluorescein group. A further peak at retention time 2.21 minutes had a mass of $(M+H)^+ = 502.8$ amu, corresponding to *Compound (A)*. No peak was observed for unreacted 5(-6) carboxyfluorescein succinimyl ester. The peak areas were 22.0%, 39.6% and 31.4% for the three signals, indicating a 61.6% conversion to the two isomers of the desired fluorescence conjugate at that time-point. Further 20 μ L aliquots were extracted after several hours and then after overnight stirring, diluted as before and subjected to LC-MS analysis. The percentage conversion was determined as 79.8% and 88.6% respectively at these time-points. The mixture was purified on a UV-directed preparative HPLC system. The pooled purified fractions were freeze-dried to remove excess solvent. After freeze-drying, an orange solid (23.3 mg) was recovered, equivalent to 0.027 mmol of fluorescence conjugate, corresponding to an overall yield of 53% for the reaction and preparative HPLC purification.

Inhibition of binding of fluorescence conjugate to TNF α

Compounds were tested at 10 concentrations starting from 25 μ M in a final assay concentration of 5% DMSO, by pre-incubation with TNF α for 60 minutes at ambient temperature in 20 mM Tris, 150 mM NaCl, 0.05% Tween 20, before addition of the fluorescence conjugate and a further incubation for 20 hours at ambient temperature. The final concentrations of TNF α and the fluorescence conjugate were 10 nM and 10 nM respectively in a total assay volume of 25 μ L. Plates were read on a plate reader capable of detecting fluorescence polarisation (e.g. an Analyst HT plate reader; or an Envision plate reader). An IC₅₀ value was calculated using XLfit™ (4 parameter logistic model) in ActivityBase.

When tested in the fluorescence polarisation assay, compounds of the accompanying Examples were found to exhibit IC₅₀ values of 50 μ M or better.

When tested in the fluorescence polarisation assay, compounds of the accompanying Examples exhibit IC₅₀ values generally in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 50 μ M, usually in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 20 μ M, typically in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 5 μ M, suitably in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 1

μM , ideally in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 500 nM, appositely in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 100 nM, and preferably in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 25 nM.

Reporter Gene Assay

5 *Inhibition of TNF α -induced NF- κ B activation*

Stimulation of HEK-293 cells by TNF α leads to activation of the NF- κ B pathway. The reporter cell line used to determine TNF α activity was purchased from InvivoGen. HEK-Blue™ CD40L is a stable HEK-293 transfected cell line expressing SEAP (secreted embryonic alkaline phosphatase) under the control of the IFN β minimal promoter fused to
10 five NF- κ B binding sites. Secretion of SEAP by these cells is stimulated in a dose-dependent manner by TNF α , with an EC₅₀ of 0.5 ng/mL for human TNF α . Compounds were diluted from 10 mM DMSO stocks (final assay concentration 0.3% DMSO) to generate a 10-point 3-fold serial dilution curve (30,000 nM to 2 nM final concentration, for example). Diluted compound was preincubated with TNF α for 60 minutes prior to
15 addition to a 384-well microtitre plate and incubated for 18 h. The final TNF α concentration in the assay plate was 0.5 ng/mL. SEAP activity was determined in the supernatant using the colorimetric substrates QUANTI-Blue™ or HEK-Blue™ Detection media (InvivoGen). Percentage inhibitions for compound dilutions were calculated between a DMSO control and maximum inhibition (by excess control compound) and an
20 IC₅₀ value calculated using XLfit™ (4 parameter logistic model) in ActivityBase.

When tested in the reporter gene assay, the compounds of the accompanying Examples were all found to exhibit IC₅₀ values of 50 μM or better.

When tested in the reporter gene assay, compounds of the accompanying Examples exhibit IC₅₀ values generally in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 50 μM , usually in
25 the range of about 0.01 nM to about 20 μM , typically in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 5 μM , usually in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 1 μM , suitably in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 500 nM, ideally in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 100 nM, and appositely in the range of about 0.01 nM to about 25 nM.

The following Examples illustrate the preparation of compounds according to the
30 invention.

EXAMPLES**Abbreviations**

	DCM:	Dichloromethane	EtOAc:	Ethyl acetate
	DMF:	N,N-Dimethylformamide	MeOH:	Methanol
5	DMSO:	Dimethylsulfoxide	SiO ₂ :	Silica
	Et ₂ O:	Diethyl ether	h:	Hour
	THF:	Tetrahydrofuran	AcOH:	Acetic acid
	r.t.:	Room temperature	b s.:	Broad singlet
	M:	Mass		
10	Brine:	Saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution		
	HPLC:	High Performance Liquid Chromatography		
	LCMS:	Liquid Chromatography Mass Spectrometry		
	ES+:	Electrospray Positive Ionisation		
	TEA:	Triethylamine		
15	DIPEA:	N,N-di-iso-propylethylamine		
	DIAD:	Diisopropyl (E)-1,2-diazenedicarboxylate		
	RT:	retention time		
	TBAF:	tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride		
	TLC:	Thin Layer Chromatography		
20	MeCN:	Acetonitrile		
	DIBAL-H:	Diisobutylaluminium hydride		
	TMSCN:	Trimethylsilyl cyanide		
	DEA:	Diethanolamine		
	pTSA	<i>para</i> -toluene sulphonic acid monohydrate		
25	TFA :	trifluoroacetic acid		
	DMA :	dimethyl acetamide		
	HATU:	<i>N</i> -[(Dimethylamino)-1 <i>H</i> -1,2,3-triazolo-[4,5- <i>b</i>]pyridin-1-ylmethylene]- <i>N</i> -ethylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate <i>N</i> -oxide		
	KHMDS :	Potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide		
30	COMU:	(1-cyano-2-ethoxy-2-oxoethylidenaminooxy) dimethylamino-morpholino carbenium hexafluorophosphate		
	PdCl ₂ (dcypp)	:dichloro- <i>bis</i> (dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II)		

[Ir{dF(CF₃)ppy}₂(dtbpy)]PF₆ [4,4'-Bis(tert-butyl)-2,2'-bipyridine]bis[3,5-difluoro-2-[5-(trifluoromethyl)-2-pyridinyl]phenyl]iridium(III) hexafluorophosphate

5 Analytical Conditions

All NMRs were obtained either at 300 MHz or 400 MHz.

All reactions involving air-or moisture-sensitive reagents were performed under a nitrogen atmosphere using dried solvents and glassware.

All compound LCMS data was determined by using the method below:

10

Method 1: For Intermediates 1 to 7 and 15 to 17.

Shimadzu 2010- YMC Triart C18, 4.6 x 50mm, 3 µm column

Mobile phase A: 10 mM Ammonium Formate + 0.1 % Ammonia + water

Mobile phase B: 5 % of mobile phase A + 95 % MeCN + 0.1 % Ammonia

15 Gradient program (Flow Rate 1.4 mL/min, Column Temperature 40°C):

Time	A%	B%
0.1	70	30
2.5	5	95
20 3.5	5	95
5.0	70	30
5.5	70	30

Method 2: For Intermediate 8 and 18

25 Shimadzu 2010- X-bridge C18 Waters 2.1 x 20mm, 2.5 µm column

Mobile phase A: 10 mM Ammonium Formate + 0.1 % Ammonia + water

Mobile phase B: 5 % of mobile phase A + 95 % MeCN + 0.1 % Ammonia

Gradient program (Flow Rate 1.0 mL/min, Column Temperature 40°C):

30

Time	A%	B%
0.1	95	5
4.0	5	95

5.0	5	95
5.1	95	5
6.5	95	5

5 Method 3 for all analytical LCMS done in basic conditions: LCMS basic:

A QDA Waters simple quadrupole mass spectrometer is used for LC-MS analysis.

This spectrometer is equipped with an ESI source and an UPLC Acquity Classic with diode array detector (210 to 400 nm.)

Data are acquired in a full MS scan from m/z 50 to 1000 in positive mode with an acidic

10 elution

The reverse phase separation is carried out at 45°C on

a Waters Acquity UPLC BEH C18 1.7µm (2.1x50mm) column for basic elution

Gradient elution is done with :

H₂O/ACN/Ammonium_formate (95/5/63mg/l) + 50µl NH₄OH (solvent A)

15 ACN/H₂O/Ammonium_formate (95/5/63mg/l) + 50µl NH₄OH (solvent B).

Acidic gradient program :

HPLC flow rate: 0.6 ml/min to 0.7 ml/min,

injection volume: 1 µl

Full flow in MS.

20	Time (min)	A (%)	B (%)	Flow (ml/min)
	0	99	1	0.4
	0.3	99	1	0.4
	3.2	0	100	0.4
25	3.25	0	100	0.5
	4	0	100	0.5
	4.1	99	1	0.4
	4.8	90	1	0.4

30 Method 4 for all analytical LCMS in acid conditions: LCMS acid:

A QDA Waters simple quadrupole mass spectrometer is used for LC-MS analysis.

This spectrometer is equipped with an ESI source and an UPLC Acquity Hclass with diode array detector (210 to 400 nm).

Data are acquired in a full MS scan from m/z 50 to 1000 in positive mode with an acidic elution. The reverse phase separation is carried out at 45°C on a Waters Acquity UPLC HSS T3 1.8µm (2.1x50mm) column for acidic elution

Gradient elution is done with :

- 5 Water (solvent A)
Acetonitrile (solvent B)
Water/Acetonitrile/Formic Acid 0.5% (solvent C)

Acidic gradient program :

HPLC flow rate: 0.6 ml/min to 0.7 ml/min, injection volume: 1 µl

- 10 Full flow in MS.

	Time (min)	A (%)	B (%)	C (%)	Flow (ml/min)
	0	90	0	10	0.6
15	0.3	90	0	10	0.6
	3.2	0	90	10	0.6
	3.25	0	90	10	0.7
	4	0	90	10	0.7
	4.1	90	0	10	0.6
20	5.4	90	0	10	0.6

Method 5 for all Examples:

Waters Acquity-SQD, Waters Acquity UPLC BEH C18, 2.1 x 50 mm, 1.7 µm column

Mobile phase A: 10 mM Ammonium Formate + 0.1 % Ammonia

- 25 Mobile phase B: 95 % MeCN + 5 % H₂O + 0.1 % Ammonia

Gradient program (Flow Rate 1.0 mL/min, Column Temperature 40°C):

	Time	A%	B%
	0.00	95	5
	0.50	95	5
30	1.75	5	95
	2.00	5	95
	2.25	95	5

It will be apparent to the person skilled in the art that different retention times (RT) may be obtained for LCMS if different analytical conditions are used.

5

Additional Analytical HPLC Methods

Method 6

Column: Waters Atlantis dC18 (2.1 x100 mm, 3 µm column)

Flow rate: 0.6 mL/min

10 Solvent A: 0.1 % Formic acid / water

Solvent B: 0.1 % Formic acid / acetonitrile

Injection Volume: 3 µL

Column temperature: 40 °C

UV Detection wavelength: 215 nm

15 Eluent: 0 to 5 minutes, constant gradient from 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B to 100 % solvent B; 5 to 5.4 minutes, 100 % solvent B; 5.4 to 5.42 minutes, constant gradient from 100 % solvent B to 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B; 5.42 to 7.00 minutes, 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B.

20 Method 7

Column: Waters Atlantis dC18 (2.1 x 30 mm, 3 µm column)

Flow rate: 1 ml/min

Solvent A: 0.1% Formic acid / water

Solvent B: 0.1% Formic acid / acetonitrile

25 Injection volume: 3µL

UV Detection wavelength: 215nm

Eluent: 0 to 1.5 minutes, constant gradient from 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B to 100 % solvent B; 1.5 to 1.6 minutes, 100 % solvent B; 1.60 to 1.61 minutes, constant gradient from 100 % solvent B to 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B; 1.61 to 2.00 minutes, 95 %
30 solvent A + 5 % solvent B.

Method 8

Column: Phenomenex Gemini C18 (2.0 mm x 100 mm, 3 µm column)

Flow rate: 0.5 mL/min

Solvent A: 2mM Ammonium bicarbonate / water

Solvent B: Acetonitrile

Injection volume: 3 µL

5 Column temperature: 50 °C

UV Detection wavelength: 215 nM

Eluent: 0 to 5.5 minutes, constant gradient from 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B to 100 % solvent B; 5.5 to 5.9 minutes, 100 % solvent B; 5.90 to 5.92 minutes, constant gradient from 100 % solvent B to 95 % solvent A + 5 % solvent B.

10

Method 9

Column: Phenomenex Gemini C18 (2.0 mm x 50 mm, 3 µm column)

Flow rate: 1.0 mL/min

Solvent A: 2mM Ammonium bicarbonate / water

15 Solvent B: Acetonitrile

Injection volume: 3 µL

Column temperature: 60 °C

UV Detection wavelength: 215 nM

20 Eluent: 0 to 1.8 minutes, constant gradient from 99 % solvent A + 1 % solvent B to 100 % solvent B; 1.8 to 2.1 minutes, 100 % solvent B; 2.1 to 2.3 minutes, constant gradient from 100 % solvent B to 99 % solvent A + 1 % solvent B.

Method 10

Column: Waters XSelect (C18, 50x2.1mm, 3.5µ)

25 Flow: 0.8 ml/min Column temp; 35°C

Eluent A: 0.1% formic acid in acetonitrile

Eluent B: 0.1% formic acid in water

Lin. Gradient: t=0 min 5% A, t=3.5 min 98% A, t=6 min 98% A

Detection: DAD (220-320 nm)

30 Detection: MSD (ESI pos/neg) mass range: 100-800

Method 11

Column: Waters XSelect (C18, 30x2.1mm, 3.5µ)

Flow: 1.0 ml/min Column temp; 35°C

Eluent A: 0.1% formic acid in acetonitrile

Eluent B: 0.1% formic acid in water

Lin. Gradient: t=0 min 5% A, t=1.6 min 98% A, t=3 min 98% A

5 Detection: DAD (220-320 nm)

Detection: MSD (ESI pos/neg) mass range: 100-800

Method 12

Column: Waters XSelect (C18, 30x2.1mm, 3.5μ)

10 Flow: 1.0 ml/min Column temp; 35°C

Eluent A: 0.1% formic acid in acetonitrile

Eluent B: 0.1% formic acid in water

Lin. Gradient: t=0 min 5% A, t=1.6 min 98% A, t=4 min 98% A

Detection: DAD (220-320 nm)

15 Detection: MSD (ESI pos/neg) mass range: 100-800

Method 13

Column: Waters XSelect (C18, 30x2.1mm, 3.5μ)

Flow: 1.0 ml/min Column temp; 35°C

20 Eluent A: 0.1% formic acid in acetonitrile

Eluent B: 0.1% formic acid in water

Lin. Gradient: t=0 min 5% A, t=1.6 min 98% A, t=3 min 98% A

Detection: DAD (220-320 nm)

Detection: MSD (ESI pos/neg) mass range: 400-1600

25 Method 14 for the purification of Examples 107 to 112

Semi preparative HPLC column: Sunfire prep C18 5μm 10x150 mm

Isocratic elution: 25% of *Solvent A* (Water/Acetonitrile/formic acid (v/v/v ; 95/5/0.05)) and 75% *Solvent B* (acetonitrile/formic acid (v/v ; 100/0.075))

Flow rate: 7 mL/ min

30

Method 15 for the analysis of Examples 107 to 112

The LCMS control was performed with a QM Waters triple quadrupole mass spectrometer coupled with an HPLC Alliance Waters 2795 quaternary pump. The reverse

phase separation is carried out at 45°C on a Waters Sunfire MS C18 column 5µm (4.6 x 15 mm) for acidic elution.

Gradient elution is performed with water (Solvent A), acetonitrile (Solvent B) and water/acetonitrile/formic acid (Solvent C v/v/v 50/50/5).

5 Solution pH 3-4, gradient table as below:

	Time	A%	B%	C%	Flow
	0	90	0	10	1.9
	1.5	90	0	10	1.9
10	7.15	2	88	10	2.4
	10.5	2	88	10	2.4
	10.6	90	0	10	1.9
	13	90	0	10	1.9

15 *Method 16:*

Waters UPLC-SQD apparatus; ionization: electrospray in positive and/or negative mode (ES+/-); chromatographic conditions: column: Acquity CSH C18 1.7 µm – 1 x 30 mm; solvents: A: H₂O (0.1% formic acid) B: CH₃CN (0.1% formic acid); column temperature: 45°C; flow rate: 0.6 ml/min; gradient (2.0 min): from 5 to 50% of B in 1.0 min; 1.3 min: 100% of B; 1.45 min: 100% of B; 1.75 min: 5% of B; retention time = RT (min).

Method 17:

Waters HPLC-ZQ apparatus; ionization: electrospray in positive and/or negative mode (ES+/-); chromatographic conditions: column: XSelect CSH C18 3.5 µm – 3.0 x 75 mm; solvents: A: H₂O (0.1% formic acid) B: CH₃CN (0.1% formic acid); column temperature: 60°C; flow rate: 0.8 ml/min; gradient (6.0 min): 6% of B during 0.8 min; From 6% to 100% of B in 3.9min; 4.8 min: 100% of B; 5.0 min: 6% of B; 6.0 min: 6% of B; retention time = RT (min).

30 *Method 18:*

Waters HPLC-ZQ apparatus; ionization: electrospray in positive and/or negative mode (ES+/-); chromatographic conditions: column: XSelect CSH C18 3.5 µm – 3.0 x 75 mm; solvents: A: H₂O (0.1% formic acid) B: CH₃CN (0.1% formic acid); column temperature: 60°C; flow rate: 1.0 ml/min; gradient (7.0 min): 10% of B during 0.2 min; From 10 to 100% of B in 4.3 min; 4.85 min: 100% of B; 6.5 min: 10% of B; 7.0 min: 10% of B;

retention time = RT (min).

Method 19:

Waters UPLC-SQD apparatus; ionization: electrospray in positive and/or negative mode
5 (ES+/-); chromatographic conditions: column: Acquity CSH C18 1.7 μm – 1 x 30 mm;
solvents: A: H₂O (0.1% formic acid) B: CH₃CN (0.1% formic acid); column temperature:
45°C; flow rate: 0.6 ml/min; gradient (4.0 min): 5% of B during 0.15 min; 1.3 min: From
5 to 100% of B in 3.15 min; 3.45 min: 100% of B; 3.85 min: 5% of B; 4.00 min: 5% of B;
retention time = RT (min).

10

Method 20:

Waters UPLC-SQD apparatus; ionization: electrospray in positive and/or negative mode
(ES+/-); chromatographic conditions: column: Acquity BEH C18 1.7 μm – 2.1 x 50 mm;
solvents: A: H₂O (0.1% formic acid) B: CH₃CN (0.1% formic acid); column temperature:
15 50°C; flow rate: 0.8 ml/min; gradient (2.5 min): from 5 to 100% of B in 1.8 min; 2.4 min:
100% of B; 2.45 min: 100% to 5% of B in 0.05 min; retention time = RT (min).

INTERMEDIATE 1

2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde

20 To 2-chloro-6-hydroxy-benzaldehyde (20 g, 128.2 mmol) in MeCN (150 mL) was added
an aqueous solution of potassium hydroxide (71.7 g, 1282 mmol) in water (50 mL) at 0°C
and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 10 min. Diethyl (bromodifluoro methyl)
phosphonate (36.4 mL, 205.1 mmol) was added at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred
at 0°C for 30 min. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture
25 was poured into water (500 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (1 L
X 2). The organic layer was washed with water (500 mL), brine (500 mL) and dried over
anhydrous sodium sulphate. The organic layer was evaporated under reduced pressure to
yield the crude product which was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 5% EtOAc
in hexane) yielding the *title compound* (13.9g, 53% yield) as a yellow oil.
30 ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.46 (s, 1H), 7.49 (t, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (dd, *J* 8.1, 1.1
Hz, 1H), 7.20 (m, 1H), 6.61 (t, 1H).

INTERMEDIATE 2

N-[[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]methylene]-(S)-2-methyl-propane-2-sulfinamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 1* (20 g, 97.08 mmol) in dry THF (100 mL) at 0°C was added (S)-(-)-*t*-butyl sulfinamide (12.92 g, 106.79 mmol), K₃PO₄ (61.73 g, 291.2 mmol) and K₂HPO₄ (50.6 g, 291.2 mmol). Then the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 18h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was filtered through celite and washed with ethyl acetate (1 L). The organic layer was washed with water (500 mL), brine (500 mL) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. The organic layer was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified chromatography (SiO₂, 10 % EtOAc in hexane) to afford the *title compound* (20g, 87% yield) as a yellow oil.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.90 (s, 1H), 7.45 – 7.32 (m, 2H), 7.29 – 7.15 (m, 1H), 6.82 – 6.34 (m, 1H), 1.29 (s, 9H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 2.73 min, 309.90 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 3

Ethyl (3R)-3-[[[(S)-tert-butylsulfinyl]amino]-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanoate

This procedure used activated zinc and THF dried over sodium and benzophenone complex. Activated zinc was prepared using the following procedure: 150 g of zinc powder was taken in 1N HCl (500 mL), stirred for 10 min and decanted. The zinc dust powder was further washed with water (3 x 500 mL) and decanted. The powder was further washed with acetone (3 x 500 mL), decanted and dried under vacuum to afford 105 g of activated zinc.

To activated zinc dust (105 g, 1618 mmol) in dry THF (150 mL) was added CuCl (19.2 g, 194 mmol) and the reaction mixture was refluxed for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and ethyl bromoacetate (45 mL, 404 mmol in THF 100 mL) was added drop wise. The reaction mixture was stirred at 50°C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and *Intermediate 2* (50 g, 161 mmol in THF 100 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was warmed to r.t. and stirred for 3h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was filtered through celite and washed with ethyl acetate (700 mL). The organic layer was washed with 1N citric acid (500 mL), saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate (500 mL), water (500 mL) and brine (500 mL).

The organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 40 % EtOAc in hexane) to afford the *title compound* (59 g, 92% yield) as a yellow oil.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.29 – 7.21 (m, 2H), 7.05 (d, *J* 7.3 Hz, 1H), 6.82 – 6.34 (m, 1H), 5.59 (m, 1H), 4.36 (s, 1H), 4.18 – 4.02 (m, 2H), 3.25 (dd, *J* 15.6, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 3.01 (dd, *J* 15.3, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 1.31 – 1.11 (m, 12H).

INTERMEDIATE 4

Ethyl (3R)-3-amino-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanoate hydrochloride

10 To a solution of *Intermediate 3* (32 g, 80.6 mmol) in an Ether: EtOH (75 mL, 2:1) mixture was added 4M HCl in 1,4-dioxane (70 mL) and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 1h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was washed with diethyl ether (500 mL) to afford the *title compound* as a yellow solid (22g, 93% yield).

15 ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.93 (d, *J* 6.2 Hz, 2H), 7.32 – 7.10 (m, 3H), 6.96 (s, 1H), 5.42 (m, 1H), 4.08 (q, *J* 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.36 (dd, *J* 16.5, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 3.14 (dd, *J* 16.5, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 1.34 (t, *J* 7.1 Hz, 3H).

INTERMEDIATE 5

20 Ethyl (3R)-3-(5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitro-anilino)-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanoate

To a solution of *Intermediate 4* (5 g, 17.06 mmol) in MeCN (50 mL) was added potassium carbonate (7.06 g, 51.18 mmol) and 1-bromo-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene (4.86 g, 20.47 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 16h. After completion of
25 reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with water (100 mL). The organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 20 % EtOAc in hexane) to afford the *title compound* (6g, 69% yield) as a yellow viscous liquid.

30 LCMS (ES⁺) RT 3.42 min, 510.90/512.90/514.90 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 6

(3R)-3-(5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitro-anilino)-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanal

To a solution of *Intermediate 5* (6 g, 11.7 mmol) in THF (60 mL) at -78°C was added
5 DIBAL-H (23 mL, 23.5 mmol) drop wise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2h at -78°C. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was quenched with an aqueous solution of ammonium chloride (200 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL) and filtered through celite. The filtrate was washed with water (200 mL) and the organic layer was separated, dried over sodium
10 sulphate and evaporated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* (3g, 57% yield) as a yellow oil, which was used in the next step without purification.

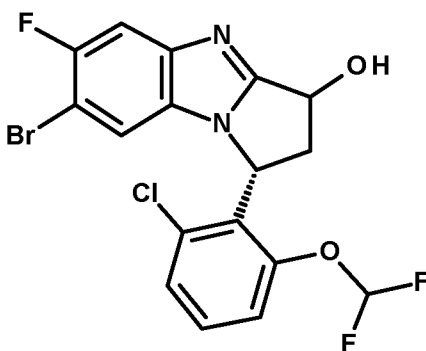
INTERMEDIATE 7

(4R)-4-(5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitro-anilino)-4-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2-trimethylsilyloxy-butanenitrile

To a solution of *Intermediate 6* (3 g, 6.42 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was added ZnI₂ (0.2 g, 0.64 mmol), TEA (0.09 mL, 0.64 mmol) and TMSCN (1.6 mL, 12.84 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 3h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and the organic layer was
20 separated. The organic layer was washed with water (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* (3.25g crude material) which was used for the next step without purification.

INTERMEDIATE 8

(1R)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



To a solution of *Intermediate 7* (3 g, 5.3 mmol) in EtOH (50 mL) was added SnCl_2 (5 g, 26.46 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated at 80°C for 2h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), the reaction mixture was quenched with water (50 mL) and

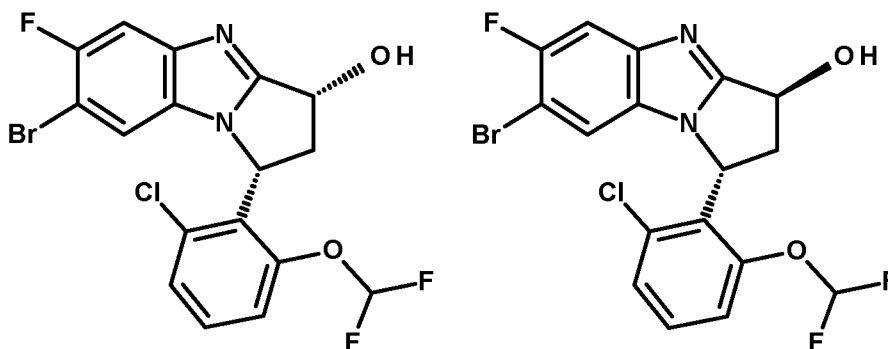
5 basified to pH-8 using 1N KOH (100 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL) and filtered through celite. The organic layer was washed with water (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO_2 , 0-70% EtOAc in hexane) to afford the *title compound* (1.1g, 47% yield) as a pale brown solid.

10 ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.52 (m, 1H), 7.49 – 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.04 – 6.67 (m, 2H), 6.42 (m, 1H), 6.24 – 5.91 (m, 1H), 5.79 – 5.52 (m, 1H), 3.71 – 3.46 (m, 1H), 3.19 (m, 2H).

LCMS (ES⁺) RT 2.39 min, 447.0/449.0/451.0 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺

INTERMEDIATES 9 AND 10

15 (1R,3R)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol and (1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



The *title compounds* were isolated by chiral purification of *Intermediate 8* (15g) under SFC conditions on Chirapak AD (column size: 50*216 mm*mm, flow 360 mL/min, 300mg/injection / frequency: 8.5 minutes, 25°C, CO₂ + 20 % MeOH). Chiral analysis was done on Chiralpak AD-H (column size: 250*4.6 mm, 5µm, flow 1 mL/min at 30°C using 80 / 20 heptane / ethyl acetate containing 0.1%DEA). Under analytical conditions the first eluting diastereoisomers (5.8 and 9.5 minutes) were a mixture of (*1R, 3S*) and (*1R, 3R*)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol.

(*1S, 3R*) and (*1S, 3S*)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol were isolated at 12.5 minutes and 21.5 minutes.

The mixture of a mixture of (*1R, 3S*) and (*1R, 3R*)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol was separated by chiral separation under SFC conditions on Chiracel OD (column size: 50*266 mm*mm, flow 360 mL/min, 80mg/injection / frequency: 4 minutes, 25°C, CO₂ + 20 % MeOH). Chiral analysis was done on Chiralpak AD-H (column size: 250*4.6 mm, 5µm, flow 1 mL/min at 30°C using 70 / 30 heptane / ethyl acetate containing 0.1%DEA). Under analytical conditions the first eluting diastereoisomer (4.9 minutes) was the *trans* isomer, (*1R,3S*)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol. Combined fractions were evaporated to yield *Intermediate 10* (12.7 g, 50%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.41 (m, 3 H), 7.23 (d, *J* 8.0 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.97 (m, 1.2 H), 6.85 (d, *J* 5.8 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.73 (t, *J* 72.3 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.41 (m, 1 H), 5.95 (dd, *J* 74.2, 70.8 Hz, 0.6 H), 5.71 (m, 0.6 H), 5.62 (d, *J* 7.4 Hz, 0.4 H), 3.22 (m, 2 H). as a mixture of rotamers 6/4. LCMS basic (ES⁺) 2.50 min., 446.96/448.95/450.95 (M+H)⁺.

Under analytical conditions the second eluting diastereoisomer (6.6 minutes) was the *cis* isomer, (*1R,3R*)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol. Combined fractions were evaporated to yield *Intermediate 9* (6.6 g, 26%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45 (d, *J* 8.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.31 (m, 1.8 H), 7.20 (m, 0.6 H), 7.08 (d, *J* 7.9 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.88 (d, *J* 5.5 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.74 (d, *J* 5.2 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.61 (t, *J* 72.5 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.15 (t, *J* 72.0 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.08 (m, 1 H), 5.63

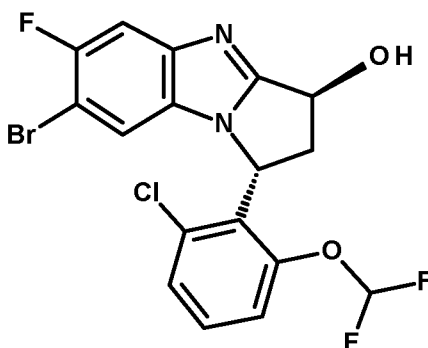
(m, 1 H), 3.56 (m, 0.6 H), 3.43 (m, 0.4 H), 2.98 (m, 0.4 H), 2.80 (m, 0.6 H), as a mixture of rotamers 6/4. LCMS acid (ES⁺) 2.20 min, 446.96/448.95/450.91 (M+H)⁺.

Under preparative conditions the order of elution was reversed.

5

INTERMEDIATE 10

(1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



- 10 The *title compound* can also be prepared by the following procedure: Intermediate 9 (3.65 g, 8.146 mmol, 1 eq) and triphenylphosphine (2.62 g, 9.775 mmol, 1.2 eq) were solubilized in 8 mL of dry THF, under an inert atmosphere of nitrogen. Acetic acid (513 μL, 8.960 mmol, 1.1 eq) was added and the mixture cooled to 0°C. A solution of DIAD (2.42 mL, 12.220 mmol, 1.5 eq) in 8 mL of dry THF was added drop wise. The reaction
- 15 was slowly warmed to r.t. and the reaction continued for 2 hours at this temperature. 20 mL of ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture before washing with 3 x 10 mL of a saturated solution of NaHCO₃. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 5% MeOH in DCM) giving 4.8g (94% yield) of the inverted acetate intermediate
- 20 which was used directly used in the next step. [(1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl] acetate (4.8 g, 9.800 mmol, 1 eq) was solubilized in 48 mL of methanol. Potassium carbonate (1.4 g, 9.800 mmol, 1 eq) was added and the reaction continued for 1 hour at r.t. The reaction was evaporated and the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate (50 mL)
- 25 and water (20 mL). The organic layer was washed by water (2x 20 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to give 4.7g of the crude *title compound* as a slightly beige solid.

INTERMEDIATE 11

tert-butyl-dimethyl-[1-methyl-1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]ethoxy]silane

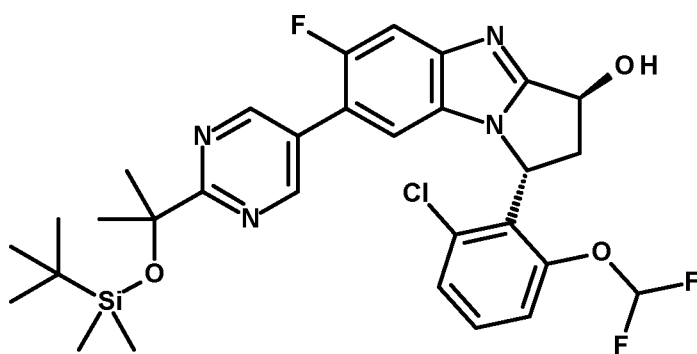
2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (10 g, 37.8601 mmol), *tert*-butyldimethylchlorosilane (11.76 g, 75.72 mmol) and imidazole (7.890 g, 115.89 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (150 mL). The reaction was stirred at 85°C for 4 days. EtOAc (100 mL) and water (250 mL) were added, the aqueous layer was extracted with 3x20 mL of EtOAc then the combined organic layers were washed with brine (3x20 mL). and dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the *title compound* as a transparent oil (12.0g, 83.76%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.04 (s, 2 H), 1.70 (s, 6 H), 1.40 (s, 12 H), 0.94 (s, 9 H), 0.01 (s, 6 H). LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 3.04min, 297.20 (M+H)⁺.

15

INTERMEDIATE 12

(1R,3S)-7-[2-[1-[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-ethyl]pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



20

Intermediate 10 (5.12 g, 11.44 mmol), *Intermediate 11* (5.19 g, 13.73 mmol) and cesium carbonate (5.59 g, 17.16 mmol, 1.5 eq) were placed in a tube, and filled with argon. Degassed 1,4-dioxane (41.2 mL, 3.6 mL/mmol) and degassed water (4.1 mL, 0.36 mL/mmol) were added and the resulting slurry was stirred at r.t. for 5 minutes before addition of [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (418.7 mg,

25

0.572 mmol, 0.05 eq). The reaction mixture was placed on a pre-heated stirring plate at 90°C and stirred at this temperature for 2 h. Reaction mixture was cooled down to r.t. before addition of 50 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of water. The aqueous layer extracted with 3 x 20 mL of ethyl acetate. Combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure.

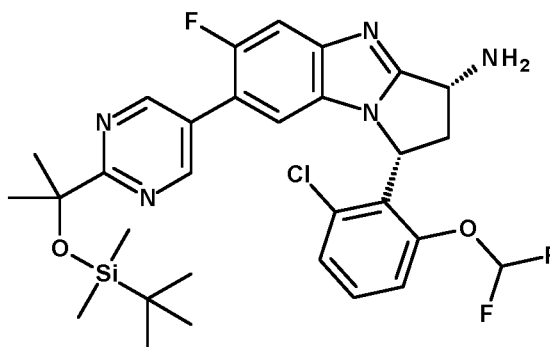
The crude was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 30-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the title compound (3.8 g, 53% yield).

LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.54min., 619.20 / 621.16 (M+H)⁺.

10

INTERMEDIATE 13

(1R,3R)-7-[2-[1-[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-ethyl]pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine



15

Intermediate 12 (3.369 g, 5.441 mmol) was suspended in 11 mL of dry toluene. At 0°C, diphenylphosphoryl azide (1.58 mL, 7.071 mmol) was added followed by addition of 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (1.139 mL, 7.616 mmol). The reaction was allowed to reach r.t. and stirred at this temperature for 2h then heated at 50°C for 18h.

The reaction mixture was diluted by 100 mL of water and 100 mL of ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was extracted by ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL). Combined organic layers were washed with successively 20 mL of a saturated solution of NH₄Cl and 20 mL of a saturated solution of NaHCO₃, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated in vacuum.

25

The crude azide intermediate was solubilized in a solution of tetrahydrofuran (50 mL, 10 mL / mmol) and water (5 mL, 1 mL / mmol) before addition of 1 M solution of

trimethylphosphine in toluene (11 mL, 11 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 2h. Solvents were evaporated and the residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 5-8% MeOH in DCM) to afford the title compound (2.8 g, 83% yield).

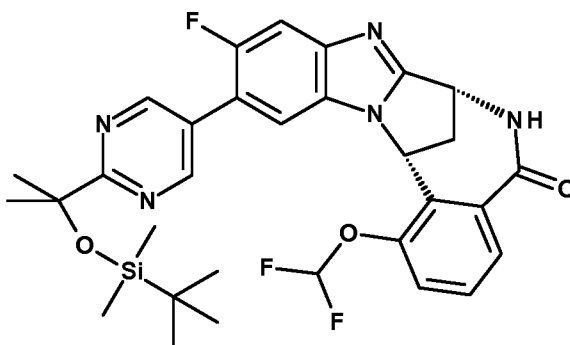
LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT= 3.52min., 618.20/620.20 (M+H)⁺.

5

INTERMEDIATE 14

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

10



Intermediate 13 (2.78 g, 4.50 mmol, 1 eq), sodium carbonate (2.38 g, 22.5 mmol, 5 eq) and dichloro bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II) [Pd-133 from Johnson Matthey] (552 mg, 0.899 mmol, 0.2 eq) were solubilized / suspended in degassed (nitrogen) 1,4-dioxane (54 mL, 12 mL / mmol). The reaction mixture was heated overnight at 150°C under 5 atmosphere of CO gas. The reaction mixture was filtered over celite, which was thoroughly washed with ethanol. Solvents were evaporated and the residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 80-100% EtOAc in heptane), giving the title compound (1.39 g, 50% yield).

20 LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.47 min., 610.25/611.25 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 15

ethyl (3R)-3-(5-bromo-2-nitro-anilino)-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanoate

25 *Intermediate 15* was prepared, using the same procedure described for preparation of *Intermediate 5*, from *Intermediate 4* (9.3g, 28.3 mmol) and 4-bromo-2-fluoro-

nitrobenzene (7.4g, 34 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at 80°C and purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 10% EtOAc in hexane). *Intermediate 15* was obtained as a yellow oil (12.5g, 90% yield).

LCMS (ES⁺) 495 (M+H)⁺

5

INTERMEDIATE 16

(3R)-3-(5-bromo-2-nitro-anilino)-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanal

Intermediate 16 was prepared from *Intermediate 15* (12.5g, 25.4 mmol) using the same procedure described for preparation of *Intermediate 6*. Following work-up the crude *Intermediate 16* was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 15% EtOAc in hexane) yielding
10 *Intermediate 16* (9g, 80% yield) as a yellow oil.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.80 (d, *J* 1.3 Hz, 1H), 8.78 (d, *J* 9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.99 (d, *J* 9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.27 (d, *J* 3.2 Hz, 2H), 7.21 – 7.08 (m, 1H), 6.81 – 6.66 (m, 2H), 5.93 (m, 1H), 3.56 – 3.38 (m, 2H), 3.12 (dd, *J* 17.9, 5.2 Hz, 1H).

15

INTERMEDIATE 17

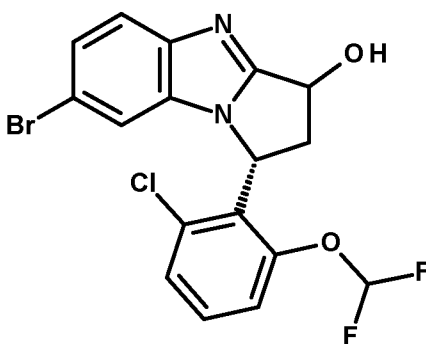
(4R)-4-(5-bromo-2-nitro-anilino)-4-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2-trimethylsilyloxy-butanenitrile

Intermediate 17 was prepared from *Intermediate 16* (9g, 20 mmol) using the same procedure described for preparation of *Intermediate 7*. The reaction was stirred at r.t. for
20 2h. After completion of reaction (monitored by TLC), water (200 mL) was added and extracted with DCM (500 mL). After evaporation of organic layer, the crude product, obtained as a yellow oil (9g), was used directly for the next step without any purification.

INTERMEDIATE 18

25

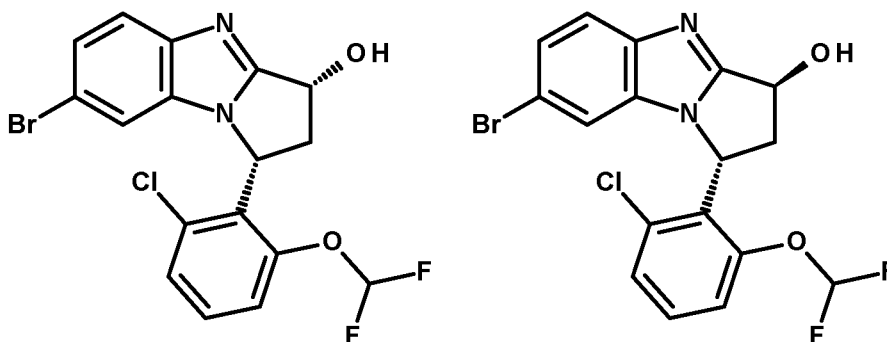
(1R)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



Intermediate 18 was prepared from *Intermediate 17* (9g, 16.4 mmol) using the same procedure described for preparation of *Intermediate 8*. The crude product was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 60% EtOAc in hexane) then triturated with hexane:ethyl acetate to yield the title compound (3g, 43% yield) as a yellow solid.
LCMS (ES⁺) 431 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 19 AND 20

(1R,3R)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol and (1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



The *title compounds* were isolated by chiral purification of *Intermediate 18* (12.5g) by 2 successive chiral separation.

First chiral separation:

Under SFC conditions on Chiralcel OD (column size: 50*266 mm*mm, flow 360 mL/min, 20mg/injection / frequency: 4 minutes, 25°C, CO₂ + 20 % MeOH). Chiral analysis was done on Chiralcel OD-H (column size: 250*4.6 mm, flow 1 mL/min at 30°C using

100% methanol containing 0.1%DEA). Under analytical conditions the first eluting diastereoisomer (3.9 minutes) was *either (1S, 3R) or (1S, 3S)* 7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol. The second eluting diastereoisomers (4.7 minutes) were a mixture of *(1R, 3S) along with either (1S, 3R) or (1S,3S)*-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol and the third eluting diastereoisomer (5.4 minutes) was *(1R, 3R)*-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol. Combined fractions of the third eluting diastereomer were evaporated to yield to *Intermediate 19* (3.63g, 29%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 7.57 (m, 2.3 H), 7.45 (m, 0.8 H), 7.35 (d, *J* 8.0 Hz, 0.6 H), 7.26 (m, 1 H), 7.17 (m, 0.3 H), 6.83 (t, *J* 72.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.69 (bs, 1 H), 6.15 (m, 1 H), 6.07 (m, 1 H), 5.38 (m, 1 H), 3.38 (m, 1 H), 2.67 (m, 1 H) as a mixture of rotamers 7/3. LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 4.31 min., 429.10/431.08/433.05 (M+H)⁺.

Second chiral separation:

15 Under SFC conditions on Whelko 01 (R,R) (column size: 50*227 mm*mm, flow 360 mL/min, 690mg/injection / frequency: 5.5 minutes, 25°C, CO₂ + 20 % EtOH). Chiral analysis was done on Chiralcel OD-H (column size: 250*4.6 mm, flow 1 mL/min at 30°C using 50 / 50 heptane / isopropyl alcohol containing 0.1%DEA).

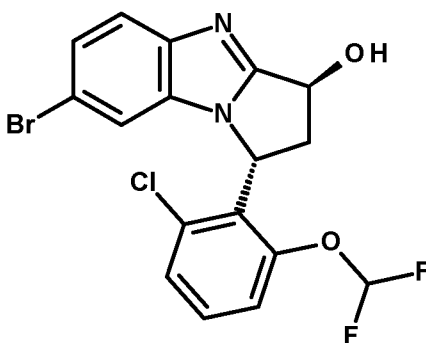
Under analytical conditions, the first eluting diastereomer (4.1 minutes) was *either (1S, 3R) or (1S,3S)*-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol.

Under analytical conditions, the second eluting diastereomer (5.9 minutes) was the *trans* isomer, *(1R,3S)*-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol. Combined fractions were evaporated to yield *Intermediate 20* (4.46g, 36%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 7.55 (m, 3.4 H), 7.31 (m, 1.4 H), 7.12 (d, *J* 7.8 Hz, 0.6 H), 7.03 (t, *J* 73.0 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.89 (s, 0.6 H), 6.81 (s, 0.4 H), 6.32 (dd, *J* 8.4, 5.9 Hz, 1 H), 6.10 (d, *J* 6.6 Hz, 1 H), 5.32 (m, 0.6 H), 5.26 (t, *J* 6.9 Hz, 0.4 H), 3.13 (m, 1 H), 2.93 (m, 1 H). as a mixture of rotamers 6/4. LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 4.40 min., 429.05/431.08/433.05 (M+H)⁺.

30 Under preparative conditions the order of elution was reversed.

INTERMEDIATE 20

(1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



5

The *title compound* was prepared from the same procedure as the preparation of *Intermediate 10* starting from *Intermediate 19* (3.63 g, 8.450 mmol), triphenylphosphine (2.66 g, 10.14 mmol), and acetic acid (0.5 mL, 9.295 mmol) THF (34 mL), DIAD (2.62 mL, 12.67 mmol) in 5 ml of dry THF giving 3.6 g (91%) of the inverted acetate intermediate which was used directly in the next step. Using the following conditions.

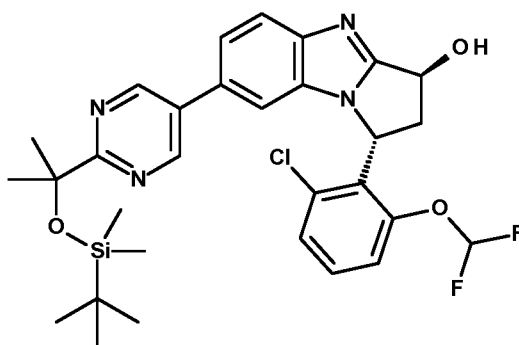
[(1R,3S)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2a]benzimidazol-3-yl] acetate (4.0 g, 8.480 mmol) was solubilized in 40 mL of methanol. Potassium carbonate (1.1 g, 8.48 mmol, 1 eq) was added and the reaction continued for 1 hour at rt. The methanol was evaporated and the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate (50 mL) and water (20 mL). The organic layer was washed by water (2x 20 mL), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to give 4.9 g of crude title compound as a brown oil use without further purification.

LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 2.46 min., 428.94 / 430.96/433.16 (M+H)⁺.

20

INTERMEDIATE 21

(1R,3S)-7-[2-[1-[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-ethyl]pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



Intermediate 20 (4.46g, 10.38 mmol), Intermediate 11 (3.92 g, 10.38 mmol) following the protocol described for intermediate 12 using cesium carbonate (5.07 g, 15.57 mmol), 1,4-dioxane (37.1 mL, 3.6 mL/mmol), water (3.7 mL, 0.36 mL/mmol), [1,1'

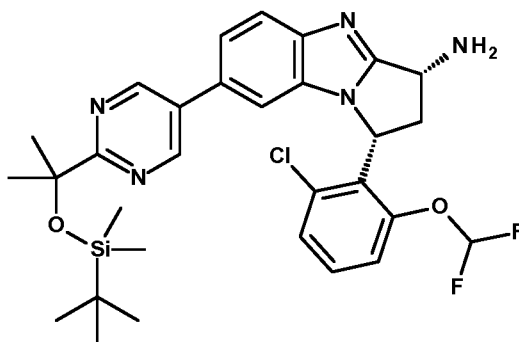
5 bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (379.8 mg, 0.5191 mmol, 0.05 eq), The crude was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 30-100% EtOAc in hexane) to yield the title compound (5.7g, 92% yield).

LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 3.64 min., 601.29 / 603.21 (M+H)⁺

10

INTERMEDIATE 22

(1R,3R)-7-[2-[1-[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-ethyl]pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine



15

Intermediate 22 was prepared from Intermediate 21 following the protocol described for intermediate 13, using toluene (34 mL), diphenylphosphoryl azide (5.0 mL, 24.22 mmol), 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (3.62 mL, 24.22 mmol) for the first step and tetrahydrofuran (172 mL), water (17 mL), 1 M solution of trimethylphosphine in toluene

20 (34.6 mL, 20.8 mmol) for the second step.

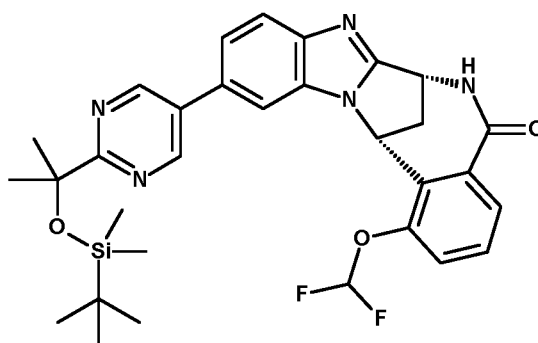
The crude residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 0-5% MeOH in DCM, 1% NH₄) to afford the title compound (7g, 61% yield).

LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.49min., 600.25 / 602.25 (M+H)⁺

5

INTERMEDIATE 23

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



10

Intermediate 23 was prepared from *Intermediate 22* (7.00 g, 7.931 mmol) following the protocol described for *Intermediate 14* using sodium carbonate (6.181 g, 58.31 mmol), dichloro bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II) [Pd-133 from Johnson Matthey] (1.43 g, 0.254 mmol), 1,4-dioxane (95 mL, 12 mL / mmol) and 5 atmosphere of CO gas.

15

The crude was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 50-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the title compound (3.2 g, 62% yield) as a white solid.

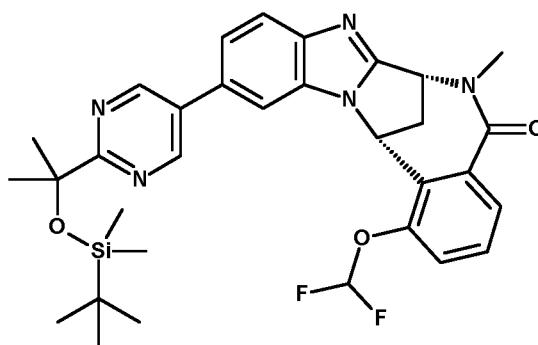
20

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 9.23 (d, *J* 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 9.16 (s, 2 H), 8.32 (dd, *J* 5.9, 3.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.88 (dd, *J* 51.9, 43.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.84 (s, 1 H), 7.71 (dd, *J* 8.3, 1.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.60 (m, 3 H), 6.47 (d, *J* 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 4.99 (t, *J* 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 3.58 (m, 1 H), 2.85 (d, *J* 13.4 Hz, 1 H), 1.76 (s, 6 H), 0.95 (s, 9 H), 0.01 (s, 6 H). LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.43 min., 592.27 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 24

25

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

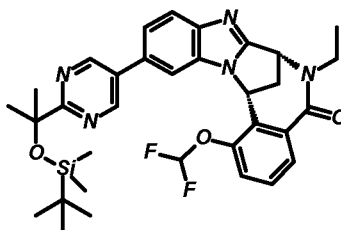


Intermediate 23 (1.0 g, 1.690 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (10 mL/g) and tetrabutylammonium iodate (0.250 g, 0.676 mmol) was added. At 0°C, sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil) (0.081 g, 2.028 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 35 minutes. Iodomethane (0.727 g, 5.070 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 18h. Distilled water (200 mL) was added, the mixture was extracted by of ethyl acetate (3 x 150 mL). Combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 50-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the title compound (0.868 g, 85% yield).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.95 (s, 2 H), 8.54 (d, 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.93 (d, *J* 8.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.80 (s, 1 H), 7.59 (d, *J* 8.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 (t, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.37 (d, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 6.89 (t, *J* 72.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.42 (d, *J* 6.9 Hz, 1 H), 5.30 (d, *J* 6.7 Hz, 1 H), 3.63 (m, 4 H), 2.99 (d, *J* 13.6 Hz, 1 H), 1.75 (s, 6 H), 0.92 (s, 9 H), 0.00 (s, 6 H). LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.51 min., 606.25 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 25

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

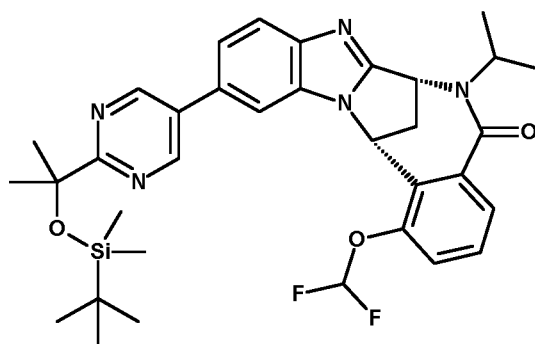


Intermediate 23 (0.075 g, 0.127 mmol, 1 eq) was dissolved in dry THF (10 mL). At 0°C, sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil) (0.008 g, 0.190 mmol) was added and the reaction

mixture was heated at 65°C for 2.5 h, then was allowed to reach r.t. and iodoethane (0.059 g, 0.380 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was then stirred at r.t. for 60 h. Additional Iodoethane (50 µL) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. for 2 h. Distilled water (20 mL) was added, the mixture was extracted with 3 x 20 mL of ethyl acetate. Combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated in vacuum. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 50-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the title compound as a white solid (0.069 g, 88% yield). LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 2.24 min. 506.23 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 26

10 (7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(propan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



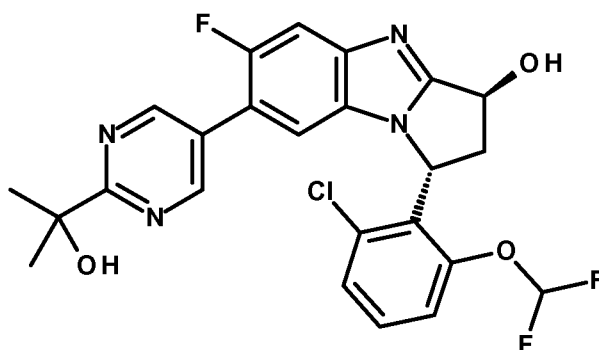
15

A solution of *Intermediate 23* (25 mg, 0.0423 mmol), potassium hydroxide (2.85 mg, 0.0507 mmol), tetrabutylammonium bromide (12.26 mg, 0.0380 mmol) and 2-iodopropane (14.36 mg, 0.0845 mmol) in dry THF (0.8 mL) was stirred at r.t. for 24 h. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate and concentrated to dryness to afford the title compound (10 mg) which was used in the next step without further purification. LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.60 min. 534.30 (M+H)⁺.

20

INTERMEDIATE 27

(1R,3S)-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol



5

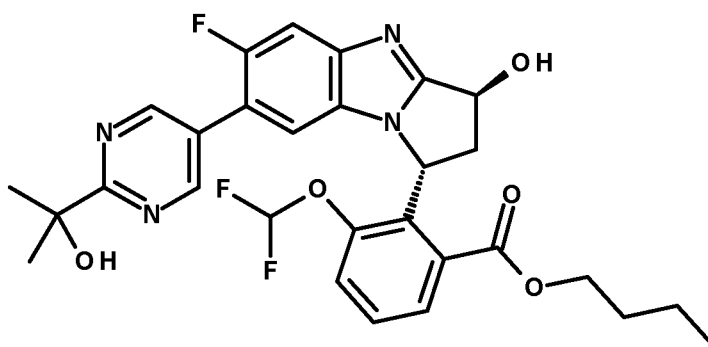
Intermediate 27 was prepared from *Intermediate 20* (4.61 g, 10.30 mmol), following the protocol described for *Intermediate 12*, using 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (3.00 g, 11.330 mmol), cesium carbonate (5.03 g, 15.450 mmol), 1,4-dioxane (37.1 mL), water (3.7 mL), [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (376.8 mg, 0.5150 mmol). The crude was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 30-100% EtOAc in heptane) to afford the *title compound* (3.6 g, 69%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.77 (s, 1.2 H), 8.73 (s, 0.8 H), 7.59 (d, J = 11.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.37 (m, 2.8 H), 7.23 (m, 0.6 H), 6.99 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.84 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.74 (t, J = 72.5 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.70 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.51 (m, 1 H), 6.02 (dd, J₁ = 74.0 Hz, J₂ = 71.0 Hz, 0.4 H), 5.77 (dd, J₁ = 7.8 Hz, J₂ = 3.3 Hz, 0.6 H), 5.68 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 0.4 H), 4.60 (bs, 1 H), 3.27 (m, 2 H), 1.64 (s, 3.60 H), 1.62 (s, 2.40). LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 1.91 min. 505.15 / 507.15 (M+H)⁺.

20

INTERMEDIATE 28

Butyl 3-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[(1R,3S)-6-fluoro-3-hydroxy-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]benzoate



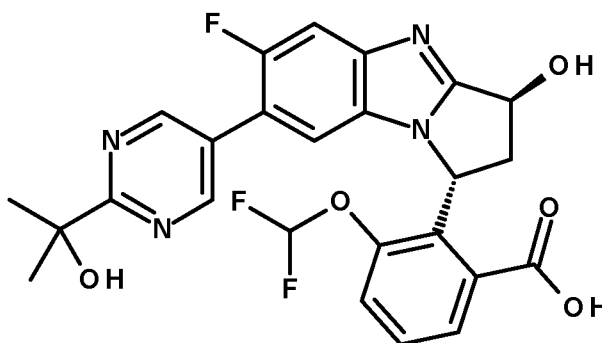
A solution of *Intermediate 27* (900 mg, 1.783 mmol), sodium carbonate (944 mg, 8.913 mmol), dichloro [bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II) (54.7 mg, 0.08913 mmol) in 10 mL of 1-butanol was heated for 16 h at 150°C under 4 atm of CO gas.

The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, the residue was taken up in 50 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 3x 20 mL of NaOH 0.1 M. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 80% EtOAc in hexane), to afford the title compound (490 mg, 48.2 % yield).

LCMS acid (ES⁺) RT 2.66 min. 571.25 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 29

3-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[(1R,3S)-6-fluoro-3-hydroxy-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]benzoic acid



Intermediate 28 (470 mg, 0.8237 mmol) was dissolved in 4.7 mL of methanol. A 5 N solution of sodium hydroxide (0.3295 mL, 1.647 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 48h. The reaction mixture was neutralized with HCl 1N and the solvent was evaporated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x

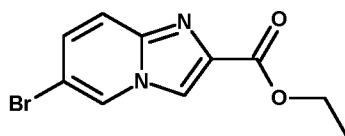
25 mL), the combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford crude 511 mg of the title compound used without further purification.

LCMS acid (ES^+) RT 2.05 min., 515.17 ($M+H$)⁺.

5

INTERMEDIATE 30

Ethyl 6-bromoimidazo[1,2-a]pyridine-2-carboxylate

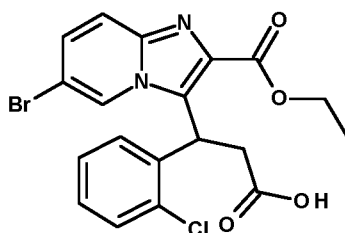


10

The *title compound* was prepared according to the procedure provided in international patent application WO 2014/009295 .

INTERMEDIATE 31

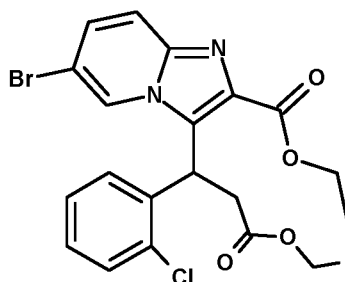
15 3-(6-bromo-2-ethoxycarbonyl-imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-3-yl)-3-(2-chlorophenyl)propanoic acid



Intermediate 30 (8 g, 29.73 mmol), 2-chlorobenzaldehyde (6.7 ml, 59.58 mmol),
20 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxane-4,6-dione (8.6 g, 59.67 mmol), L-proline (170 mg, 1.48 mmol)
and $MgSO_4$ (11 g, 91.39 mmol) in acetonitrile (80 mL) was heated at 90 °C for 33 h,
followed by 100 °C 15h. The reaction cooled to r.t., and the solid filtered off, and washed
with methanol (2 x 50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and triturated with
diethyl ether (50 mL) and sonicated for 10min and resulting gum was filtered off and
25 rinsed with diethyl ether (2 x 50 mL) yielding the *title compound* as beige solid (10.2g,
76%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Methanol- d_4) δ 8.79 (s, 1H), 7.74 (d, *J* 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.67 –
7.55 (m, 2H), 7.43 – 7.34 (m, 2H), 7.34 – 7.20 (m, 1H), 5.56 (dd, *J* 9.5, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 4.35
(qt, *J* 7.4, 3.7 Hz, 2H), 3.70 (dd, *J* 16.7, 9.5 Hz, 1H), 3.40 (dd, *J* 16.7, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 1.34
(t, *J* 7.1 Hz, 3H). LCMS (ES^+) RT 1.24 min, 451.0/453.0 ($M+H$)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 32

Ethyl 6-bromo-3-[1-(2-chlorophenyl)-3-ethoxy-3-oxo-propyl]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridine-2-carboxylate



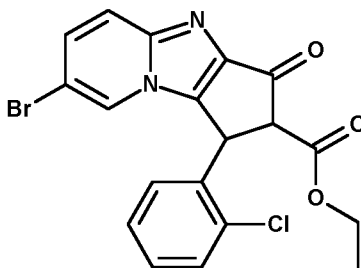
5

Thionyl chloride (4 ml, 55.14 mmol) was added to the stirred solution of *Intermediate 31* (10.2 g, 20.1 mmol) in EtOH (100 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture warmed to r.t. and stirred for 20h. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and resulting residue was triturated with EtOAc (100 mL) and washed with sat. NaHCO₃ (100 mL) and further extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in heptane) yielding the *title compound* as an orange gum (8.2g, 85%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.40 (s, 1H), 7.65 (dd, *J* 7.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, *J* 9.5 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (dd, *J* 7.9, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (dd, *J* 9.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.27 – 7.23 (m, 1H), 7.20 (td, *J* 7.6, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 5.44 (dd, *J* 9.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 4.42 (q, *J* 7.1 Hz, 2H), 4.09 – 3.94 (m, 2H), 3.82 (dd, *J* 16.6, 9.9 Hz, 1H), 3.26 (dd, *J* 16.6, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 1.40 (t, *J* 7.1 Hz, 3H), 1.12 (t, *J* 7.1 Hz, 3H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.44 min, 479.0/481.0 (M+H)⁺.

20

INTERMEDIATE 33

Ethyl 7-bromo-1-(2-chlorophenyl)-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridine-2-carboxylate

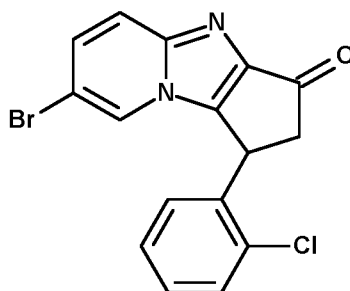


Intermediate 32 (4 g, 8.34 mmol) was co-evaporated twice with toluene (50 mL) and the residue dissolved in dry toluene (400 mL) and degassed with N₂(g) for 5 min. The mixture was cooled to -10°C (external temp) and a 25% w/w solution of potassium 2-methylbutan-2-olate in toluene (7.5 mL, 13.37 mmol) was then added drop wise and stirred for 30min at -10°C. The reaction mixture was quenched with acetic acid (2 mL) and diluted with water (200 mL), extracted with EtOAc (2 x 200 mL). The combined organic layer was washed with sat. aq. sodium bicarbonate (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* as a pale yellow solid (3.3 g, 82%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.65 (d, *J* 9.8 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (d, *J* 6.7 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (dd, *J* 9.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (t, *J* 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.25 – 7.15 (m, 1H), 6.67 (s, 1H), 5.59 (s, 1H), 4.30 (q, *J* 7.1 Hz, 2H), 3.89 (s, 1H), 1.33 (t, *J* 7.1 Hz, 3H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.35 min, 433.0/435.0 (M+H)⁺.

15

INTERMEDIATE 34

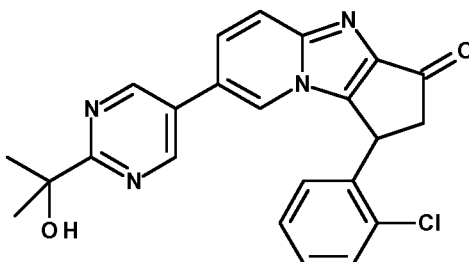
7-bromo-1-(2-chlorophenyl)-1,2-dihydro-3H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-3-one



Intermediate 33 (3.2 g, 6.64 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (50 mL) and water (10 mL) then heated at 100 °C for 48h. The reaction was cooled to r.t. and poured on to ice and left to stand for 1h. The resulting residue was filtered off and washed with water yielding the *title compound* as a pale yellow solid (2.5 g, 99%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.65 (dd, *J* 9.8, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (d, *J* 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (dd, *J* 9.8, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (td, *J* 7.8, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (t, *J* 7.4 Hz, 1H), 6.77 (s, 1H), 5.22 (s, 1H), 3.73 (dd, *J* 18.4, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 2.92 (d, *J* 19.0 Hz, 1H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.27 min, 361.0/363.0 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 35

1-(2-chlorophenyl)-7-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1,2-dihydro-3H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-3-one



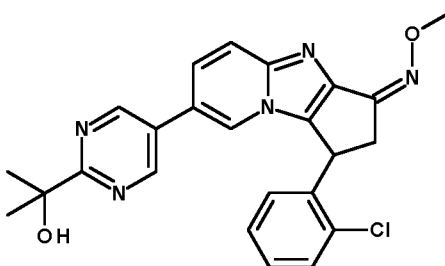
5

Intermediate 34 (1 g, 2.65 mmol), 2-[5-(tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (0.84 g, 3.19 mmol) were dissolved in dioxane (40 mL) then 2M disodium carbonate (4 mL) was added and the mixture was degassed with N₂ for 5 min. Bis[3-(diphenylphosphanyl)cyclopenta-2,4-dien-1-yl]iron; dichloromethane; dichloropalladium (108 mg, 0.13 mmol) was added and the reaction was heated to 80°C for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to r.t. and diluted with water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (50 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography, (SiO₂, 10-100% EtOAc in heptane) yielding the *title compound* as a light brown solid (1.1 g, 96%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.81 (s, 2H), 7.91 (d, *J* 9.6 Hz, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.53 (dd, *J* 9.5, 1.6 Hz, 2H), 7.29 (td, *J* 7.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (t, *J* 7.4 Hz, 1H), 6.84 (s, 1H), 5.31 (s, 1H), 4.45 (s, 1H), 3.77 (dd, *J* 18.3, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.99 (d, *J* 18.9 Hz, 1H), 1.63 (s, 6H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.14 min, 419.0/421.0 (M+H)⁺.

25

INTERMEDIATE 36

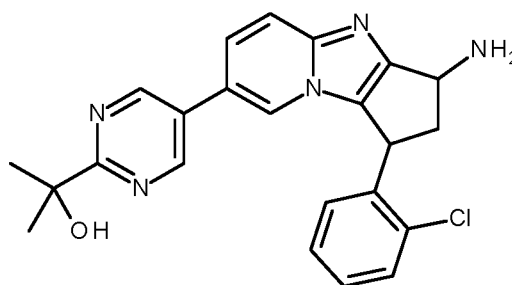
2-{5-[(1-(2-chlorophenyl)-3-(methoxyimino)-2,3-dihydro-1H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-7-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol



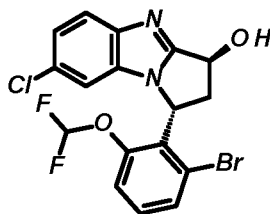
Intermediate 35 (500 mg, 1.11 mmol), O-methylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (185 mg, 2.22 mmol) and sodium acetate (182 mg, 2.22 mmol) in ethanol (20 mL) were heated at 85 °C for 6h. The reaction mixture was cooled to r.t., concentrated *in vacuo* then
 5 diluted with sat. aq. sodium bicarbonate (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (25 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* as beige solid (500 mg, 95%).
¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.80 (d, *J* 1.1 Hz, 2H), 7.98 - 7.73 (m, 2H), 7.54 - 7.36 (m, 2H), 7.26 (s, 2H), 6.94 - 6.64 (m, 1H), 5.31 - 5.09 (m, 1H), 4.48 (d, *J* 9.5 Hz, 1H), 4.07
 10 (d, *J* 53.7 Hz, 3H), 3.97(dd, *J* 18.2, 7.9 Hz, 1H), 3.23 - 3.10 (m, 1H), 1.56 (s, 6H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.17 and 1.29 min, 448.0/450.0 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 37

15 2-{5-[3-amino-1-(2-chlorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-7-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

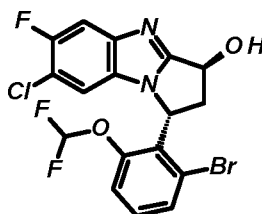


20 A solution of *Intermediate 36* (500 mg, 1.12 mmol), 7M ammonia in MeOH (0.64 mL) in methanol (50 mL) was passed over a Raney Nickel cartridge at a flow-rate of 1 ml/min, 60 bar hydrogen pressure at 80°C in a H-Cube® continuous-flow hydrogenation reactor. This process was repeated three times and mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC yielding the *title*
 25 *compound* as an off white solid (300 mg, 64%). A 1.6:1 *cis* /*trans* mixture of distereoisomers was isolated. ¹H NMR, *cis* distereoisomer, (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.78 (s, 2H), 7.74 (d, *J* 20.0 Hz, 2H), 7.51 - 7.44 (m, 1H), 7.40 - 7.33 (m, 1H), 7.24 - 7.17 (m, 2H), 7.14 (t, *J* 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.00 (dd, *J* 7.6, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 4.96 (dd, *J* 8.1, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 4.59 (dd, *J* 7.4, 5.7 Hz, 3H), 3.69 (dt, *J* 13.5, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 2.11 (dt, *J* 13.4, 5.6 Hz, 1H),
 30 1.61 (s, 6H). LCMS (ES⁺) RT 1.60min (*cis*) and 1.65 min (*trans*), 420.0/422.0 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 38

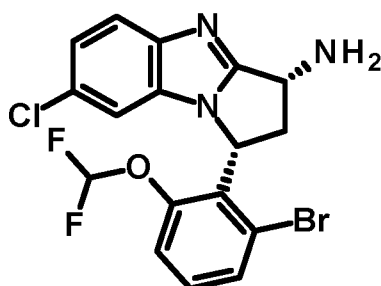
(1*R*,3*S*)-7-chloro-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-
a]benzimidazol-3-ol

The *title compound* was prepared in a sequence of steps analogous to those described for *Intermediate 10* starting from 2-bromo-6-hydroxy-benzaldehyde and utilising 4-chloro-2-fluoro-nitrobenzene instead of 1-bromo-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene in the fifth synthetic step.

INTERMEDIATE 39

(1*R*,3*S*)-7-chloro-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-
pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol

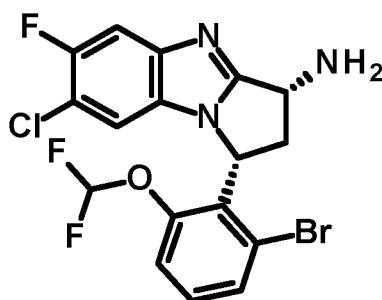
The *title compound* was prepared in a sequence of steps analogous to those described for *Intermediate 10* starting from 2-bromo-6-hydroxy-benzaldehyde and utilising 1-chloro-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene, instead of 1-bromo-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene in the fifth synthetic step.

INTERMEDIATE 40

(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine

Intermediate 38 (5 g, 11.64 mmol) was suspended in toluene (22 mL) and cooled to 0°C before addition of diphenylphosphoryl azide (3.4 mL, 15 mmol) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (2.5 mL, 16 mmol). The mixture was allowed to warm up to r.t and stirred for 2 hours and subsequently at 45°C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (150 mL) and the organic phase washed with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride (50 mL) then a saturated solution of aqueous sodium bicarbonate (50 mL), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude residue thus obtained was solubilized in THF (100 mL) and water (10 mL), trimethylphosphine (17.46 mL, 17.46 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred overnight. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, partitioned between EtOAc (200 mL) and water (150 mL). The organic layer was extracted with 0.2M HCl aq (3 x 200 mL). The combined acid layer was stirred in an ice bath, whilst 10% NaOH solution was added with stirring until pH increased to 10. The stirred was continued for further 15 minutes to complete precipitation. The precipitate was filtered, rinsed with water (20 mL), then dried under suction for 10 minutes before drying under high vacuum overnight to afford 3.92 g (78%) of the *title compound* as an off white solid. LCMS basic: RT 1.96 min. (ES+) 428/430 (M+H)⁺

INTERMEDIATE 41



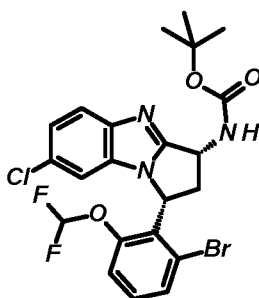
(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 39* using the experimental protocol described for the preparation of *Intermediate 40*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using EtOAc / MeOH (100/0 to 70/30) as eluent,

yielding 15g (83%) of the *title compound* as an amorphous solid. LCMS basic: RT 2.04 min. (ES+) 446/448 (M+H)⁺.

5

INTERMEDIATE 42

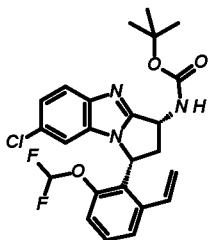


tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

To a solution of *Intermediate 40* (700 mg, 2 mmol) in DCM (10 mL), at 0°C, was added dropwise triethylamine (500 µL, 4 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbamate (400 mg, 2 mmol) portionwise. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour and at r.t overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into ice-water (20 mL) and the aqueous layer was extracted by DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (heptane / EtOAc 2 / 8), yielding 626 mg (70 %) of the *title compound*. LCMS basic (ES+) RT 2.92 min., 528.0 / 530.0 (M+H)⁺

15

INTERMEDIATE 43



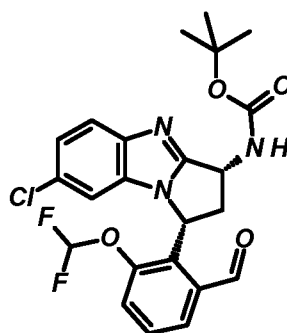
tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-7-chloro-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethenylphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

20

Intermediate 42 (250 mg, 0.473 mmol), potassium vinyltrifluoroborate (92.3 mg, 0.662 mmol), cesium carbonate (308 mg, 0.944 mmol), and 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (19.3

mg, 0.0236 mmol) were placed in a tube, and filled with argon. Degassed 1,4 dioxane (5 mL) and water (0.5 mL) were added and the resulting slurry was stirred at 110°C overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC (basic conditions) to afford 175 mg (78%) of the *title compound*. LCMS basic (ES+) RT 2.91 min., 476/478(M+H)+.

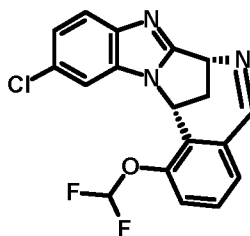
INTERMEDIATE 44



10 tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-7-chloro-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-formylphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

Intermediate 43 (25 mg, 0.0526 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4 dioxane (0.4 mL) and water (0.1 mL). At 0°C, sodium periodate (34 mg, 0.158 mmol) followed by osmium tetroxide (26 µl, 0.0021 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to r.t and stirred overnight. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc (2 mL) and water (2 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with a saturated solution of sodium thiosulfate (2 mL), brine, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to afford the *title compound* which was used without further purification. LCMS basic (ES+) RT 2.65 min., 478/480(M+H)+

INTERMEDIATE 45

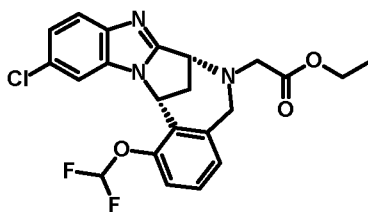


(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

Intermediate 44 (0.0525 mmol) was dissolved in DCM/TFA (1/1). The reaction mixture was stirred at r.t for one hour. The reaction mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* as a TFA salt which was used without further purification. LCMS basic (ES+) RT 2.29 min., 360/362 (M+H)+

5

INTERMEDIATE 46



Ethyl [(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,14-dihydro-7,14-

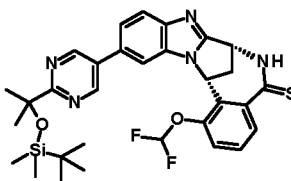
10 methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]acetate

Example 12 (120 mg, 0.332 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL). Potassium carbonate (2 equiv., 0.663 mmol) and ethyl bromoacetate (1.2 equiv., 0.398 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t for 1 hour.

15 The mixture was filtered, rinsed with EtOAc and the volatiles removed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up with EtOAc, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude compound was purified by reverse phase chromatography to afford 34 mg (23%) of the *title compound*. LCMS (ES+) 448/450 (M+H)⁺

20

INTERMEDIATE 47



(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-
(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-
5(14H)-thione

25 *Intermediate 23* (150 mg, 0.254 mmol) was solubilized in toluene (6 mL) before addition of Lawessons reagent (114 mg, 0.28 mmol). The slurry was heated overnight at 120°C. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue taken up in DCM and

filtered through a pad of silica gel eluting with DCM / MeOH (1/1) to afford 195 mg of the *title compound* as a brown solid used without further purification. LCMS acidic (ES+) RT 3.74 min. 608(M+H)⁺.

5

INTERMEDIATE 49

(S)-N-[(1Z)-(2-Chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)methylidene]-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

To a cooled (0 °C) solution of 2-chloro-6-methoxybenzaldehyde (15 g, 87.93 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (180 mL) was added sequentially (S)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide (11.7 g, 96.7 mmol), tripotassium phosphate (56 g, 264 mmol) and dipotassium hydrogen phosphate (46 g, 263.8 mmol). The cooling bath was removed and the resultant suspension was stirred at r.t. for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite. The filtrate was diluted with EtOAc (250 mL), washed with brine (200 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to a crude residue. The crude material was purified by flash column chromatography (0-50% EtOAc/heptanes) to afford 22.7 g (94%) of the *title compound* as a pale yellow solid. . LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 1.61 min., 274.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.95 (m, 1H), 7.33 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.07 (dd, J = 8.1, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 6.95 – 6.84 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 1.29 (s, 9H).

20

INTERMEDIATE 50

(S)-N-[(1R)-1-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)but-3-en-1-yl]-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

To a suspension of zinc powder (27.9 g, 426.5 mmol) in anhydrous THF (100 mL) was added 1,2-dibromoethane (620 µL, 7.19 mmol) and the mixture heated to 70 °C. After 10 minutes at this temperature, the heating was switched off and the reaction stirred for a further 30 minutes (internal temperature ca. 50 °C) and allowed to cool slowly to r.t. over 20 minutes. Chloro(trimethyl)silane (910 µL, 7.17 mmol) was then added dropwise. Effervescence and an exotherm to ~ 40 °C was observed, along with coagulation of the zinc. The reaction was heated to 50 °C for 10 min then allowed to cool to r.t.. 3-Bromoprop-1-ene (18.5 mL, 213.8 mmol) was then added drop-wise at r.t.. An exotherm to ~ 50 °C was observed during addition and the addition rate controlled to maintain the exotherm. After completion of addition, the resultant grey suspension was heated to 70 °C for 15 minutes, then cooled first to r.t.. over 30 min, then to -40 °C. Anhydrous THF (350 ml) was added, then a pre-cooled solution of *Intermediate 49* (19.5 g, 71.1 mmol) in dry THF (100 mL) was added dropwise whilst maintaining an internal reaction

temperature of between -35 and -40 °C, then the resultant mixture stirred at -40 °C for 1 hour. The reaction was allowed to warm to r.t., decanted and filtered through a sinter funnel to remove excess zinc. The solids were washed with THF (2 x 80 mL). The filtrate was poured into saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (500 mL) and shaken well, then extracted with EtOAc (2 x 500mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (500 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford ~56 g crude yellow oil. This material was purified by reverse-phase flash column chromatography (elution 0-100% MeCN (+0.1% NH₄OH) / H₂O (+0.1% NH₄OH)). The clean fractions were extracted with EtOAc (2 x 3 L). The combined organics were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield 16.8 g (74 %) of the *title compound* as colourless viscous oil. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 1.63 min., 316.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (250 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 7.14 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.97 (dd, J = 8.1, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 6.87 – 6.72 (m, 1H), 5.70 (ddt, J = 17.1, 10.1, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 5.26 – 4.91 (m, 2H), 4.53 (s, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.81 (dt, J = 21.4, 13.8, 7.6 Hz, 2H), 1.10 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 51

(1R)-1-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)but-3-en-1-amine

Intermediate 50 (12.7 g, 40.21 mmol) was dissolved in diethyl ether (40 mL) and ethanol (20 mL) then 4M hydrogen chloride in 1,4-dioxane (31 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. The reaction mixture was partitioned between water (150 mL) and diethyl ether (150 mL). The organic layer was re-extracted with 1M aq HCl solution (150 mL). The aqueous layers were combined, basified to pH 10 by addition of 6M aq NaOH solution and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 200 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield 9.19 g (97%) of the *title compound* as a pale yellow viscous oil. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 1.49 min., 212.3 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 7.10 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (dd, J = 8.1, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 6.79 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 5.77 (ddt, J = 17.2, 10.2, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 5.11 - 4.92 (m, 2H), 4.56 (t, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.61 (hept, J = 7.3, 6.9 Hz, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 52

tert-butyl-[1-[5-(2,5-difluoro-4-nitro-phenyl)pyrimidin-2-yl]-1-methyl-ethoxy]-dimethylsilane

The *title compound* can be prepared from *Intermediate 11* and 1-bromo-2,5-difluoro-4-nitro-benzene by a palladium catalyzed *Suzuki* coupling following an analogous method to that described for *Intermediate 12*.

5

INTERMEDIATE 53

5-(2-{2-[(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-N-[(1*R*)-1-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)but-3-en-1-yl]-4-fluoro-2-nitroaniline

Intermediate 51 (2.51 g, 10.67 mmol) and *Intermediate 52* 7 (4.96 g, 10.9 mmol) were dissolved in acetonitrile (40 mL) and K₂CO₃ (4.4 g, 31.84 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL) and washed with water (2 x 75 mL), then brine (75 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield 7 g (98%) of the *title compound* as an orange gum. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 2.64 min., 601.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.94 - 8.74 (m, 3H), 7.99 (d, J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 7.18 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, J = 7.9 Hz, 2H), 6.83 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 5.80 (ddt, J = 17.2, 10.1, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.48 - 5.25 (m, 1H), 5.16 (d, J = 16.8 Hz, 1H), 5.07 (d, J = 10.0 Hz, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.04 - 2.86 (m, 1H), 2.79 (dt, J = 13.3, 6.5 Hz, 1H), 1.70 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 6H), 0.90 (s, 9H), -0.02 (s, 6H).

20

INTERMEDIATE 54

(3*R*)-3-{[5-(2-{2-[(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl]amino}-3-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)propanal

Potassium dioxido(dioxo)osmium hydrate (2:1:2) (75 mg, 0.2 mmol) was added in one portion to a stirred solution of *Intermediate 53* (6.85 g, 10.25 mmol), sodium periodate (13.1 g, 61.25 mmol) and 2,6-dimethylpyridine (2.4 mL, 20.67 mmol) in a 3:1 mixture of 1,4-dioxane and water (240 mL). The mixture was stirred overnight then sodium thiosulfate (11.3 g, 71.47 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for 30 minutes before diluting with DCM (200 mL) and water (200 mL). The biphasic mixture was stirred for a further 15 minutes then the two layers were separated and the aqueous layer was re-extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield 8.5 g of the *title compound* as an orange gum. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 2.74 min., 603.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (250 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 9.81 (s, 1H), 8.87 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 2H), 8.24 - 8.07 (m, 1H), 7.99 (d, J = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 7.19 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.02 (dd, J = 8.1, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 6.86 (d, J = 8.2

Hz, 1H), 6.03 (td, J = 9.3, 5.0 Hz, 1H), 5.62 - 5.45 (m, 1H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.53 (ddd, J = 17.6, 8.9, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 3.01 (dd, J = 17.8, 4.8 Hz, 1H), 1.71 (s, 6H), 0.91 (s, 9H), -0.01 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 55

5 (R)-N-[(1Z,3R)-3-{[5-(2-{2-[(tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl]amino}-3-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)propylidene]-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 54* (8.5 g, 10.29 mmol) and (R)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide (1.25 g, 10.3 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was added dropwise titanium(4+) tetrapropan-2-olate (6.1 mL, 20.6 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred at 40 °C under nitrogen for 3 hours and 20 minutes. The reaction was diluted with DCM (100 mL) then quenched by the addition of brine (50 mL). The resultant sticky suspension was filtered through celite and the celite washed with further DCM (2 x 100 mL) and water (100 mL). The filtrate was separated and the aqueous layer was re-extracted with DCM (100 mL). The combined organics were dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield approximately 8 g of a crude orange gum. The crude product was purified on silica gel (DCM / EtOAc 100 / 0 to 95 / 5) to yield 3.61 g (50%) of the *title compound* as an orange gum. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 2.56 min., 706.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.96 - 8.79 (m, 3H), 8.10 (dd, J = 5.7, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 7.99 (d, J = 10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.02 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.85 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 5.88 (td, J = 9.3, 4.9 Hz, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.63 - 3.46 (m, 1H), 3.11 (d, J = 16.3 Hz, 1H), 1.71 (d, J = 3.8 Hz, 6H), 1.13 (s, 9H), 0.91 (s, 9H), -0.02 (s, 6H).

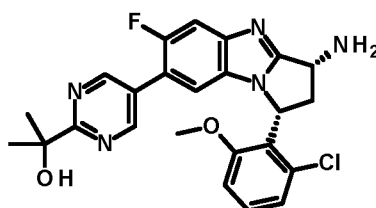
INTERMEDIATE 56

25 N-[(1R,3R)-3-{[5-(2-{2-[(tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl]amino}-3-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)-1-cyanopropyl]-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

Intermediate 55 (2.8 g, 3.96 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (50 mL) under nitrogen and scandium triflate (400 mg, 0.81 mmol) was added, followed by sodium cyanide (220 mg, 4.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under a flow of nitrogen overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL) and washed with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (75 mL). The aqueous layer was re-extracted with EtOAc (75 mL) and the combined organics were washed with saturated brine (75 mL), dried over

Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The crude product was purified on silica gel (heptane / EtOAc 100 / 0 to 60 / 40) to yield to 1.52 g (44%) of the *title compound* as an orange gum. LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 2.41 min., 733.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.94 – 8.62 (m, 3H), 8.02 (d, J = 10.5 Hz, 1H), 7.26 – 7.14 (m, 2H), 7.03 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 6.85 (d, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 5.81 – 5.61 (m, 1H), 4.49 – 4.26 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.86 (d, J = 9.4 Hz, 1H), 2.93 (ddd, J = 14.4, 9.7, 4.6 Hz, 1H), 2.48 – 2.23 (m, 1H), 1.71 (d, J = 2.4 Hz, 6H), 1.19 (s, 9H), 0.90 (s, 9H), -0.03 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 57

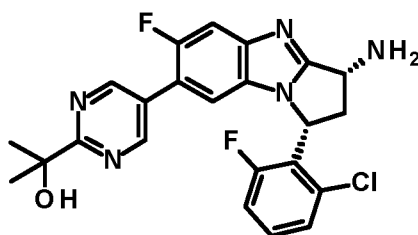


2-{5-[(1R,3R)-3-amino-1-(2-chloro-6-methoxyphenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-7-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 15 *Intermediate 56* (1.52 g, 2.07 mmol) was dissolved in ethanol (16 mL) and tin (II) chloride (2.4 g, 12.66 mmol) was added, followed by 12M HCl (1.4 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 90 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to r.t., concentrated *in vacuo* to approximately 1 mL. The concentrated solution was dissolved in DCM (50 mL), basified with 2M aqueous NaOH solution until pH = 10 and finally
- 20 treated with 10% aqueous KF solution (25 mL). The mixture was filtered and the solids were washed with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The filtrate was separated and the aqueous layer was re-extracted with DCM (30 mL). The combined organic phases were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield the *title compound* (134 mg 14%) as an off-white solid.
- 25 The original solids can be washed with further EtOAc to yield a second crop of the *title compound* after removal of the volatiles *in vacuo*. If required additional purification can be performed by flash chromatography on silica gel (eluted with 0 to 100% EtOAc in heptane, followed by 0 to 20% MeOH in EtOAc). LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 3.76 min., 468.1 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) Major atropisomer - δ 8.71 (d, J = 1.3
- 30 Hz, 2H), 7.56 (t, J = 10.2 Hz, 1H), 7.33 - 7.27 (m, 1H), 7.16 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.75 (d, J

= 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.66 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 6.19 (t, J = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 4.74 (s, 1H), 4.60 (s, 2H), 3.61 - 3.52 (m, 1H), 3.38 (s, 3H), 2.67 (dt, J = 14.4, 7.6 Hz, 1H), 1.62 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 58



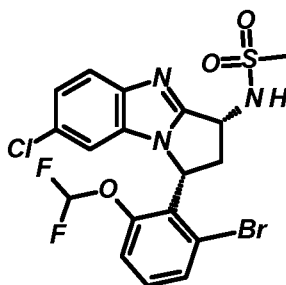
5

2-{5-[(1R,3R)-3-amino-1-(2-chloro-6-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-7-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

Intermediate 58 was prepared following an analogous 8 steps procedure to that described for *Intermediate 41* through to *Intermediate 57*, starting from 2-chloro-6-fluoro-

10 benzaldehyde. to afford 1.1 g of the *title compound* as a beige solid. LCMS basic *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 2.02 min., 456.2 / 458.1 (M+H)⁺.

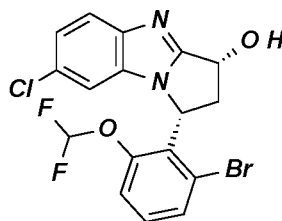
INTERMEDIATE 59



15 N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]methanesulfonamide

To a mixture of *Intermediate 40* (2.5 g, 5.8 mmol), N,N-diisopropylethylamine (1.22 mL, 6.97 mmol) in DCM (58.3 mL), methanesulfonyl chloride (0.6 mL, 8 mmol) was added at 0 °C and the mixture was stirred at r.t for 2 hours. Water (30 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 30 mL). The organic phase was washed with saturated brine (20 mL) and the combined organic phases was dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a solid. The crude was triturated in diethylether, filtered, washed twice with diethylether then hexane and dried to give the *title compound* (2.8 g, 5.53 mmol, 95% yield) as a brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT

25 2.11 mins (pH 10), m/z 506 and 508.

INTERMEDIATE 60

(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-ol

Intermediate 38 (5 g, 11.64 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (3.7 g, 14 mmol) were added to a round bottom flask followed by acetic acid (0.7 mL, 10 mmol) and THF (12 mL). The reaction mixture was cooled down to 0°C and DIAD (3.4 mL, 17 mmol) in THF (12 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was warmed to ambient temperature and the crude mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). The organic phase was washed with saturated NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and saturated brine (20 mL), the combined organic phases was dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography in silica gel (0 to 80% EtOAc in Hexane) to afford [(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl] acetate. The material was dissolved in MeOH (6.3 mL) and stirred with potassium carbonate (1.6 g, 12 mmol) for 45 minutes, the solid was filtered and washed with MeOH (30 mL) and water (10 mL) to give the *title compound* (4.3 g, 10 mmol, 86% yield) as a white solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.07 mins (pH 10), m/z 429 and 431.

INTERMEDIATE 61

2-[4-methyl-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (1 g, 4.33 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (2 equiv., 8.65 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (0.05 equiv., 0.22 mmol), potassium acetate (4 equiv., 17.31 mmol) and 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) were placed in vial and then degassed. The mixture was then heated at 105°C for 2 hours.

The reaction mixture was cooled and partitioned between EtOAc and water. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and evaporated to give a dark brown solid, stored at 0°C and used successfully in ensuing reactions after a period of several days.

- 5 Alternatively, intermediate 61 may be prepared by applying the following procedure :
2-(5-bromo-4-methylpyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol (8 g, 34.6 mmol), BISPIN (9.23 g, 36.3 mmol) and potassium acetate (10.2 g, 104 mmol) were combined in 1,4-dioxane (300 mL). Argon was bubbled through the mixture over 10 minutes. Then PdCl₂(dppf) (0.76 g, 1.04 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C. The reaction mixture was
10 cooled to room temperature and filtered over a plug of celite and rinsed with EtOAc. The combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the *title compound* as dark brown oil (16.9 g) which was used as such.
¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.90 (s, 1H), 5.04 (s, 1H), 2.71 (s, 3H), 1.57 (s, 6H), 1.36 (s, 12H). LC/MS *Method 9*: 2.15 minutes, [M+H]⁺: 278/279/280.

15

INTERMEDIATE 62

6-bromo-7-fluoroimidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridine-2-carboxylate

- 5-bromo-4-fluoropyridin-2-amine (100 g, 0.52 mol) was dissolved in dioxane (200 mL)
20 and added slowly to a solution of ethyl 3-bromo-2-oxopropanoate (70 mL, 0.54 mol) in 1,4-dioxane (800 mL) and stirred at r.t for 1.5 hours. Further 1,4-dioxane (400 mL) was added and the mixture heated to 95 °C and stirred overnight. The mixture was cooled to r.t and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in water (700 mL) and basified to pH ~ 9 with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution. The resulting solid was
25 filtered and washed with water (2 x 200 mL) and diethyl ether (300 mL). The solid was dried *in vacuo* at 40 °C overnight to give the *title compound* (133 g, 86%) as a peach coloured solid. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z = 288/290, RT = 1.08 min (96 %). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.35 (d, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H), 7.39 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.45 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 1.43 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3H).

30

INTERMEDIATE 63

{6-bromo-7-fluoroimidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridin-2-yl}methanol

Intermediate 62 (28.5 g, 95.3 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (500 mL) and cooled to -10 °C under nitrogen. 1M diisobutylaluminum hydride in heptane (200 mL) was added dropwise over ~30 minutes and the reaction mixture was stirred at -10 °C under nitrogen for 30 minutes then allowed to warm to 10 °C under nitrogen over 1 hour.

5 The reaction mixture was cooled to -50 °C and quenched by dropwise addition of saturated aqueous solution of Rochelle's salt (150 mL), stirred at -50 °C for 30 minutes, then allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The mixture was diluted with water (250 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 1L). The aqueous layer was filtered through celite and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 500 mL). The combined organics were dried (Na₂SO₄) and

10 concentrated under vacuum to yield the *title compound* (22.5 g, 93%) as a yellow solid. *Method 8* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ *m/z* = 245/247, RT = 2.93 min (94 %). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.03 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (s, 1H), 7.54 (d, *J* = 9.8 Hz, 1H), 5.23 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.56 (d, *J* = 4.4 Hz, 2H).

15

INTERMEDIATE 64

3-[6-bromo-7-fluoro-2-(hydroxymethyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-3-yl]-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]propanoic acid

20 *Intermediate 63* (22.4 g, 84.02 mmol), 2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde (20.1 g, 92.4 mmol), 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxane-4,6-dione (13.3 g, 92.4 mmol), L-proline (532 mg, 4.62 mmol) and MgSO₄ (15.2 g, 126 mmol) were suspended in anhydrous acetonitrile (110 mL), warmed to 100 °C and stirred under N₂(g) overnight. The mixture was cooled to RT, diluted with acetonitrile (100 mL) and filtered over a sintered glass

25 funnel. The filter cake was further washed with acetonitrile (50 mL) and the combined filtrate treated with 6M sodium hydroxide in water (42 ml) and stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour. The mixture was acidified (to pH 4) by treatment with 6M HCl (aq) then concentrated under vacuum to give a tan solid. The solid thus obtained was slurried in water (100 mL) for 2 hours then filtered to give the *title compound* (41.8 g,

30 83%) as a beige powder. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ *m/z* 493/495, (M-H)⁻ *m/z* 491/493 RT 0.91 min (84%), ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.44 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, *J* = 9.3 Hz, 1H), 7.41 – 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.19 (t, *J* = 75.0 Hz, 1H), 7.17 (d, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 5.37 (dd, *J* = 8.7, 6.8 Hz, 1H), 4.64 – 4.51 (m, 2H), 3.47 (dd, *J* = 16.5, 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.29 (dd, *J* = 16.5, 8.8 Hz, 1H).

35

INTERMEDIATE 65

6-bromo-3-{2-carboxy-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]ethyl}-7-fluoroimidazo[1,2-a]pyridine-2-carboxylic acid

Chromium trioxide (167 mg, 1.66 mmol) and periodic acid (81.0 g, 355 mmol) were
5 suspended in MeCN:H₂O (800 mL : 8 mL). The resulting mixture was added to a stirred
suspension of *Intermediate 64* (41.8 g, 71.0 mmol) in MeCN:H₂O (312 mL : 2.4 mL).
The resulting mixture was stirred at r.t overnight then filtered through a sintered glass
funnel. The resulting pale green filter cake was washed with acetonitrile (4 x 50 mL) and
the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give a gummy orange solid. This was
10 partitioned between EtOAc (500 mL) and water (250 mL). The layers were separated and
the aqueous phase further extracted with EtOAc (2 x 150 mL). The combined organic
phase was washed with water (3 x 250 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated
under vacuum to leave an orange paste. This was slurried with water (200 mL) for 72
hours (weekend period) and filtered. The resulting yellow solid was washed with water
15 (100 mL) and dried *in vacuo* at 40 °C to give the *title compound* (39.1 g, 96%) as a pale
yellow powder. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 507/509, RT 1.00 minutes. ¹H NMR
(500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 12.39 (s, 2H), 8.73 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 1H),
7.39 – 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.16 – 7.11 (m, 1H), 7.10 (t, *J* = 75.0 Hz, 1H), 5.79 (t, *J* = 8.4 Hz,
1H), 3.46 (dd, *J* = 17.3, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 3.20 (dd, *J* = 17.3, 7.7 Hz, 1H).

20

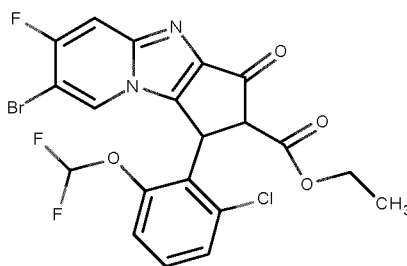
INTERMEDIATE 66

Ethyl 6-bromo-3-{1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl}-7-fluoroimidazo[1,2-a]pyridine-2-carboxylate

Potassium carbonate (25.0 g, 180 mmol) and iodoethane (14.6 ml, 181 mmol) were added
25 to a stirred solution of *Intermediate 65* (34 g, 60.3 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (350 mL) at
r.t. The mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen overnight then added slowly
to vigorously stirred mixture of ice / water (1.2 L). After stirring at RT for a further 4
hours, the resulting light beige solid was filtered under vacuum and the filter cake slurried
with water (50 mL). The solid was dried *in vacuo* at 40 °C to give the *title compound*
30 (31.5 g, 88%) as a light beige powder. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 564 RT 1.29 mins.
¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.74 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 1H), 7.40
- 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.30 - 6.96 (m, 2H), 5.82 (t, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.23 (qq, *J* = 7.0, 3.8 Hz,
2H), 3.98 (q, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 3.49 (dd, *J* = 17.1, 8.9 Hz, 1H), 3.27 (dd, *J* = 14.8, 7.7 Hz,

1H), 1.24 (t, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 3H), 1.03 (t, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 3H).

INTERMEDIATE 67



5

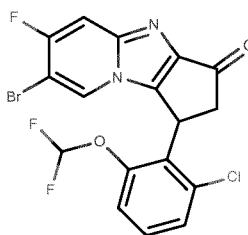
Ethyl 11-bromo-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-5-oxo-1,7-diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraene-4-carboxylate

Intermediate 67 was prepared from *Intermediate 66* according to the method described for *Intermediate 33*. The crude material was purified by flash column chromatography (SiO₂, 800 g) eluting with a stepwise gradient in 500 mL vessels of 15 - 50 % EtOAc in heptanes then 100% EtOAc to afford the *title compound* as a yellow / orange solid. (13.3 g, 50%). *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 517/519, RT 1.21 min (99%), ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.51 - 8.34 (m, 1H), 7.94 - 7.83 (m, 1H), 7.56 - 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.39 - 6.68 (m, 2H), 5.77 - 5.63 (m, 1H), 4.28 - 4.13 (m, 2H), 4.07 - 4.00 (m, 1H), 1.27 - 1.19 (m, 3H).

10

15

INTERMEDIATE 68

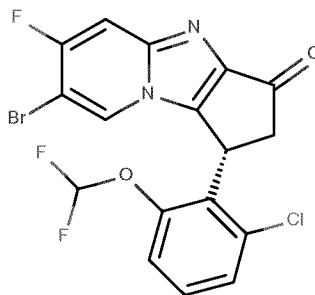


20 11-bromo-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-1,7-diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraen-5-one

Intermediate 68 was prepared from *Intermediate 67* (13.3 g, 25.7 mmol) according to the method described for *Intermediate 34* to give the *title compound* (11.3 g, 89%) as an orange foam. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 444/446, RT 1.19 minutes.

¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 7.79 - 7.58 (m, 1H), 7.47 - 7.27 (m, 3H), 7.25 - 7.06 (m, 1H), 6.89 - 5.81 (m, 1H), 5.48 - 5.40 (m, 1H), 3.65 - 3.48 (m, 1H), 3.30 - 3.09 (m, 1H).

5

INTERMEDIATE 69

(3R)-11-bromo-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-1,7-diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraen-5-one

- 10 The *title compound* was prepared by chiral separation of *Intermediate 68* into the constituent enantiomers and the isolation of the second eluting peak according to the conditions outlined below:

Analytical Method: Liquid Chromatography

- 15 Column: Chiralcel OD 250 x 4.6 mm 5 μ m
Temperature: 30°C
Eluent: 100% MeOH + 0.1% DEA
Flow rate: 1 ml/min
Enantiomer A: 4.943 min
20 *Enantiomer B (Intermediate 69)*: 11.887 min

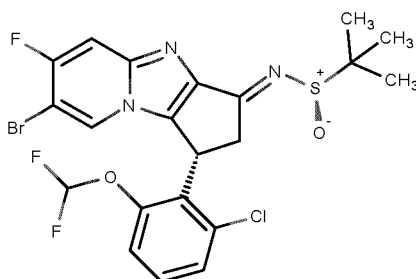
Preparative method, by SFC:

- Column: Chiralcel OD 266 x 50 mm
Eluent: CO₂ + 20% MeOH
Flow rate: 360 ml/min
25 *Enantiomer A*: depending on the amount injected (~5.2 min)
Enantiomer B (Intermediate 69): depending on the amount injected (~8.5 min)

Optical rotation of *Enantiomer B Intermediate 69*: $\alpha_D +117.6$ (MeOH, conc 0.255 g/100mL, T = 25°C, wavelength 589 nm, cell path 10 cm).

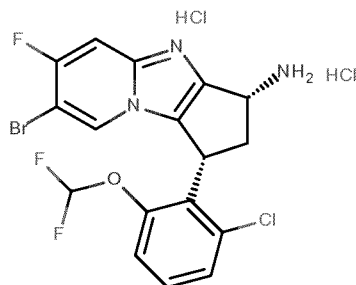
INTERMEDIATE 70

5



- (R)-N-[(3R,5E)-11-bromo-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-1,7-diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraen-5-ylidene]-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide
- 10 Ti(OEt)₄ (1.59 mL, 2.48 mmol) was added a stirred solution of *Intermediate 69* (0.57 g, 1.22 mmol) in anhydrous THF (12 mL) at r.t then (*R*)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide (0.29 g, 2.43 mmol) was added and mixture was heated at 65 °C for 17 hours. The mixture was cooled to r.t, diluted with brine (10 mL), EtOAc (50 mL) and water (5 mL)
- 15 and stirred for 15min. The resulting solids were removed by filtration and the aqueous layer was further extracted with EtOAc (3 x 25 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (25 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the crude product as a beige solid. Purification by column chromatography (SiO₂ Biotage isolera), eluting with 0-100% EtOAc in heptanes afforded the *title compound*
- 20 (600 mg, 90%) as a beige solid. *Method 7* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 548, RT 1.20 min (99%), ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.76 - 7.58 (m, 1H), 7.43 - 7.39 (m, 1H), 7.39 - 7.27 (m, 2H), 7.25 - 7.02 (m, 1H), 6.84 - 5.82 (m, 1H), 5.47 - 5.30 (m, 1H), 4.52 - 4.33 (m, 1H), 3.61 - 3.47 (m, 1H), 1.36 (s, 9H).

25

INTERMEDIATE 71

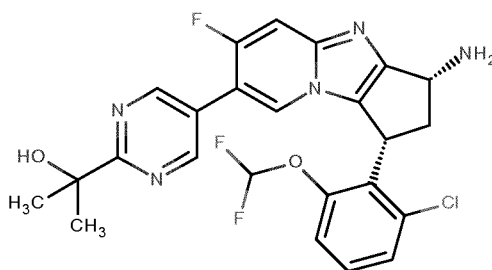
(3R,5R)-11-bromo-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-1,7-

5 diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraen-5-amine dihydrochloride

Sodium borohydride (90 mg, 2.38 mmol) was added in one portion to a stirred solution of *Intermediate 70* (600 mg, 1.09 mmol) in THF:water (14.7 mL:0.3 mL) under an atmosphere of nitrogen at -50 °C and the reaction maintained at this temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was slowly warmed to 0 °C over 2 hours then stirred for a further 1

10 hour. The mixture was quenched with MeOH (1 mL) and diluted with water (25 mL). The intermediate was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 25 mL) and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to leave an off-white foam (570 mg). This was dissolved in dioxane (10 mL) and treated with 4M HCl in dioxane (1.4 mL, 5.6 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 30 minutes then concentrated to dryness to

15 afford the *title compound* (480 mg, 67%) as an off-white solid. The *title compound* was used directly in the subsequent step without further purification. *Method 9* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 446/448, RT 1.42 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 72

20

2-{5-[(3R,5R)-5-amino-3-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-10-fluoro-1,7-

diazatricyclo[6.4.0.0^{2,6}]dodeca-2(6),7,9,11-tetraen-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

An aqueous solution of 2M K₂CO₃ (1.8 mL) was added to a stirred suspension of

Intermediate 71 (480 mg, 0.73 mmol) and 2-[5-(tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (232 mg, 0.88 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL). The mixture was degassed under a flow of nitrogen for 10 minutes then treated with bis[3-(diphenylphosphanyl)cyclopenta-2,4-dien-1-yl]iron; DCM; dichloropalladium (60 mg, 0.07 mmol) and heated to 105 °C for 1.5 hours. The mixture was cooled to RT, diluted with EtOAc (30 mL) and filtered through a pad of Celite. The filter cake was further washed with EtOAc (2 x 20 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (25 mL) and the aqueous phase further extracted with EtOAc (2 x 25 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product (750 mg) as a dark brown oil. Purification by column chromatography (KP-NH, SiO₂, Biotage isolera) eluting with 50-100% EtOAc in heptane followed by 0-50% MeOH in EtOAc to give the *title compound* (260mg, 71%) as an off white solid. The material was azeotroped twice with toluene prior to use in the subsequent step. *Method 8* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 504, RT 3.86 minutes, ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.90 - 8.78 (m, 2H), 8.18 - 7.90 (m, 1H), 7.68 - 7.54 (m, 1H), 7.45 - 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.37 - 6.66 (m, 3H), 5.14 - 4.92 (m, 2H), 4.48 - 4.32 (m, 1H), 3.57 - 3.34 (m, 1H), 2.95 - 2.54(m, 2H), 2.23 - 1.93 (m, 1H), 1.51 - 1.47 (m, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 73

2,2-Dichloro-3-oxocyclobutyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate

To a stirred mixture of vinyl pivalate (30 g, 234 mmol) and zinc (31 g, 474 mmol) in ether (250 mL) was added a solution of 2,2,2-trichloroacetyl chloride (34 mL, 304 mmol) in ether (250 mL) dropwise over 2.5 hours in a water bath while maintaining the reaction temperature between 15 - 30 °C. Reaction was filtered through Celite and washed through with EtOAc (200 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (200 mL), brine (200 mL), dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum to afford the *title compound* (68 g, 97 % at 80 % purity) as an orange liquid.

δH (500 MHz, CDCl₃) ppm 5.40 (dd, J = 8.4, 6.2 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (dd, J = 18.9, 8.4 Hz, 1H), 3.39 (dd, J = 18.9, 6.2 Hz, 1H), 1.28 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 74

3-Oxocyclobutyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate

Zinc (74 g, 1.1 mol) was added to acetic acid (200 mL) with stirring and the suspension was cooled in an ice bath. *Intermediate 73* (80 %, 68 g, 228 mmol) in acetic acid (300 mL) was added dropwise over 2 hours. Upon completion of addition, the reaction was warmed to r.t and stirred for 1.5 hours. The reaction was filtered washed with DCM (100 mL). The filtrate was diluted with EtOAc (800 mL) and washed sequentially with water (3 x 250 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ solution (3 x 250mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum to give crude product as a brown oil (30 g) which was purified by dry flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with 0 - 10 % EtOAc in heptanes to afford the title compound (11 g, 28 %) as a clear colourless oil

δ H (500 MHz, CDCl₃) 5.26 – 5.19 (m, 1H), 3.51 – 3.40 (m, 2H), 3.19 – 3.07 (m, 2H), 1.22 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 75

3-(5-Bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-3-hydroxycyclobutyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate

5-bromo-2-iodopyrimidine (16.7 g, 58.8 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (200 mL) with stirring and cooled to -78 °C under N₂. 2.5 M n-BuLi in hexane in hexane (23.5 mL) was added dropwise and stirred for 20 minutes at – 78 °C. *Intermediate 74* (10 g, 58.8 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was cooled in a dry ice bath and added in one portion. The reaction was stirred at -78°C for 10 minutes. The reaction was quenched by addition of saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution (20 mL) and allowed to warm to r.t, saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution (50 mL) was added and the mixture was extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum. The crude product was purified by column chromatography using 0 - 30 % EtOAc in heptane to afford *the title compound* (7.6 g, 35 %) as a yellow solid.

δ H (500 MHz, CDCl₃) 8.78 (s, 2H), 5.22 – 5.14 (m, 1H), 3.03 – 2.93 (m, 2H), 2.67 – 2.58 (m, 2H), 1.22 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 76

1-(5-Bromopyrimidin-2-yl)cyclobutane-1,3-diol

Intermediate 75 (90%, 6 g, 16.4 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (120 mL) and K₂CO₃ (11.3 g, 82 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred for 18 hours at r.t. The reaction was diluted with DCM (400 mL) and washed with water (150 mL). The aqueous phase was

extracted with DCM (200 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum to afford *the title compound* (2.94 g, 73 %) as an off-white solid.

5 δ H (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 8.98 (s, 2H), 5.63 (s, 1H), 5.08 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 4.09 – 3.92 (m, 1H), 2.87 – 2.79 (m, 2H), 2.28 – 2.14 (m, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 77

3-(5-Bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-3-hydroxycyclobutan-1-one

To a stirred solution of *Intermediate 76* (2 g, 8.1 mmol) in DCM (200 mL) was added
10 Dess-Martin periodinane (4.1 g, 9.8 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 18 hours and the resulting suspension diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL). The aqueous layer was re-extracted with DCM (100 mL) and the combined organic extracts dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude
15 product was purified by chromatography on silica gel eluting with 0 - 30 % EtOAc in heptanes to afford *the title compound* (1.37 g, 69 %) as an off white solid.

δ H (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.04 (s, 2H), 6.41 (s, 1H), 3.69 – 3.55 (m, 2H), 3.37 – 3.21 (m, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 78

3-(5-Bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-3-[(tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]cyclobutan-1-one

Intermediate 77 (1.37 g, 5.64 mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (20 mL) with stirring under N₂ and cooled to 0 °C. 1H-imidazole (1.9 g, 28.18 mmol) was added followed by tert-butyl(chloro)dimethylsilane (2.0 g, 13.5 mmol) and reaction was stirred at r.t for 20
25 hours. The reaction was diluted with DCM (150 mL) and washed with water (3 x 50 mL). The aqueous phase was re-extracted with DCM (50 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude product was purified by chromatography on silica gel eluting with 0 - 20 % EtOAc in heptanes to afford *the title compound* (1.6 g 79 %) as a pale orange oil.

30 δ H (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.06 (s, 2H), 3.78 – 3.66 (m, 2H), 3.44 – 3.34 (m, 2H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.00 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 79

3-(5-Bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-3-[(tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy]-1-methylcyclobutan-1-ol

Intermediate 78 (1.35 g, 3.78 mmol) was dissolved in dry ether (40 mL) under N₂ with stirring and cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath. 3M MeMgBr in diethylether (2.52 mL) was added dropwise and reaction stirred for 30 minutes at 0 °C. The reaction was quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution (20 mL) and then water (20 mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated to give a yellow oil. This was purified by chromatography on silica gel eluting with 0 - 100 % DCM in heptane followed by 0 - 20 % EtOAc in DCM to afford the *title compound* as a mixture of separate *cis* and *trans* isomers (total yield, 1.19 g, 84 %) as clear oils.

Major isomer - *cis*

¹H (500 MHz, CDCl₃) 8.79 (s, 2H), 3.10 – 3.03 (m, 2H), 2.59 – 2.51 (m, 2H), 1.18 (s, 3H), 0.87 (s, 9H), -0.14 (s, 6H).

Minor isomer - *trans*

¹H (500 MHz, CDCl₃) 8.79 (s, 2H), 2.78 – 2.63 (m, 4H), 1.49 (s, 3H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 0.04 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 80

1-Chloro-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene

A suspension of 2-chloro-1,4-difluorobenzene (98 g, 660 mmol) in concentrated sulphuric acid (250 ml, 4.69 mol) was cooled with an ice/salt mixture after which a solution of nitric acid (29.1 ml, 693 mmol) in sulphuric acid (100 ml, 1.88 mol) was added drop-wise over 1.5 hours whilst maintaining the temperature between -5 and +2°C. After 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ~17°C and slowly poured onto ice with stirring. The formed solid was isolated by filtration and the residue washed several times with water and air dried yielding the *title compound* (112 g, 88%) as a pale yellow powder.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.94 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (dd, *J* = 9.8, 5.9 Hz, 1H).

INTERMEDIATE 81

2-(5-(2,5-difluoro-4-nitrophenyl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol

A mixture of *Intermediate 80* (50 g, 258 mmol), 2-(5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol (69.6 g, 264 mmol) and sodium carbonate (54.8 g, 517 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (700 mL) and water (100 mL) was flushed with argon 3 times. Subsequently, tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium (5.91 g, 6.46 mmol) and tri-

- tert-butylphosphine tetrafluoroborate (7.50 g, 25.8 mmol) were added and the mixture was stirred at 80 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled to r.t, filtered over celite and washed with EtOAc (1 L). The filtrate was washed with water (100 mL) and brine (2 x 200 mL) and the combined aqueous layers back-extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (silica; 30% EtOAc in heptane). The product containing fractions were combined, concentrated *in vacuo* and crystallised from iPrOH to give the *title compound* as an orange solid (55g) which can be further purified if required by trituration with di-*isopropyl* ether.
- LCMS *Method 11* RT=1.806 (99.5%); [M+H]⁺= 296.
- ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.95 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 2H), 8.02 (dd, *J* = 9.2, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (dd, *J* = 10.4, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 4.47 (s, 1H), 1.66 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 82

- (*S*)-N-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)benzylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide.
- (*S*)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide (30 g, 248 mmol), potassium phosphate, dibasic (129 g, 743 mmol) and phosphoric acid, potassium salt (158 g, 743 mmol) were added to a cooled solution of 2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde (68.3 g, 272 mmol) in anhydrous THF (500 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to r.t and stirred overnight. The bulk of the THF was removed *in vacuo* and water and Et₂O were added to the residue. The layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with Et₂O. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* (90 g) as a dark oil which was used as such in the next reaction.
- LCMS *Method 11*: RT=2.084 (97.6%); [M+H]⁺= 354/356 (Br pattern).
- ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.84 (s, 1H), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (t, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.28 – 7.20 (m, 1H), 6.57 (t, *J* = 73.8 Hz, 1H), 1.30 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 83

- (*S*)-N-((*R*)-1-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)but-3-en-1-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide
- Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 1,2-dibromoethane (2.19 ml, 25.4 mmol) was added to a suspension of zinc (100 g, 1.52 mol) in anhydrous THF (250 mL). The suspension was

warmed to mild reflux, allowed to cool down and heated to reflux again. This cycle was repeated twice more after which TMSCl (3.24 mL, 25.4 mmol) was added causing an exothermic reaction. After 15 minutes, 3-bromoprop-1-ene (55.2 mL, 635 mmol) was added dropwise at such a rate that the very light reflux was maintained without external heating. The suspension was stirred for an additional 30 minutes while allowing to cool to r.t. Stirring was stopped and excess zinc allowed to separate. The grey supernatant solution was transferred to a dropping funnel and the flask rinsed twice with anhydrous THF. This solution was added relatively fast to a solution of crude *Intermediate 82* (89.9 g, 254 mmol) in anhydrous THF (1000 ml) which was pre-cooled to -60 °C (dry ice/acetone). After the addition was complete, the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture allowed to slowly warm to r.t overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched by adding saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution (20 mL) and some ice. The bulk of the THF was removed *in vacuo* and saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution was added to the residue until almost no solids remained. This mixture was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 200mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* (98.9 g) as a yellow-orange oil which was used as such in the next reaction.

LCMS *Method 10*: RT=3.183 (84.1%); [M+H]⁺= 396/398 (Br pattern); d.e.: 94.5% (the other diastereomer elutes at 3.43 minutes).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.43 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.14 (t, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.13 – 6.98 (m, 1H), 6.56 (t, *J* = 73.8 Hz, 1H), 5.82 – 5.62 (m, 1H), 5.19 (q, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.10 – 4.95 (m, 2H), 4.40 – 4.03 (m, 1H), 3.00 – 2.65 (m, 2H), 1.14 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 84

(*R*)-1-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)but-3-en-1-amine

At 0°C, HCl (1 M in Et₂O, 666 mL, 666 mmol) was added to a solution of crude *Intermediate 83* (88.0 g, ~222 mmol) in ethanol (240 mL). After 3 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with water and the layers were separated. The organic layer was extracted twice with aqueous HCl ((0.2 M). The combined aqueous layers were made alkaline (pH = ~10) by slowly adding saturated aqueous Na₂CO₃ solution and the aqueous mixture thus obtained was extracted 3 times with Et₂O. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding

the *title compound* (56.4 g) as a dark orange oil which was used as such in the next reaction.

LCMS *Method 11*: RT=1.360 (93.7%); $[M+H]^+ = 292/294$ (Br pattern).

^1H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.41 (dd, $J = 7.6, 1.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.14 – 6.98 (m, 2H),
5 6.56 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 5.86 – 5.68 (m, 1H), 5.13 – 4.97 (m, 2H), 4.59 (t, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.61 (t, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 2H), 1.85 (br s, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 85

(*R*)-2-(5-(5-((1-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)but-3-en-1-yl)amino)-2-fluoro-4-
10 nitrophenyl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol.

Under a N_2 atmosphere, *Intermediate 81* (54.2 g, 183 mmol), *Intermediate 84* (56.4 g, ~183 mmol), and potassium carbonate (50.7 g, 367 mmol) were mixed in acetonitrile (anhydrous, 500 mL) and stirred at 80 °C for 2 days. After cooling to r.t, the reaction mixture was filtered through sand and rinsed with EtOAc. The filtrate was evaporated to
15 give the *title compound* (106.1 g) as a dark red oil that was used as such in the next reaction.

^1H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.83 (s, 2H), 8.70 (br d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 8.03 (d, $J = 10.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.49 (dd, $J = 7.0, 2.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.24 – 7.10 (m, 2H), 6.92 (br d, $J = 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 6.58 (t, $J = 72.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.91 – 5.73 (m, 1H), 5.36 (q, $J = 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 5.22 (dd, $J =$
20 17.0, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 5.13 (d, $J = 10.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.67 – 4.50 (m, 1H), 3.09 – 2.70 (m, 2H), 1.65 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 86

(*R*)-N-(1-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)but-3-en-1-yl)-5-(2-(2-((tert-
25 butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitroaniline.

Imidazole (60.1 g, 883 mmol) and *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (80 g, 531 mmol) were added to a solution of crude *Intermediate 85* (99.8 g, ~176 mmol) in anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (250 mL). The mixture was warmed to 100 °C and stirred for 19 hours. After cooling to r.t, the reaction mixture was diluted with brine (1 L) and extracted
30 with mixture of heptane and EtOAc (1:1, 500 + 200 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (silica;

5-15% EtOAc in heptane) to give the *title compound* (107.1 g, 72% (over 5 steps)) as a red oil.

LCMS *Method 12*: RT=3.01 (94.9%); $[M+H]^+ = 681/683$ (Br pattern).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.78 (s, 2H), 8.65 (br s, 1H), 8.00 (d, $J = 10.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.44 (dd, $J = 6.8, 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.19 – 7.08 (m, 2H), 6.92 – 6.81 (m, 1H), 6.54 (t, $J = 72.4$ Hz, 1H), 5.88 – 5.74 (m, 1H), 5.33 (q, $J = 8.0$ Hz, 1H), 5.20 (dd, $J = 17.0, 1.4$ Hz, 1H), 5.11 (d, $J = 10.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.01 – 2.71 (m, 2H), 1.69 (s, 3H), 1.68 (s, 3H), 0.89 (s, 9H), -0.05 (s, 6H).

10

INTERMEDIATE 87

(4R)-4-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-4-((5-(2-(2-((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)butane-1,2-diol

Osmium tetroxide (4 wt% in water, 4.80 mL, 0.786 mmol) and 4-methylmorpholine-4-oxide (50 wt% in water, 94 mL, 393 mmol) were added to a solution of *Intermediate 86* (107.1 g, 157 mmol) in a mixture of acetone (330 mL) and water (45 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was mixed with aqueous Na₂S₂O₃ solution (10 wt%, 200 mL) and extracted twice with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* (120.1 g) as a dark red sticky oil that was used as such in the next reaction.

20

LCMS *Method 12*: RT=2.58 (95.3%); $[M+H]^+ = 715/717$ (Br pattern).

INTERMEDIATE 88

(R)-3-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-3-((5-(2-(2-((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)propanal

25

30

A solution of crude *Intermediate 87* (119 g, ~155 mmol) in THF (250 mL) was diluted with water (200 mL). To the resulting suspension, sodium periodate (68 g, 318 mmol) was added and another portion of sodium periodate (10.3 g, 48.2 mmol) after 3 hours. Stirring was continued for another hour after which the reaction mixture was quenched with aqueous Na₂S₂O₃ (10 wt%, 300 mL). The solids were filtered off and washed with EtOAc (500 mL). The organic layers were separated (some NaCl (s) added to enable layer

separation) and the aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with a mixture of water (100 mL) and brine (50 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* (106.6 g) as a dark red thick syrup that was used as such in the next reaction.

5 LCMS *Method 12*: RT=2.73 (72.9%); [M+H]⁺= 683/685 (Br pattern) and RT=2.57 (19.5%); [M+H]⁺= 701/703 (Br pattern) product as hydrate.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 9.81 (s, 1H), 8.86 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 2H), 8.68 (br d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.99 (d, *J* = 10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (dd, *J* = 6.8, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.22 – 7.09 (m, 3H), 6.66 (t, *J* = 72.2 Hz, 1H), 6.00 (td, *J* = 9.0, 4.7 Hz, 1H), 3.55 (dd, *J* = 17.9, 9.0 Hz, 10 1H), 3.08 (br d, *J* = 16.9 Hz, 1H), 1.71 (s, 3H), 1.70 (s, 3H), 0.89 (s, 9H), -0.03 (s, 6H).

INTERMEDIATE 89

(*R*)-N-((*R*)-3-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-3-((5-(2-(2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)propylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

15 Titanium (IV) isopropoxide (87 g, 307 mmol, 91 mL) was added to a solution of crude *Intermediate 88* (105 g, ~154 mmol) and (*R*)-(+)-2-methyl-2-propanesulfinamide (18.63 g, 154 mmol) in DCM (180 mL). After stirring overnight, the reaction mixture was poured out into a mixture of water (300 mL) and kieselguhr (30 g), stirred for 10 minutes, 20 and filtered. The yellow solid was washed several times with DCM. The layers of the filtrate were separated and the organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* (114.5 g) as a yellow-orange glass that was used as such in the next reaction.

LCMS *Method 12*: RT=2.88 minutes; [M+H]⁺= 786/788 (Br pattern).

25

INTERMEDIATE 90

(*R*)-N-((*R*)-3-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-3-((5-(2-(2-((*tert*butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)propylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

30 To a stirred solution of crude *Intermediate 89* (103.6 g, ~139 mmol) in DCM (500 mL) was added yttrium(III) trifluoromethanesulfonate (3.53 g, 6.58 mmol). The flask was sealed with a suba seal and to the resulting mixture, trimethylsilyl cyanide (15.68 g, 158 mmol, 19.77 mL) was added by syringe in a steady stream. After stirring for 5 days, the

reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and co-evaporated with EtOAc yielding the *title compound* (101 g) as a yellow-red foaming oil that was used as such in the next reaction.

LCMS *Method 13*: RT=2.70 minutes; $[M+H]^+ = 813/815$ (Br pattern).

5

INTERMEDIATE 91

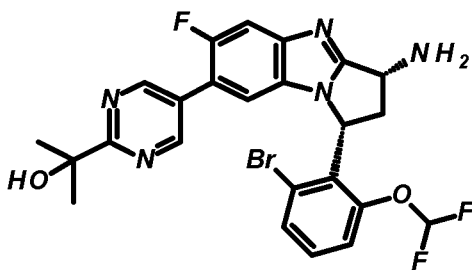
(R)-N-((3R)-3-((2-amino-5-(2-(2-((tertbutyldimethylsilyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-4-fluorophenyl)amino)-3-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-1-cyanopropyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

- 10 Under a N₂ atmosphere, platinum on charcoal (10 wt%, 13.88 g, 7.11 mmol) was added to a mixture of crude *Intermediate 90* (106 g, ~147 mmol) and zinc(II) bromide (12.46 g, 55.3 mmol) in EtOAc (1000 mL). Subsequently, the reaction was purged with H₂ and stirred under atmospheric H₂ pressure for 3 days. The reaction mixture was flushed with N₂, filtered over kieselguhr and rinsed with EtOAc. The filtrate (~1.5 L) was washed with
- 15 water (500 mL) and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* yielding the *title compound* (109 g) as a brown-yellow foaming oil that was used as such in the next reaction.

LCMS *Method 11*: RT=1.360 (76.5%); $[M+H]^+ = 783/785$ (Br pattern).

20

INTERMEDIATE 92



2-(5-((1R,3R)-3-amino-1-(2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1Hbenzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazol-7-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol.

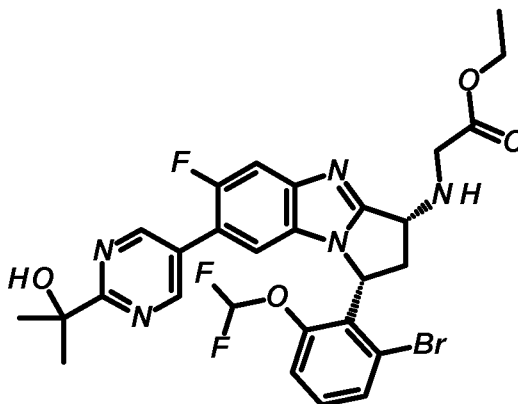
- To a stirred solution of crude *Intermediate 91* (109 g, ~147 mmol) in ethanol (1000 mL)
- 25 was added HCl (4 M in dioxane, 69.5 mL, 278 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at reflux for 8 hours and allowed to cool to r.t overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and co-evaporated with ethanol. The residue was triturated in Et₂O (1.5 L) and the formed precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed with Et₂O, and dried on the filter. This material was taken up in iPrOH (250 mL) and stirred at reflux for 15

minutes. The resulting suspension was stirred under N₂ while allowing to cool to r.t. The resulting thick viscous suspension was diluted with iPrOH (250 mL) and filtered through a glass filter. The residue thus obtained was dissolved in water (1.5 L) and Et₂O (500 mL) while stirring. The layers were separated and the organic layer was extracted with aqueous HCl (0.1 M, 200 mL). The combined aqueous layers were washed with Et₂O (500 mL), made alkaline (pH = 10) with NaOH (s, 40 g), and extracted with DCM (2 x 500 mL). The combined DCM layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue thus obtained was co-evaporated with iPr₂O and Et₂O yielding the *title compound* (40.6 g, 48%) as a green foam.

LCMS *Method 10*: RT=2.37 minutes; [M+H]⁺= 548/550 (Br pattern).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*): 3:2 mixture of rotamers δ 8.74 – 8.70 (m, 2H), 7.61 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 0.6H), 7.57 (d, *J* = 11.2 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (dd, *J* = 6.6, 2.6 Hz, 0.4H), 7.37 – 7.28 (m, 1.4H), 7.04 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 0.6H), 6.71 (t, *J* = 72.4 Hz, 0.4H), 6.59 (dd, *J* = 12.0, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 6.23 – 6.13 (m, 1H), 5.92 (dd, *J* = 74.5, 70.9 Hz, 0.6H), 4.72 (br s, 1H), 4.61 (br s, 1H), 3.70 – 3.41 (m, 1H), 2.77 (dt, *J* = 13.5, 8.6 Hz, 0.4H), 2.63 (dt, *J* = 13.7, 7.6 Hz, 0.6H), 2.03 (br s, 2H), 1.62 (s, 3.6H), 1.61 (s, 2.4H).

INTERMEDIATE 93



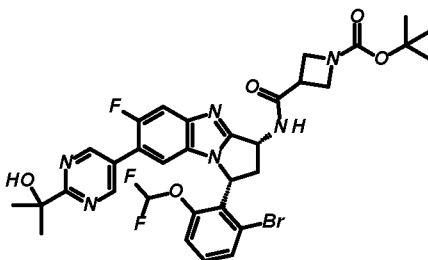
Ethyl 2-[[[(1*R*,3*R*)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl]amino]acetate

Ethyl bromoacetate (91.3 mg, 0.54 mmol) was added to a solution of potassium carbonate (252 mg, 1.82 mmol), and *Intermediate 92* (250 mg, 0.45 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 70 °C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and the crude mixture was quenched with water and extracted with

EtOAc (2 x 5 mL). The organic phase was washed with saturated brine (5 mL), the combined organic phases were dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography in silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to afford the *title compound* (220 mg, 76% yield) as a brown solid.

5 LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.06 mins (pH 10), m/z 634/636.

INTERMEDIATE 94

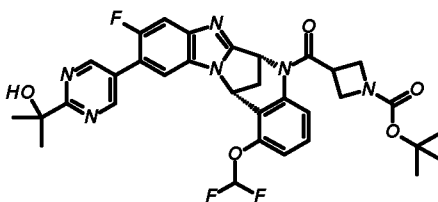


10 *tert*-butyl 3-[[[(1*R*,3*R*)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl]carbamoyl]azetidine-1-carboxylate

Intermediate 92 (550 mg, 1.00 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylazetidine-3-carboxylic acid (222 mg, 1.10 mmol), HATU (432 mg, 1.10 mmol) and *N,N*-di-*isopropylethylamine* (0.38 mL, 2.2 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 3 hours. Water was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc and the organic phases removed *in vacuo* to yield a crude product. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 640 mg (87%) of the *title compound* as an amorphous solid. LCMS basic *Method 3*: RT 2.25 min, [M+H-BOC]⁺= 631.

20

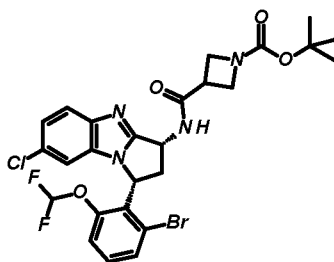
INTERMEDIATE 95



tert-Butyl 3-{[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]carbonyl}azetidine-1-carboxylate

To *Intermediate 94* was added cesium acetate anhydrous (420 mg, 2.18 mmol), cuprous iodide (170 mg, 0.87 mmol) and dimethyl sulfoxide (0.9 mL). The mixture was sealed and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours at 100°C. Water and ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture and the two layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organics were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 158 mg (28%) of the *title compound* as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.72 min, $[M+H]^+ = 651$

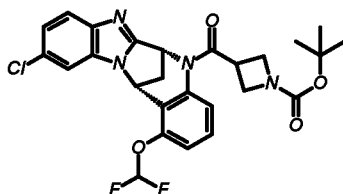
INTERMEDIATE 96



tert-butyl 3-[[[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]carbonyl]azetidine-1-carboxylate

Intermediate 40 (250 mg, 0.58 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonylazetidine-3-carboxylic acid (130 mg, 0.65 mmol), HATU (252 mg, 0.643 mmol) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.18 mL, 1.0 mmol) in DMF (11 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. Water was added to the reaction and the mixture extracted with EtOAc (x3), dried (sodium sulphate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 280 mg (78%) of the *title compound* as an amorphous solid.

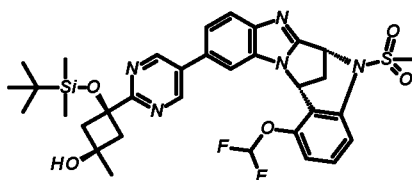
LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.48 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 611/613$.

INTERMEDIATE 97

tert-butyl 3-([(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-
methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]carbonyl)azetidine-1-
 5 carboxylate

To *Intermediate 96* (165 mg, 0.27 mmol) was added cesium acetate (130 mg, 0.67 mmol), cuprous iodide (52 mg, 0.27 mmol) and dimethyl sulfoxide (0.3 mL). The mixture was sealed in a pressure tube and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C overnight. Water and ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture and the two layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with further ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography on silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 85 mg (59%) of the *title compound* as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.63 min., [M+H]⁺ = 531/533.

15

INTERMEDIATE 98

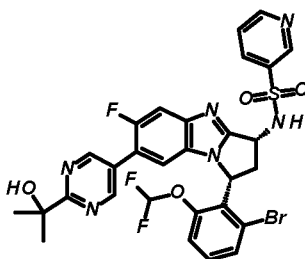
cis-3-([(tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)-3-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-
(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-
 20 2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-1-methylcyclobutanol

The *title compound* was prepared from 3-[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-3-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl], and *Example 23* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to give, following purification by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane /

ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent the *title compound* as a white solid (83 mg, 37% yield).

LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.73 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 684$.

INTERMEDIATE 99



5

N-[*(1R,3R)*-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl]pyridine-3-sulfonamide

Pyridine-3-sulfonyl chloride (1.1 eq, 0.6 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate*
 10 92 (300 mg, 0.55 mmol) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.24 mL, 1.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (2.8 mL) at room temperature. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour before solvent was partially evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography on silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 276 mg (73%) of the *title compound*. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 1.91 min. (pH 10), $[M+H]^+ =$
 15 689.

INTERMEDIATE 100

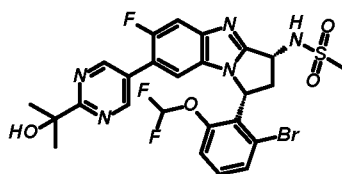
1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

To a solution of the trifluoroacetate salt of (trifluoromethyl)-3-aziditin-3-ol (5.8g, 22.75mmol) and 2-chloro-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidine (5g, 20.75mmol) in acetonitrile (80 mL) was added dropwise triethylamine (9.5 mL, 68.5 mmol) and the resultant mixture stirred overnight. LC/MS showed completion of reaction, concentrated to an off-white solid, ice-water was added, triturated, filtered,
 25 washed with cold water and dried by suction to give the *title compound* (6.1g, 50%) as cream solid. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6): δ 8.53 (s, 2 H), 7.46 (s, 1 H), 4.32 (m, 2

H), 4.10 (d, J = 10.3 Hz, 2 H), 1.29 (s, 12H). LC/MS *Method 3*:: m/z 346, RT 1.09 min (pH=10).

INTERMEDIATE 101

5



N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]methanesulfonamide

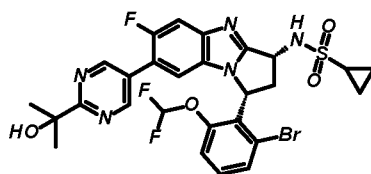
- 10 To a solution of *Intermediate 92* (202 mg, 0.37 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (6 mg, 0.05 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) at 0 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (76 µL, 0.43 mmol) followed by methanesulfonyl chloride (30 µL, 0.38 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 minutes and then at room temperature for 45 minutes, after which time the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was
- 15 purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 25-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (193 mg, 83 %) as a yellow solid.

LCMS *Method 3*: (ES⁺) 626/628 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.90 minutes.

LCMS *Method 4*: (ES⁺) 626/628 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.86 minutes.

20

INTERMEDIATE 102



N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]cyclopropanesulfonamide

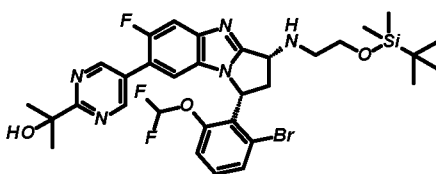
- 25 To a solution of *Intermediate 92* (151 mg, 0.28 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DCM (3 mL) at 0 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (58 µL, 0.33 mmol) followed by cyclopropanesulfonyl chloride (172 µL, 1.65 mmol). The

reaction mixture was stirred at 0 ° C for 10 minutes and then at room temperature for 18 hours, after which time the reaction mixture was partitioned between DCM (30 mL) and water (20 mL), the layers separated and the aqueous extracted with DCM (3 x 20 mL). The combined organics were dried (phase separator), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 25-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (110 mg, 61 %) as a purple solid.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 652/654 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.20 minutes.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 652/654 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.01 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 103

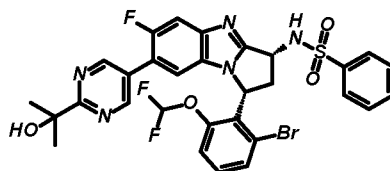


2-[5-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-3-[2-[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxyethylamino]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-7-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Intermediate 92* (251 mg, 0.46 mmol) and potassium carbonate (252 mg, 1.82 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added (2-bromoethoxy)-*tert*-butyldimethylsilane (99 µL, 0.46 mmol) and reaction mixture stirred at 70 ° C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (25 mL) and water (25 mL), layers separated and aqueous extracted with EtOAc (2 x 25 mL), the combined organics dried (phase separator) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (128 mg, 39 %) as a brown oil.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 706/708 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.10 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 104



N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-phenylsulfonyl)ethoxyethylamino]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-7-yl]propan-2-ol

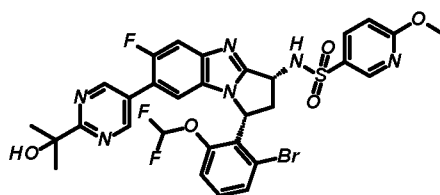
ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]benzenesulfonamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 92* (202 mg, 0.37 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) at 0 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (77 µL, 0.44 mmol) followed by benzenesulfonyl chloride (49 µL, 0.38 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 5 minutes and then at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-60% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (178 mg, 70 %) as a yellow solid.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 688/690 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.20 minutes.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 688/690 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.01 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 105



N-[[(1*R*,3*R*)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl]-6-methoxy-pyridine-3-sulfonamide

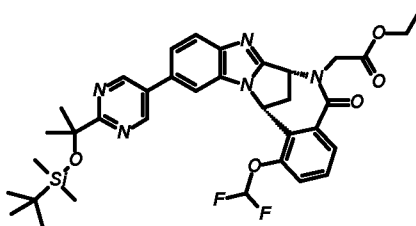
To a solution of *Intermediate 92* (150 mg, 0.27 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (5 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) at 0 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (57 µL, 0.33 mmol) followed by 6-methoxypyridine-3-sulfonyl chloride (62 mg, 0.29 mmol).

The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 5 minutes and then at room temperature 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound*

(148 mg, 75 %) as a dark beige solid. LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 719/721 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.30 minutes. LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 719/721 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.42 minutes. δ_H (300 MHz,

DMSO-*d*₆) 8.77-8.97 (m, 1 H), 8.71-8.77 (m, 3 H), 8.19-8.26 (m, 1 H), 7.59-7.68 (m, 1 H), 7.39-7.50 (m, 2 H), 7.38 (t, 1 H, *J* 73.4 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1 H, *J* 8.7 Hz), 6.65-6.71 (m, 1 H), 6.04-6.21 (m, 1 H), 5.22-5.44 (m, 1 H), 5.05-5.07 (m, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H), 3.05-3.24

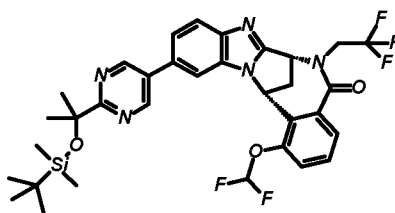
(m, 1 H), 2.59-2.79 (m, 1 H), 1.47-1.52 (m, 6 H).

INTERMEDIATE 106

5

Ethyl [(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]acetate

To a solution of *Intermediate 23* (100 mg, 0.169 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added
 10 potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (0.2 mL, 0.2 mmol, 1M in THF) at -78 °C and stirred
 for 40 minutes before the addition of ethyl bromoacetate (25.0 µL, 0.225 mmol). The
 reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 30 mins before being quenched with water. The
 mixture was extracted with DCM (2 × 20 mL), and the organics were combined, dried
 with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was columned on
 15 silica eluting with 0-5% MeOH/DCM to give the *title compound* (88 mg). LC/MS: *Method*
3: RT 3.53 minutes.

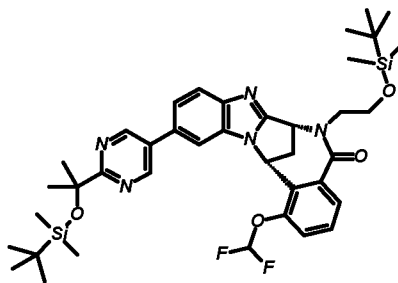
INTERMEDIATE 107

20 (7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 23* (90.0 mg, 0.152 mmol) in DMF (3.5 mL) were added
 cesium carbonate (250 mg, 0.767 mmol) and 2-iodo-1,1,1-trifluoroethane (0.06 mL, 0.60
 25 mmol) at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was heated at 150 °C for 3 hours.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (2×10 mL) and water (20 mL), and the organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was progressed to the next step without further purification. LC/MS: *Method 3* MH⁺ 674, retention time 2.03 minutes.

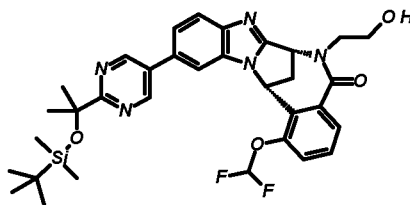
5

INTERMEDIATE 108

(7R,14R)-6-(2-([tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)ethyl)-11-[2-(2-([tert-
butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-
10 7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 23* (100.0 mg, 0.169 mmol) in THF (4.0 mL) was added potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (0.20 mL, 0.20 mmol, 1M in THF) at -78 °C followed by the addition of (2-bromoethoxy)-tert-butyldimethylsilane (50.0 µL, 0.231 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated in a microwave at 70 °C for 24 hours before being quenched
15 with aqueous saturated NH₄Cl and extracted with EtOAc (2×10 mL). The organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was progressed to the next step without further purification. LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 750, retention time 4.23 minutes.

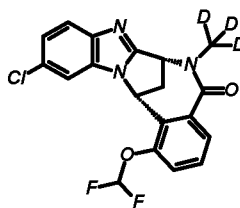
20

INTERMEDIATE 109

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxyethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

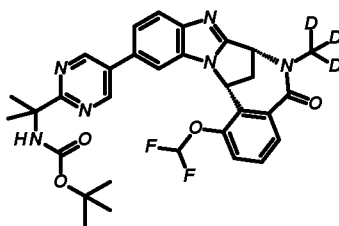
- To a solution of *Intermediate 108* (80.0 mg, 0.107 mmol) in THF (5.0 mL) was added a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (0.20 mL, 0.20 mmol, 1M in THF) at ambient temperature and the mixture was stirred for 72 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between water (10 mL) and DCM (3 × 10 mL), and the organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was progressed to the next step.
- LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 636, retention time 3.21 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 110



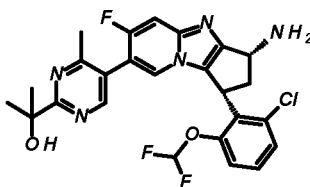
- (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(trideutero)methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

- To a solution of *Example 11* (90.0 mg, 0.24 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added a solution of KHMDS in THF (1M, 0.25 mL, 0.25 mmol) dropwise at -78 °C and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes before the addition of CD₃I (30.1 μL, 0.48 mmol). The reaction mixture was warmed to 0 °C and stirred for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution, extracted with EtOAc, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica eluting with 0-10% MeOH/EtOAc to give the *title compound* (95 mg, 99%). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 393, retention time 1.93 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 111

5 tert-butyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(trideutero)methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

To a solution of *tert*-butyl N-[1-methyl-1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]ethyl]carbamate (260 mg, 0.72 mmol) and *Intermediate 110* (94 mg, 0.24 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (3 mL) were added K₃PO₄ (294 mg, 1.40 mmol), tricyclohexyl
 10 phosphonium tetrafluoroborate (15 mg, 0.04 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (28 mg, 0.03 mmol) were added. The mixture was degassed for 10 minutes with nitrogen before heating at 110 °C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 10 mL), dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on
 15 silica eluting with 0-10% MeOH/ DCM to give the *title compound* (40 mg, 28%). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 594, retention time 2.10 minutes.

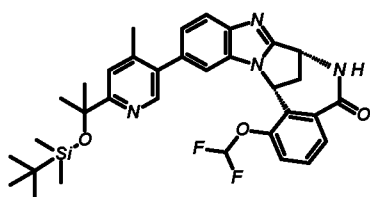
INTERMEDIATE 112

20 rac 2-(5-{(1R,3R)-3-amino-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-7-yl}-4-methylpyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol

Intermediate 61 (0.15 g, 0.6 mmol) and potassium acetate (0.15 g, 1.5 mmol) were suspended in anhydrous 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) in a sealable vessel. The mixture was stirred and degassed thoroughly under a stream of N₂(g) for 15 min then treated with bis[3-
 25 (diphenylphosphanyl)cyclopenta-2,4-dien-1-yl]iron; dichloromethane; dichloropalladium

(0.02 g, 0.02 mmol), and a solution of *Intermediate 71* (82%, 0.25 g, 0.4 mmol) in a mixture of dioxane (1 mL) and 2M K₂CO₃ in water (1.24 ml) was added and the mixture warmed to 100 °C overnight. After cooling to room temperature the mixture was diluted with EtOAc (25 mL) and filtered over a pad of celite. The filtrate was washed with water (10 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product (0.4 g) as a brown gum. Column chromatography (C18, biotage isolera, 60 g) eluting with 0 to 50% acetonitrile in water spiked with 0.1% NH₄OH afforded the *title compound* (0.15 g, 58%) as an orange glass. The material was azeotroped twice with toluene prior to use in the subsequent step. *Method 8* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 518, RT 1.43 minutes. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.56 - 8.51 (m, 1H), 7.99 - 7.77 (m, 1H), 7.63 - 7.53 (m, 1H), 7.43 - 7.31 (m, 2H), 7.29 - 7.24 (m, 1H), 7.06 - 6.73 (m, 1H), 5.10 - 4.90 (m, 2H), 4.47 - 4.31 (m, 1H), 3.52 - 3.40 (m, 1H), 2.34 - 2.27 (m, 3H), 2.03 - 1.81 (m, 3H), 1.52 - 1.45 (m, 6H).

15

INTERMEDIATE 113

20

(7R,14R)-11-[6-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)-4-methylpyridin-3-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

25

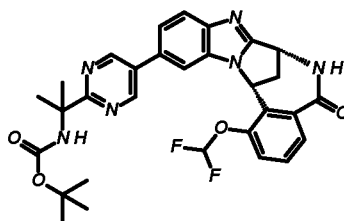
The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 11* (450 mg, 1.20 mmol) and *tert*-butyl-dimethyl-[1-methyl-1-[4-methyl-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]ethoxy]silane (483 mg, 1.86 mmol), by a palladium catalyzed *Suzuki* coupling according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 10% MeOH in EtOAc) to obtain the *title compound* (650 mg, 81%) as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 3.20 min, 605 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 114

tert-butyl N-[1-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-1-methyl-ethyl]carbamate

2-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-amine (200 mg, 0.92 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5mL) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate solution (1.0M) (1.3 mL, 1.3 mmol) in THF added.

5 After 2 hours the solvents were removed *in vacuo* to afford the *title compound* as an orange gum (300 mg, 92%). LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 1.88 min, 338.0/340.0 (M+Na)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 115

10

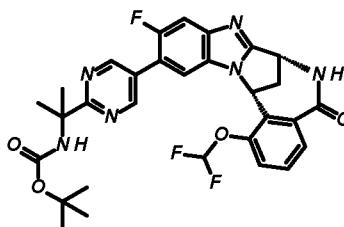
tert-butyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 11* (300 mg, 0.80 mmol) and

15 *Intermediate 114* (252 mg, 0.80 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 70*. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography in (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 10% MeOH in EtOAc) to obtain the *title compound* (154 mg, 33%).

LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 1.43 min, 577.2 (M+H)⁺

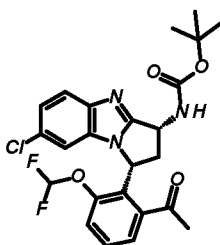
20

INTERMEDIATE 116

tert-butyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 10* (50 mg, 0.13 mmol) and *Intermediate*
 5 *114* (100 mg, 0.32 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 70*. The product was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 10% MeOH in EtOAc) to obtain the *title compound* (55 mg, 71%). LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺) RT 2.16 min, 595.2 (M+H)⁺

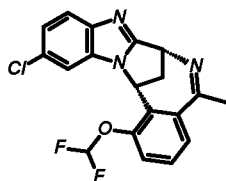
INTERMEDIATE 117



10

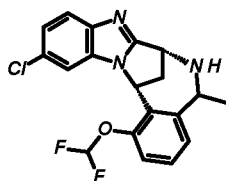
tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-1-[2-acetyl-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl}carbamate

To a degassed solution of *Intermediate 42* (1.4 g, 2.6 mmol) in dry toluene (30 mL) under argon were added tributyl(1-ethoxyvinyl)tin (1.1 mL g, 3.2 mmol) and
 15 bis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium(II)dichloride (100 mg, 0.141 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at 105 °C for 48 hours. Further Tributyl(1-ethoxyvinyl)tin (0.7 g, 2.0 mmol) and bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II)-dichloride (64 mg, 0.0912 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was heated for an additional 5 hours at 105°C. The
 20 reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and poured onto a saturated aqueous solution of KF. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, filtered over celite, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in *vacuo*. The crude compound was re-dissolved in THF (50 mL), p-toluene sulfonic acid (200 mg) and water (5 mL) was added and the mixture was heated at 45°C for 5 hours. The mixture was poured onto ice, neutralized with solid NaHCO₃ and extracted with ethyl acetate (x3). The combined organic layers
 25 were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude compound was purified by flash chromatography with ethyl acetate 50%- heptane 50% to afford 1.27 g of the *title compound* as a yellow solid. LCMS Method 3 basic (ES⁺) RT 2.75 min. 492.1 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 118

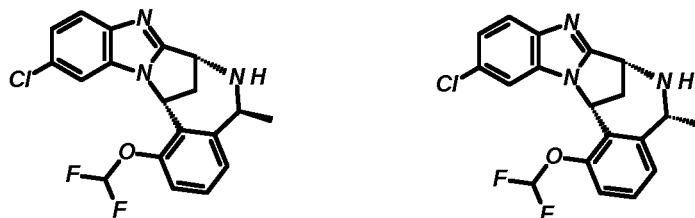
(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

- 5 A solution of *Intermediate 117* (0.48 g, 0.976 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was cooled to 0°C and trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture was poured on ice, brought to neutral pH with solid NaHCO₃ and extracted with dichloromethane (x3). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 0.25 g
- 10 (65%) of the *title compound*. LCMS basic *Method 3* (ES+) RT 2.42 min., 374.1 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 119

(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

- 15 To a solution of *Intermediate 118* (350 mg, 0.893 mmol) in a mixture of THF (8 mL) and EtOH (8 mL) were added macroporous polymer-supported cyanoborohydride (1.12 g, 4.4 mmol, 4.0 mmol/g loading) and acetic acid (50 µL). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered
- 20 over celite and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was poured onto ice/water and solid NaHCO₃ was added till pH = 9. The aqueous phase was extracted with DCM (x3), the combined organic layers dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The crude compound was purified by normal phase chromatography (DCM 95 % – MeOH 5%) to afford 237 mg (71%) of the *title compound* as a mixture of
- 25 diastereomers. LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES+) RT 1.99 min., 376.1 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATES 120 and 121

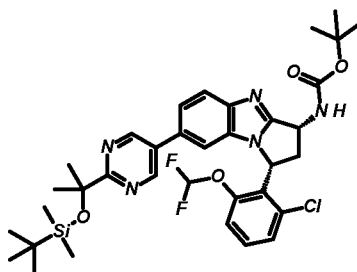
(5R,7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-
 5 methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine
(5S,7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-
methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

The *title compounds* were isolated from *Intermediate 119* (0.118 g) by purification under SFC
 10 conditions on Chiralpak OD-A20 column (50*266, 360 mL/min, 25°C, CO₂+20 % iPrOH, con: 24 g/l), yielding 37 mg (31 %) of *Intermediate 120* (RT 3.65 min) and 40.0 mg (34%) of *Intermediate 121* (RT 7.57 min) respectively.

Intermediate 120: LCMS Method 4 (ES+) RT 2.18 min., 376.2 (M+H)+.

Intermediate 121: LCMS Method 4 (ES+) RT 2.14 min., 376.2 (M+H)+.

15

INTERMEDIATE 122

tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-7-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-
 5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-
a]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

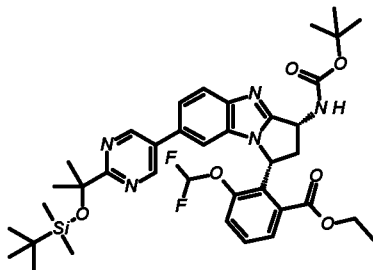
20 *Intermediate 22* (5 g, 8,331 mmol) was suspended in DCM (10 mL) and cooled on an ice bath. Triethylamine (2.6 mL, 18,33 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (2.2 g, 10.0 mmol) were added. The reaction was warmed to ambient temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched by addition of water (10 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted by DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic

layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuum*. The residue was purified over silica gel (eluting with heptane / ethyl acetate 7 / 3) to afford 5.1 g (87%) of the *title compound* as a white solid.

LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 3.64 min., 700.3 / 702.3 (M+H)⁺

5

INTERMEDIATE 123



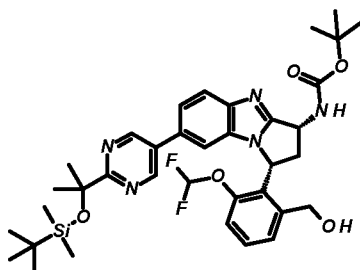
Ethyl 2-{{(1*R*,3*R*)-3-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-7-[2-(2-{{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl}-3-(difluoromethoxy)benzoate

10

Intermediate 122 (5 g, 7.14 mmol), potassium carbonate (1.50 g, 10.71 mmol), molecular sieve 4 Å powder (2 g) and dichloro[bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane]-palladium(II) (350 mg, 0.57 mmol) were suspended in dry dimethyl sulfoxide (50 mL) and ethanol (1.8 mL, 32 mmol). The slurry was stirred under 5 bars of CO gas at 100°C, overnight. The slurry was filtered through a pad of celite and rinsed with ethyl acetate (30 mL). The filtrate was washed successively by a saturated solution of aqueous NH₄Cl (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuum* affording 5.1 g of the crude *title compound* as a brown solid, used without further purification. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 3.64 min., 738.1 (M+H)⁺.

20

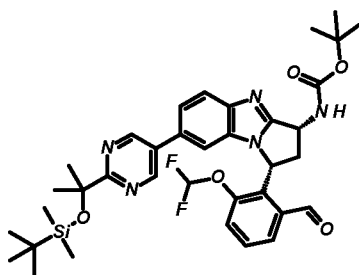
INTERMEDIATE 124



tert-butyl {(1*R*,3*R*)-7-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2 *a*]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

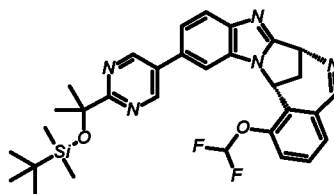
Intermediate 123 6 (3 g) was dissolved in ethanol (30 mL). At 0°C, sodium borohydride (1.2 g) was added, followed by calcium chloride (1.805 g). The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite, and rinsed with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (2 x 20 mL) and brine (20 mL), and dried over MgSO₄. The residue was purified by basic reverse phase preparative HPLC yielding 948 mg (33%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 3.45 minutes 696.3 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 125



tert-butyl {(1*R*,3*R*)-7-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-formylphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

Intermediate 124 (750 mg, 1.08 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (16 mL) before addition of manganese dioxide (2.3 g, 27 mmol) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred overnight. The crude reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite and rinsed with 20 mL of chloroform. The filtrate was concentrated to dryness *in vacuum* yielding to a crude 860 mg of *title compound* used without further purification. LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES⁺) RT 5.85 minutes. 694.4 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 126

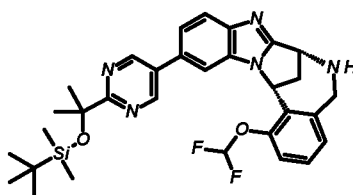
(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

5

Intermediate 125 (860 mg, 1.24 mmol) was treated in accordance with the procedure described for the synthesis of *Intermediate 118* to afford 710 mg (99%) of the *title compound* as a yellow glass.

LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES⁺) RT 5.76 min., 576.2 (M+H)⁺.

10

INTERMEDIATE 127

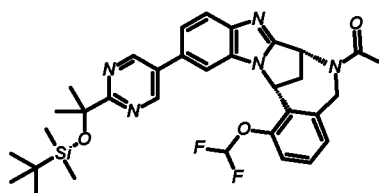
(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

15

Intermediate 126 (710 mg, 1.23 mmol) was treated in accordance with the synthetic method described for *Intermediate 119* to afford the *title compound* 655 mg (92%) as a yellow oil.

LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES⁺) RT 5.84 min., 578.7 (M+H)⁺.

20

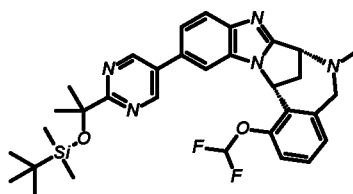
INTERMEDIATE 128

1-[(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]ethanone

To a solution of *Intermediate 127* (655 mg, 1.13 mmol) in dichloromethane (11 mL) was added successively pyridine (0.28 mL, 3.4 mmol) and acetic anhydride (0.22 mL, 2.27 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 minutes. The reaction mixture was washed by a saturated aqueous solution of NH₄Cl (2 x 20 mL) and a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (2 x 10 mL). The aqueous phases were extracted by DCM (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by chromatography over silica gel (eluting with ethyl acetate 100% to ethyl acetate / ethanol 9/1), yielding to 300 mg (43%) of *title compound* as a yellow glass.

LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES⁺) RT 5.84 min., 620.3 (M+H)⁺

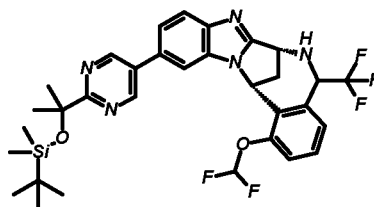
INTERMEDIATE 129



(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-
b][2,5]benzodiazocine

Intermediate 127 (30 mg, 0.051 mmol) in 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol (3 mL) and formaldehyde (1 mL, 25.97 mmol) was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes before addition of sodium borohydride (20 mg, 0.52 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at 70°C for 2 hours. At room temperature, additional sodium borohydride (20 mg, 0.52 mmol) was added, and the reaction mixture heated at 70°C for addition 1 hour. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite, and the residual solid washed by 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol (2 x 4 mL). The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuum*. The residue was used without further purification.

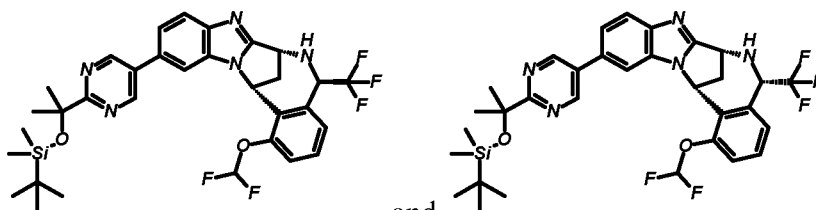
LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES⁺) RT 5.97 min., 592.2 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 130

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocine

To a solution of *Intermediate 126* (0.074 mmol) in acetonitrile (1 mL) and *N,N*-dimethylformamide (17 μ L) was added successively at 0°C, trifluoroacetic acid (7 μ L, 0.092 mmol), potassium hydrogen fluoride (4.4 mg, 0.055 mmol) and (trifluoromethyl)trimethylsilane (16 μ L, 0.11 mmol). The resulting slurry was allowed to warm to ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was then evaporated and purified by preparative basic reverse phase HPLC. This was followed by a second acidic preparative HPLC to afford the TFA salt of the *title compound* which was solubilized in EtOAc (2 mL) and washed with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 7 mg (15%) of the *title compound* as a mixture of diastereoisomers.

LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 6.08 min., 646.2 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 131 and INTERMEDIATE 132

(5R,7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocine

and
(5S,7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-

(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

To a solution of *Intermediate 126* (0.72 mmol) in acetonitrile (5 mL) and DMF (166 µL) was added successively at 0°C, trifluoroacetic acid (69 µL, 0.90 mmol), potassium
5 hydrogen fluoride (43 mg, 0.54 mmol) and (trifluoromethyl)trimethylsilane (159 µL, 1.08 mmol). The resulting slurry was allowed to warm to room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was then diluted with EtOAc and a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃. The two phases were separated and the aqueous layer further extracted with EtOAc (x2). The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered
10 and concentrated under reduced pressure.

The crude was purified over silica gel (eluting with dichloromethane-methanol- aqueous ammonia / 97:2.7:0.3). This was followed by a second purification by reverse phase preparative HPLC to give the following diastereoisomers:

4.8 mg (1%) of *Intermediate 131*:

15 LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 3.65 min., 646.2 (M+H)⁺.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.72 (m, 2 H), 7.19 (m, 1 H), 7.05 (s, 2 H), 7.00 (m, 1 H), 6.85 (m, 2 H), 6.35 (m, 1 H), 5.33 (m, 1H), 4.52 (d, 1 H, *J* = 7.0 Hz), 3.48 (m, 1 H), 2.83 (m, 1 H), 2.42 (m, 1 H), 1.67 (s, 6 H), 0.87 (s, 9 H), -0.07 (d, 6 H, *J* = 1.2 Hz).

2.8mg (5%) of *Intermediate 132*:

20 LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 3.66 min., 646.2 (M+H)⁺.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.93 (m, 2 H), 7.94 (m, 1 H), 7.53 (m, 2 H), 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.23 (m, 1 H), 6.76 (m, 1 H), 6.32 (m, 1 H), 4.88 (m, 1 H), 3.39 (m, 1 H), 3.19 (m, 1 H), 2.67 (m, 1 H), 2.54 (m, 1 H), 1.70 (s, 6 H), 0.89 (s, 9 H), -0.04 (s, 6 H)

25

INTERMEDIATE 133

1-[4-methyl-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

1-(5-bromo-4-methyl-pyrimidin-2-yl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol (700 mg, 2.24 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (1.15 g, 4.49 mmol), 1,1'-
30 bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (92 mg, 0.112 mmol), potassium acetate (890 mg, 8.97 mmol) and 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) were placed in a small RB flask, degassed and placed under nitrogen. The mixture was then

heated at 105°C for 2 hours. The mixture was cooled and partitioned between EtOAc and water. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* as a dark brown solid 1.60g. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.93 minutes, m/z 360.

5

INTERMEDIATE 134

1-(5-bromo-6-methyl-2-pyridyl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

2,5-dibromo-6-methylpyridine (1.30 g, 5.18 mmol) and 3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol hydrochloride (1.00 g, 5.63 mmol) were added to a small RB flask with stirrer bar. N,N-diisopropylethylamine (0.90 mL, 5.2 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 130°C for 4 hours. The mixture was cooled, diluted with dichloromethane (50mL) and washed with sodium bicarbonate solution (50mL). The organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Chromatography (silica, DCM gradient to 15% EtOAc in DCM) gave the *title compound* as a white solid (210 mg, 13.0% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.70 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (s, 1H), 6.32 (dd, *J* = 8.7, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 4.19 (dd, *J* = 9.6, 1.0 Hz, 2H), 3.93 (dt, *J* = 9.4, 1.3 Hz, 2H), 2.42 (s, 3H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.02 minutes, m/z 313/315.

10

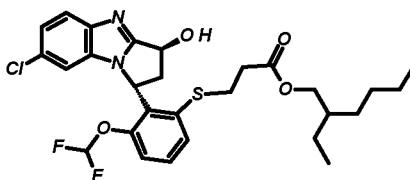
15

INTERMEDIATE 135

1-[6-methyl-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

Intermediate 134 was treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Intermediate 133* to afford the *title compound* as pale brown gum which was used without further purification. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.29 minutes, m/z 359.

20

INTERMEDIATE 136

2-ethylhexyl 3-[2-[(1R,3S)-7-chloro-3-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]sulfanylpropanoate

25

- N,N*-di-*iso*-propylethylamine (1.63 mL, 9.31 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 38* (2.00 g, 4.66 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL). The mixture was evacuated and refilled with nitrogen. The catalyst, *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (213 mg, 0.233 mmol) and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (275 mg, 0.466 mmol) and 3-mercaptopropionic acid 2-ethylhexyl ester (1.86 mL, 7.93 mmol) were added and the mixture was evacuated and filled with nitrogen and heated under nitrogen at 105 °C for 18 hours. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (250mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (100 mL). The organic layer was dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a yellow oil, 4.00g.
- Purification by chromatography (silica, dichloromethane gradient up to 5% methanol in dichloromethane) afforded the *title product* as a pale yellow foam (2.10 g, 80% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.62 (dd, *J* = 8.6, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.41 (m, 1H), 7.36 – 7.21 (m, 1H), 7.21 – 7.09 (m, 1H), 7.06 – 6.86 (m, 1H), 6.74 – 6.52 (m, 1H), 6.46 – 6.21 (m, 1H), 6.03 (dd, *J* = 6.7, 3.7 Hz, 1H), 5.36 – 5.07 (m, 1H), 4.05 – 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.35 (td, *J* = 6.8, 2.6 Hz, 2H), 3.25 – 2.64 (m, 4H), 2.24 (ddt, *J* = 24.0, 16.6, 8.4 Hz, 1H), 1.50 (dd, *J* = 12.5, 6.4 Hz, 1H), 1.37 – 1.08 (m, 8H), 0.92 – 0.68 (m, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 3.00 minutes, *m/z* 381/383.

INTERMEDIATE 137

1-(5-bromo-4-methyl-2-pyridyl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

- The *title compound* was synthesised from 2,5-dibromo-4-methylpyridine and 3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol hydrochloride in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Intermediate 134*.

INTERMEDIATE 138

- 1-[4-methyl-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol**

Intermediate 137 was treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Intermediate 135* to afford the *title compound* which was used without further purification.

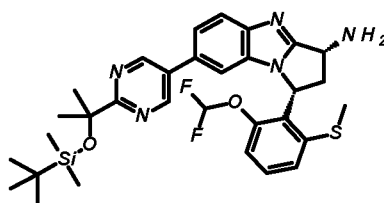
INTERMEDIATE 139Ethyl 5-bromo-4-methylpyrimidine-2-carboxylate

5-bromo-4-methylpyrimidine-2-carboxylic acid (17.8 g, 82 mmol) dissolved in ethanol (185 mL). Sulfuric acid (38.6 g, 394 mmol, 21 mL) was added and the resulting
5 suspension was placed in a preheated oil bath of 80 °C. Additional sulfuric acid (3.68 g, 37.5 mmol, 2 mL) added and heating continued for a further hour before cooling to room temperature. The solid was filtered and residue washed with EtOH. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue taken up in EtOAc (300 mL) and sat. aqueous NaHCO₃ solution (300 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with
10 EtOAc (300 mL). The combined organics were washed with brine (300 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give a dark solid which was purified by column chromatography 300 g silica (20% -> 50% EtOAc in heptane) to give the *title compound* as a yellow solid (12.24 g, 44%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.87 (s, 1H), 4.53 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 2.76 (s, 3H), 1.46 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3H). LC/MS *Method 11* RT 1.57
15 minutes, [M+H]⁺: 245/247 Br-isotope.

INTERMEDIATE 1402-(5-bromo-4-methylpyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol

Under a nitrogen atmosphere methyl magnesium bromide solution (3M in Et₂O 109
20 mmol, 36.4 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of *Intermediate 139* (10.7 g, 43.7 mmol) in diethyl ether (300 mL) while cooled in an ice/water bath. During addition a suspension formed. When addition was completed the mixture was stirred at room temperature. The reaction mixture was carefully quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution (300 mL). The resulting organic layer was separated and the aqueous phase was
25 extracted with Et₂O (300 mL). The combined organics were washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to dryness to give an orange oil.
Purification by flash chromatography (300g silica, 10% -> 50% EtOAc in heptane) gave the *title compound* as a light yellow oil (7.5 g, 74%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.67 (s, 1H), 4.51 (s, 1H), 2.65 (s, 3H), 1.58 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 9*: [M+H]⁺
30 231/233 Br-isotope.

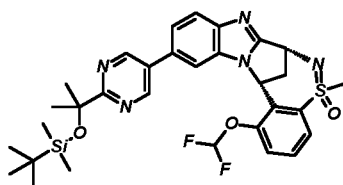
INTERMEDIATE 141



(1R,3R)-7-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(methylsulfanyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine

- 5 To a solution of *Intermediate 22* (415 mg, 0.69 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) was added sodium thiomethoxide (64 mg, 0.83 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 25 minutes at 100°C. Water (20 mL) and ethyl acetate (40 mL) were added to the reaction mixture, and the two layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 40 mL) and the combined organics layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified over silica gel using DCM/MeOH/NH₄OH (100% DCM to 90/10/1) as eluent, yielding 310 mg (73%) of the *title compound* as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.72 min, [M+H]⁺ = 612.2

INTERMEDIATE 142



- 15 (7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methano-5λ-4--benzimidazo[2,1-d][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocine 5-oxide

- To a degassed solution of *Intermediate 141* (87 mg, 0.14 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added a solution of bromine (19 mg, 0.12 mmol) in MeOH (0.5 mL). The reaction mixture was evaporated after 1 hour and the residue was solubilised in DCM (5 mL). The solution was degassed by bubbling of argon through the solution for 5 minutes. Potassium carbonate (63 mg, 0.45 mmol) and 3-chloroperbenzoic acid (74 mg, 0.43 mmol) were then added to the mixture. The mixture was stirred overnight at ambient temperature before dilution with DCM (40 mL) and the organic layer washed with water (2 x 20 mL), dried by passage through a phase separator cartridge and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified over silica gel using DCM/MeOH/NH₄OH (100% DCM to

90/10/1) as eluent, yielding 8 mg (9%) of the *title compound* as a dark oil. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 3.27 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 626.2.

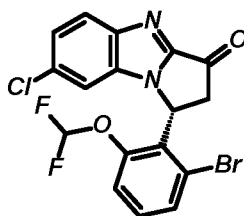
INTERMEDIATE 143

5 5-bromo-2-(1-methylsulfonylcyclopropyl)pyridine

5-bromo-2-[(methylsulfonyl)methyl]pyridine (300 mg, 1.20 mmol), 1,2-dibromoethane (0.12 mL, 1.40 mmol), benzyltributylammonium chloride (377 mg, 1.20 mmol) and sodium hydroxide 50% aqueous solution (7.5 mL, 94 mmol) were mixed in acetonitrile (8 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. Aqueous
10 saturated NaCl solution and ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture and the two layers were separated. The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and the solvent evaporated. The crude was purified by reverse phase basic preparative LCMS to yield 32 mg (10%) of the *title compound* as an off-white solid. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 1.86min, [M+H]⁺ = 276.

15

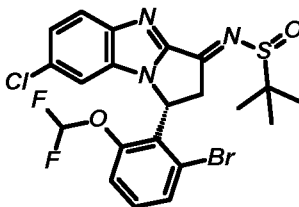
INTERMEDIATE 144



(1R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-1,2-dihydro-3H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-one

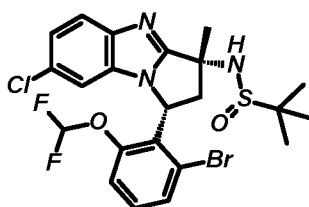
20 To a solution of *Intermediate 19* (3g, 6.98 mmol) in chloroform (60 mL), was added manganese dioxide (3.64 g, 42 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, after which additional manganese dioxide (2 g, 23 mmol) was added and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered over celite, rinsed with chloroform (2 x 60 mL) and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to yield 2.91g (97%) of the
25 *title compound* as a beige solid. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 4.88 min, [M+H]⁺ = 427.

30

INTERMEDIATE 145

N-{((1*R*,3*E*)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-1,2-dihydro-3*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-ylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

- 5 Titanium(IV) *isopropoxide* (1,86 mL, 9.52 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 144* (1.85 g, 4.33 mmol) in dry THF (43 mL). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes before addition of (*R*)-(+)-2-methyl-2-propanesulfonamide (642 mg, 5.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. Further (*R*)-(+)-2-methyl-2-propanesulfonamide (320 mg, 2.58 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture
- 10 stirred at 50°C overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and methanol was added followed by a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ until precipitation was observed. The slurry was diluted by EtOAc (50 mL) and filtered over celite. The filtrate was washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified over silica gel (gradient EtOAc / heptane 20 to 50 %) yielding 770
- 15 mg (34%) of the *title compound* as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.82 min, [M+H]⁺ = 530.

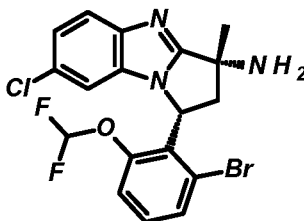
INTERMEDIATE 146

N-{((1*R*,3*R*)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-3-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

- 20 To a solution of *Intermediate 145* (8g, 15.1 mmol) in dry DCM (90 mL), cooled at -70°C, was added dropwise a solution of methyl magnesium bromide 3 M in diethyl ether (17.6 mL, 52.8 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at -70°C for 10 minutes and at 0°C for 2 hours before quenching by addition of a saturated solution of NH₄Cl (100 mL). The
- 25 aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated brine and dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified over silica gel (gradient ethyl heptane / acetate 50 to 100%),

yielding to 2.91 g (35%) of the *title compound* as a beige solid. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 2.68 min, [M+H]⁺= 546.10

INTERMEDIATE 147



5

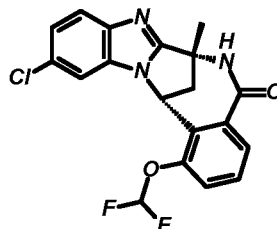
(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-3-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine

Intermediate 146 (2.91 g, 5.32 mmol) was dissolved in dry 1,4-dioxane (150 mL).

HCl/dioxane (4M) (6.65 mL, 27 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was taken up in EtOAc (50 mL) and a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (20 mL) added. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in diethyl ether and evaporated yielding to 2.2g (93%) of the *title compound* as a yellow solid. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 2.43 min, [M+H]⁺= 442.1.

15

INTERMEDIATE 148



(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

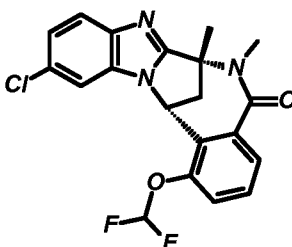
Intermediate 147 (50 mg, 0.11 mmol), potassium carbonate (23 mg, 0.170 mmol), dichloro[9,9-dimethyl-4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)xanthene]palladium(II) (4 mg, 0.006 mmol) were mixed in degassed 1,4-dioxane (2 mL). The mixture was stirred under CO gas (3 bar) at 120°C for 4 hours. Additional bis(diphenylphosphino)xanthene]palladium(II) (4 mg, 0.006 mmol) was introduced in the reactor at room temperature and the reaction continued under stirring under CO (3bar) at 120°C for 16 hours. The crude mixture was purified over silica gel (ethyl acetate as

20

25

eluent), yielding 71 mg (37%) of the *title compound* as an off-white solid. LCMS Method 3 (ES+): RT 2.34 min, [M+H]⁺ = 390.

INTERMEDIATE 149



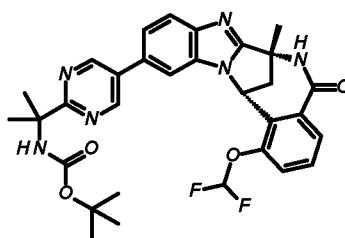
5

(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dimethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 148 (80 mg, 0.21 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium iodide (30 mg, 0.08 mmol) were mixed in dry THF (2 mL). At 0°C, sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil) (9 mg, 0.246 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 35 minutes. Iodomethane (0.08 mL, 1.24 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched by addition of water (1 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted by EtOAc (3 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified over silica gel (heptane / DCM 50% to 100%), yielding 60 mg (72%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS Method 4 (ES+): RT 2.63 min, [M+H]⁺ 404.

15

INTERMEDIATE 150



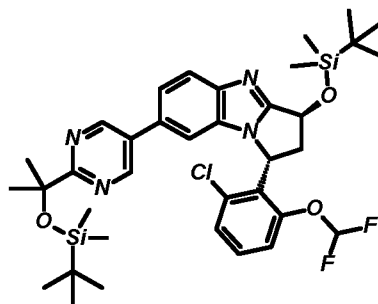
20 tert-butyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

tert-butyl N-[1-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-1-methyl-ethyl]carbamate (36 mg, 0.11 mmol), *bis*(pinacolato)diboron (36 mg, 0.14 mmol), potassium acetate (11 mg, 0.12 mmol), [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (6 mg, 0.008 mmol), were mixed

25

in dioxane (3 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through a 45µM filter, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in *n*-butanol (5 mL) and *Intermediate 148* (15mg, 0.038 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (4 mg, 0.009 mmol),
5 tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipaladium(0) (4mg, 0.0038 mmol), potassium triphosphate (17 mg, 0.077 mmol) and water (50 µL) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 140°C in a microwave for 25 minutes. The reaction mixture was filtered and purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC-MS to yield 13 mg (57%) of the *title compound* as a beige solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 2.42 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 591.

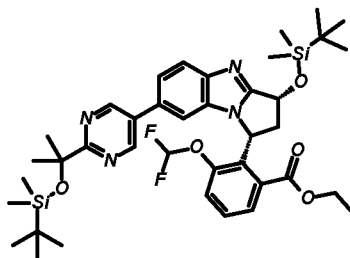
10

INTERMEDIATE 151

(1*R*,3*S*)-3-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}-7-[2-(2-{[*tert*-
butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-
15 (difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazole

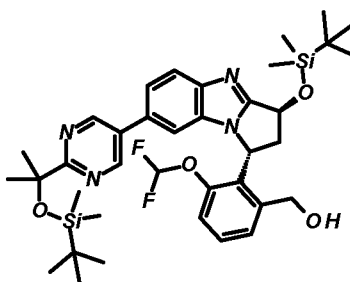
To a solution of *Intermediate 21* (2 g, 3.33 mmol) in DMF (12 mL) was added imidazole (283 mg, 4.16 mmol) and *tert*-butyldimethylchlorosilane (543 mg, 3.49 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction was then diluted with diethyl ether (30 mL) and water (30 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with
20 diethyl ether (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* which was used in the next step without further purification. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 7.09 min.

25

INTERMEDIATE 152

Ethyl 2-((1*R*,3*R*)-3-((*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl)oxy)-7-[2-(2-((*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl)-3-(diethylmethoxy)benzoate

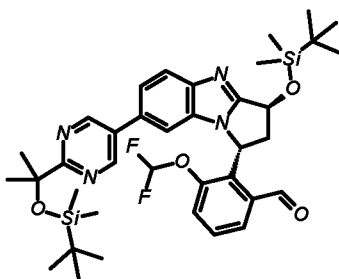
Intermediate 151 (2.05 g, 2.87 mmol), potassium carbonate (1.5 equiv., 4.30 mmol), molecular sieve 4Å powder (860 mg) and dichloro[bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane]palladium(II) (0.08 equiv., 0.23 mmol) were suspended in dry dimethylsulfoxide (20 mL) and ethanol (0.75 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C under 5 bars of CO gas for 16 hours. After this time, another portion of dichloro[bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane]palladium(II) was added and the reaction stirred overnight at 100°C under 5 bars of CO gas to complete the reaction. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature, filtered over celite and partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (2 x 20 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified over silica gel (DCM : MeOH 99.5% : 0.5%), yielding 824 mg (38%) of the *title compound*. LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺): RT 3.92 min, 753 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 153

[2-((1*R*,3*S*)-3-((*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl)oxy)-7-[2-(2-((*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl)oxy)propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl)-3-(diethylmethoxy)phenyl]methanol

Intermediate 152 (780 mg, 1.04 mmol) was dissolved in dry ethanol (8 mL). At 0°C, sodium borohydride (317 mg, 8.30 mmol) followed by calcium chloride (460 mg, 4.15 mmol) were added. The reaction was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and stirred for 4 hours. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc (20 mL) and water (10 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified over silica gel (hexane : ethyl acetate 80 : 20), yielding 233mg (32%) of the *title compound*. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 3.69 min, 711 (M+H)⁺.

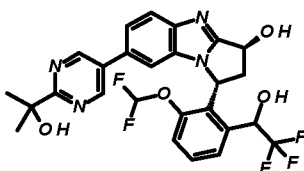
INTERMEDIATE 154



2-{{(1*R*,3*S*)-3-{{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}-7-[2-(2-{{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl}}-3-(difluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde

Intermediate 153 (233 mg, 0.33 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (5 mL) before the addition of Dess-Martin periodinane (157 mg, 0.36 mmol). The slurry was stirred overnight at ambient temperature. Additional Dess-Martin periodinane (72 mg, 0.16 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours to complete the reaction. The slurry was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with DCM (20 mL) and washed by a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (10 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified over silica gel (hexane : ethyl acetate 80 : 20), yielding 190 mg (82%) of the *title compound*. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 3.79 min, 709 (M+H)⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 155



(1*R*,3*S*)-1-[2-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2,2,2-trifluoro-1-hydroxyethyl)phenyl]-7-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-ol

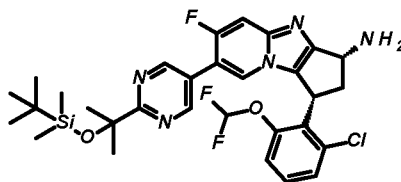
Intermediate 154 (190 mg, 0.27 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL). At 0 °C, tetrabutylammonium fluoride (54 µL, 0.054 mmol) followed by

5 (trifluoromethyl)trimethylsilane (79 µL, 0.54 mmol) were added. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc (10 mL) and water (5 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with further EtOAc (2 x 5 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in methanol (1 mL)

10 and *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (255 mg, 1.34 mmol) was added. The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. Additional *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (100 mg, 0.53 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight to complete the reaction. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (10 mL) and a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (5 mL). The aqueous

15 layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 5 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC-MS to afford 97 mg (66%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.03 min, 551 (M+H)⁺.

20

INTERMEDIATE 156

(1*R*,3*R*)-7-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-cyclopenta[4,5]imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridin-3-amine

25 To a solution of *Intermediate 72* (212 mg, 0.42 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (4 mg, 0.033 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) at 0 °C was added *N,N*-di-*isopropylethylamine* (441 µL, 2.52 mmol), followed by *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl-trifluoromethanesulfonate (395 µL, 1.69 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 20 minutes before the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm up to room temperature.

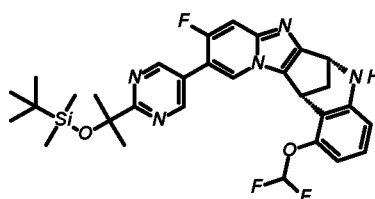
30 After 45 minutes the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with water (2 x 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (by passage through a phase separator cartridge)

and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 60-100 % EtOAc in hexane, followed by 0-25% MeOH in EtOAc) and freeze dried from acetonitrile/water to give the *title compound* (190 mg, 73 %) as an off-white solid.

LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) 618 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.44 minutes.

5 LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) 618 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.04 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 157



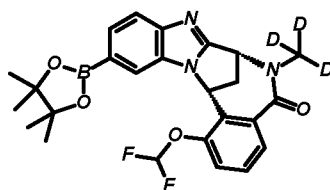
(6*R*,12*R*)-2-[2-(2-{[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-
10 c][1]benzazepine

To a microwave vial was added tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (9.5 mg, 0.01 mmol) and 2-(dicyclohexylphosphino)-2',4',6'-triisopropylbiphenyl (10.2 mg, 0.021 mmol), followed by degassed 1,4-dioxane (2 mL), and the microwave vial then sealed
15 and degassed and stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After this time *Intermediate 156* (125 mg, 0.20 mmol) and sodium *tert*-butoxide (41 mg, 0.40 mmol) then added and reaction mixture degassed and heated to 110 °C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (25 mL) and water (25 mL), the layers separated and aqueous extracted with EtOAc (25 mL). The combined organics were
20 washed with brine (25 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-20% MeOH in DCM) to give the *title compound* (69 mg, 59 %) as a dark brown glass.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol-*d*₄) δ 8.95 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 2H), 8.37 (d, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (d, *J* = 11.2 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (t, *J* = 75 Hz, 1H), 6.88 (t, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.40 – 6.26 (m, 2H), 4.89 – 4.73 (m, 2H) 3.45 – 3.32 (m, 1H), 2.21 (d, *J* = 10.5 Hz, 1H), 1.73 (s, 6H),
25 0.91 (s, 9H), -0.01 (s, 6H).

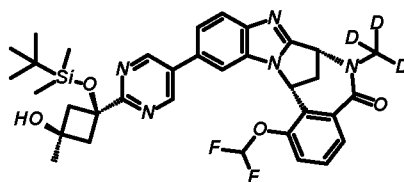
LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 582 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.39 minutes.

LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) 582 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.48 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 159

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-11-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 110* (2.01 g, 5.12 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (18 mL) was added *bis*-(pinacolato)diboron (1.97 g, 7.8 mmol), potassium acetate, (1.5 g, 15.1 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (197 mg, 0.15 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (242 mg, 0.25 mmol). The reaction mixture was degassed for 10 minutes before heating to 140°C in the microwave for 3 hours. Water and EtOAc was added to the reaction mixture and the aqueous phase extracted with further EtOAc. The combined organic layers were evaporated to give a crude residue which was purified by column chromatography on silica (eluent Hexane : EtOAc gradient from 0 to 100% followed by DCM : MeOH to 10% MeOH) to provide the *title compound* as a white solid (2.2 g, 89% yield). LC/MS: *Method 3* RT 2.27 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 485$.

INTERMEDIATE 160

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(cis-1-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}-3-hydroxy-3-methylcyclobutyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

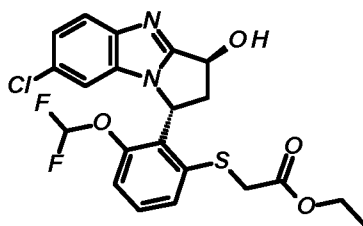
Intermediate 159 (401 mg, 0.83 mmol) and *Intermediate 79* (403 mg, 1.08 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) were degassed, 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (35 mg, 0.043 mmol) and K_3PO_4 (282 mg, 1.33 mmol) were added and reaction mixture degassed and then heated at 110 °C for 18 hours, or until LCMS analysis showed the reaction to be completed. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, partitioned between EtOAc (20 mL)

and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with further EtOAc (3 x 25 mL). The combined organics were dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane, followed by 0-15 % MeOH in DCM) to give the *title compound* (221 mg, 41 %) as a yellow foam.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.12 (s, 2H), 8.27 (dd, *J* = 5.9, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.69 (t, *J* = 73.6 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.52 – 7.44 (m, 2H), 6.31 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 5.03 (s, 1H), 3.58 – 3.45 (m, 1H), 3.10 – 3.02 (m, 1H), 2.84 (d, *J* = 13.6 Hz, 1H), 2.56 – 2.45 (m, 2H), 2.48 – 2.40 (m, 1H), 0.93 (s, 3H), 0.80 (s, 6H), -0.19 (d, *J* = 1.4 Hz, 9H).

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 651 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.51 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 161

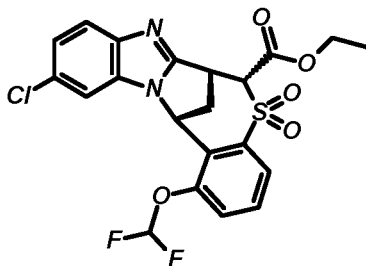


Ethyl 2-[2-[(1*R*,3*S*)-7-chloro-3-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]sulfanylacetate

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 38* (2.02 g, 4.7 mmol), *N,N*-di-isopropylethylamine (1.63 mL, 9.31 mmol), *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (213 mg, 0.23 mmol), 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (275 mg, 0.47 mmol) and ethyl thioglycolate (980 mg, 7.99 mmol) by the method of *Intermediate 136*. Crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 20-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (1.76 g, 80 %) as a yellow solid.

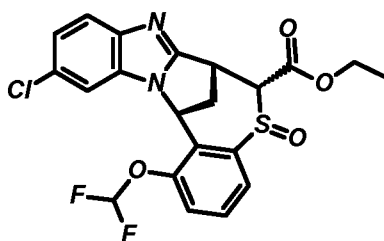
LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 469 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.08 minutes.

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 469 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.05 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 162

Ethyl (7*S*,14*R*)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate 5,5-dioxide

5

INTERMEDIATE 163

Ethyl (7*R*,14*S*)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate 5-oxide

- 10 To a solution of *Example 115* (150 mg, 0.33 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) was added 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (149 mg, 0.66 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, after which time the reaction mixture was partitioned between DCM (25 mL) and water (25 mL), layers separated and organics washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution. The aqueous phase was extracted with
- 15 DCM (20 mL), the combined organics filtered through a phase separator and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-60% EtOAc in DCM) and freeze dried from acetonitrile/water to give *Intermediate 162* (65 mg, 40 %) as an off-white solid and *Intermediate 163* (47 mg, 30 %) as a white solid.

20 *Intermediate 162*

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES⁺) 483 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.12 minutes (minor diastereoisomer) and 2.26 minutes (major diastereoisomer)

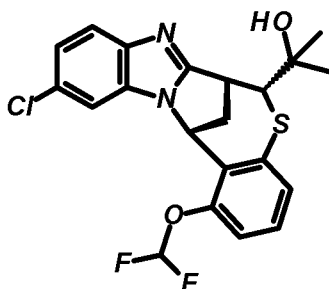
LCMS: *Method 4* (ES⁺) 483 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.09 minutes (minor diastereoisomer) and 2.26 minutes (Major diastereoisomer).

25 *Intermediate 163*

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 467 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.22 minutes (major diastereoisomer)

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 467 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.20 minutes (Major diastereoisomer).

INTERMEDIATE 164



5

2-[(7S,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-6-yl]propan-2-ol

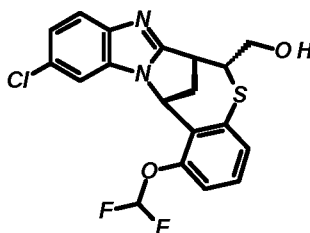
To a solution of *Example 115* (98 mg, 0.22 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at 0 °C was added methylmagnesium bromide (3M in diethylether, 0.16 mL, 0.48 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 18 hours. After this time the reaction was quenched with methanol, concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (50 mL), the layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL), the combined organics were washed with brine (60 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-20% MeOH in DCM) and freeze drying from acetonitrile/water gave the *title compound* (28 mg, 29 %).

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 437 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.44 minutes.

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 437 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.38 minutes.

20

INTERMEDIATE 165



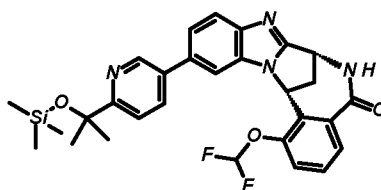
[(7S,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-6-yl]methanol

To a solution of *Example 115* (88 mg, 0.15 mmol) in THF (1.5 mL) at -10 °C was added lithium aluminium hydride (2M solution in THF, 0.1 mL, 0.20 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred below 0 °C for 1 hour after which time the reaction was quenched with a few drops of 2 M HCl, stirred and then basified with 10 % NaOH (aq) (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (4 x 25 mL). The combined organic phases were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography (SiO₂, 50-100% EtOAc in DCM, followed by 0-20 % MeOH in EtOAc) and freeze drying from acetonitrile/water gave the *title compound* (35 mg, 57 %) as a white solid.

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 409 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.18 minutes (major diastereoisomer) and 2.22 minutes (minor diastereoisomer)

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 409 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.14 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 166



(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-(trimethylsilyloxy)propan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (750 mg, 2.00 mmol), 6-(2-(trimethylsilyloxy)propan-2-yl)pyridine-3-boronic acid pinacol ester (1.41 g, 4.00 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (94 mg, 0.1 mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (91 mg, 0.24 mmol, 97 mass%) were added to a round bottom flask, evacuated & refilled with nitrogen and 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) added followed by potassium phosphate (1.27 g, 6.00 mmol) in water (1 mL). The mixture was degassed, placed under nitrogen and heated to 105 °C overnight. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water, the organic layer dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by chromatography, (EtOAc to 15% MeOH gradient). The product fractions were concentrated *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* as an off-white solid, (1.05 g, 96% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.61 minutes, m/z 549.

INTERMEDIATE 167

tert-Butyl 3-(5-bromo-2-pyridyl)-3-hydroxy-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

2,5-dibromopyridine (2.00 g, 8.27 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (40 mL), cooled to -78°C and *n*-butyllithium (7.1 mL, 9.9 mmol, 1.40 M) solution in *n*-hexane added

dropwise and stirred for 10 minutes before the addition of *N*-BOC-3-pyrrolidinone (1.61 g, 8.69 mmol) in toluene (3 mL). The mixture was stirred at -60°C for 1 hour, quenched with methanol (2 mL) and partitioned between EtOAc and saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution. The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to yield a crude residue. Purification by chromatography (silica, 0 to 60% EtOAc gradient in *iso*-hexane) gave the *title compound* as an off-white solid (1.05 g, 3.06 mmol, 37% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.65 (dd, *J* = 2.5, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 8.07 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 5.76 (s, 1H), 3.63 (t, *J* = 11.3 Hz, 1H), 3.56 – 3.37 (m, 4H), 2.43 – 2.21 (m, 1H), 1.98 – 1.86 (m, 1H), 1.41 (s, 9H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.57 minutes, *m/z* 341/343 (-ve ion).

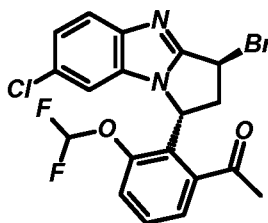
INTERMEDIATE 168

Methyl *N*-[1-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-1-methyl-ethyl]carbamate

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 2-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-amine (2 g, 9.25 mmol) in dichloromethane (50 mL) was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (2.2 equiv., 20.3 mmol) followed by methyl chloroformate (1 equiv., 9.25 mmol) and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The dichloromethane solution was extracted with 2M HCl (x2) washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and the solvents removed *in vacuo* to give 2.6g of a pale reddish solid which was used without further purification.

25 LCMS *Method 3* RT = 1.15 minutes

INTERMEDIATE 169



30 1-[2-[(1*R*,3*S*)-3-bromo-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-

(difluoro methoxy)phenyl]ethanone

Intermediate 181 (58.0 mg, 0.148 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (43.0 mg, 0.162 mmol) were dissolved in DCM (2 mL), and at 0°C was added carbon tetrabromide (54.0 mg, 0.163 mmol). The reaction mixture was warmed up to ambient temperature and stirred for 3 hours, partitioned between water and DCM, and the organics, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (0%-5% MeOH in DCM) to afford the *title compound* (74 mg, 77%). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 455/457, retention time 2.18 minutes.

10

INTERMEDIATE 170

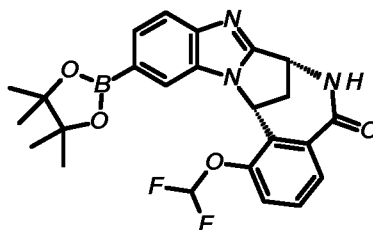
2-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-N,N-dimethyl-propan-2-amine

To a solution of 1-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)-1-methylethylamine (500 mg, 2.20 mmol) in THF (15 mL) was added sodium hydride (97 mg, 2.43 mmol) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 15 min before the addition of iodomethane (0.17 mL, 2.64 mmol) dropwise. The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 mins before warming to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. Iodomethane (0.165 mL, 2.64 mmol) was added and stirred for additional hour before being quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution and extracted with DCM (3 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography (0-5% MeOH in DCM) to give the *title compound* (120 mg, 22%). LC/MS: *Method 3* retention time 1.23 minutes.

15

20

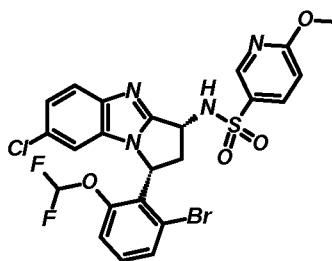
INTERMEDIATE 171



25 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (150 mg, 0.40 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (1.5 mL) was added to bis(pinacolato)diboron (150 mg, 0.59 mmol), potassium acetate, (117 mg, 1.19 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (15 mg, 0.040 mmol) and

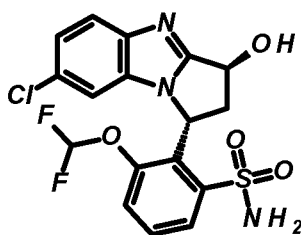
tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (19 mg, 0.02 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was degassed for 10 minutes before heating to 140°C in the microwave for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water and extracted with further EtOAc (x3). The combined organic phases were filtered through a phase separator and the solvents removed *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* which was used without further purification. LC/MS: *Method 3* RT 2.09 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 468$.

INTERMEDIATE 172

10 *N*-[*(1R,3R)*-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-yl]-6-methoxy-pyridine-3-sulfonamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 40* (500 mg, 1.17 mmol) and *N,N*-di-*isopropylethylamine* (0.24 mL, 1.4 mmol, 180 mg) in dichloromethane (12 mL) was added 6-methoxypyridine-3-sulfonyl chloride (325 mg, 1.52 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours before the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (600 mg, 86%) as a dark beige solid. LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 3*: 600/602 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.4 minutes

20

INTERMEDIATE 173

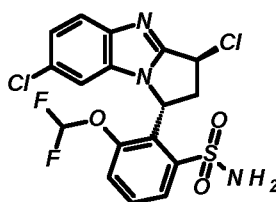
2-[(*1R,3S*)-7-chloro-3-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)benzenesulfonamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 136* (1.0 g, 1.67 mmol) in dimethyl sulfoxide (2.8 mL), sodium ethoxide solution (3M in EtOH, 1.13 mL, 3.3 mmol) was added. The reaction

25

mixture was stirred for 10 minutes before additional sodium ethoxide solution (3M in ethanol, 1.13 mL, 3.3 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 5 minutes. Hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acid (1.0 g, 8.58 mmol,) and sodium acetate (550 mg, 6.70 mmol) in 2 mL of water were added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. EtOAc and water were added to the reaction mixture and the two phases were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) then DCM:MeOH (0 to 20%) as eluent, yielding 300 mg (42%) of the *title compound* as a pale yellow solid. LCMS Method 3: RT 1.57 min, $[M-H]^+ = 430/432$.

INTERMEDIATE 174



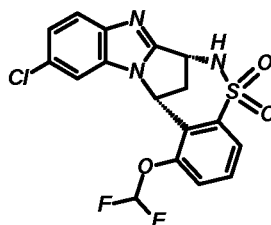
15

2-[(1R,3S)-3,7-dichloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)benzenesulfonamide

To a solution of *Intermediate 173* (130 mg, 0.30 mmol) in THF (3 mL), DMAP (4 mg, 0.033 mmol) and *N,N*-di-isopropylethylamine (0.04 mL, 0.39 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C before methanesulfonyl chloride (47 μ L, 0.61 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour 30 minutes. Sodium hydride (18 mg, 0.45 mmol) was added at 0 °C and stirred for 1 hour before the mixture was heated to reflux overnight. The reaction was quenched by the addition of water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, the *title compound* was obtained as a mixture of diastereoisomers which were separated by Achiral SFC purification, yielding 14 mg (11% yield) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS Method 3: RT 1.63 min, $[M-H]^+ = 448/450$.

30

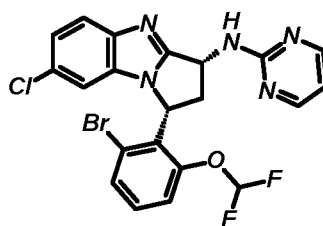
INTERMEDIATE 175



(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocine 5,5-dioxide

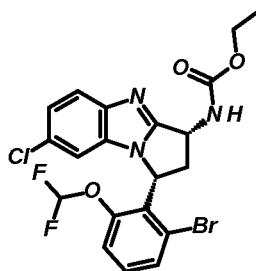
To a solution of *Intermediate 174* (14 mg, 0.031 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (0.6 mL) was added sodium hydride (60 mass %, 1.87 mg, 0.047 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated at 80 °C for 1 hour. Water and EtOAc were added and the two phase were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers were washed with brine and filtered through a phase separator. The solvent was evaporated, yielding 10 mg (78% yield) of the *title compound* as a green solid. LCMS
 10 *Method 3*: RT 1.70 min, $[M-H]^+ = 412/414$

INTERMEDIATE 176



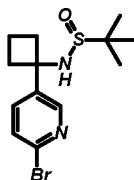
15 (1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-N-pyrimidin-2-yl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-amine

To a solution of *Intermediate 40* (600 mg, 1.40 mmol) and 2-bromopyrimidine (334 mg, 2.10 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (2.8 mL) was added *N,N*-di-*isopropylethylamine*.
 20 The reaction mixture was heated at 80 °C for 4 hours and then at 110 °C overnight. Water and EtOAc were added and the reaction mixture was extracted with further ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was filtered through a phase separator and the solvent evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) then DCM:MeOH (0 to 20%) as eluent, yielding
 25 205 mg (29% yield) of the *title compound* as a pale yellow solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.24 min, $[M-H]^+ = 506/508$.

INTERMEDIATE 177

Ethyl-N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-bromo-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-chloro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]carbamate

- 5 To a solution of *Intermediate 40* (400 mg, 0.93 mmol,) in dichloromethane (4.6 mL). N,N-diisopropylethylamine (0.24 mL, 1.4 mmol) followed by ethyl chloroformate (116 μ L, 1.21 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (350 mg, 75% yield) as a pale yellow solid.
- 10 LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 3*: 500/502 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.23 minutes.

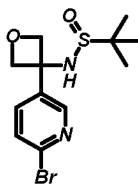
INTERMEDIATE 178

N-[1-(5-bromo-2-pyridyl)cyclobutyl]-2-methyl-propane-2-sulfinamide

- 15 2,5-dibromopyridine (1.4 g, 5.8 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (15 mL) and the reaction mixture was cooled to -60°C after which time n-butyllithium (4 mL, 6.4 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred at this temperature for 10 minutes. N-cyclobutylidene-2-methyl-propane-2-sulfinamide (1 g, 5.77 mmol) in 1 mL of toluene was added to the reaction mixture and stirred at -60°C for 15 minutes. A saturated
- 20 solution of NH₄Cl aq. was added and the reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers was washed with brine and filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (1.25 g, 65% yield) as a colourless oil. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.64 (dd, J =
- 25 2.4, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (dd, J = 8.4, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (dd, J = 8.5, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 4.31 (s,

1H), 2.72 – 2.57 (m, 3H), 2.63 – 2.44 (m, 1H), 2.10 (ddt, J = 18.7, 9.0, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 1.96 – 1.75 (m, 1H), 1.22 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 179



5 N-[3-(5-bromo-2-pyridyl)oxetan-3-yl]-2-methyl-propane-2-sulfinamide

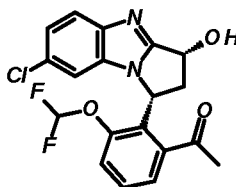
2,5-dibromopyridine (500 mg, 2.07 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (5 mL) and the reaction mixture was cooled to -60°C before n-butyllithium (1.4 mL, 2.2 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture stirred for 10 minutes. 2-methyl-N-(oxetan-3-ylidene)propane-2-sulfinamide (420 mg, 2.2 mmol) in 0.5 mL of toluene was added and the reaction mixture stirred at -60°C for 15 minutes. A saturated solution of aqueous NH₄Cl was added and the reaction mixture extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers washed with brine, filtered through a phase separator and the solvent evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) to give the *title compound* (550 mg, 80% yield) as a colourless oil. LC/MS: RT 1.35 mins (pH 10), [M+H]⁺ = 333/335. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, Chloroform-d) δ 8.63 (dd, J = 2.4, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.93 (dd, J = 8.5, 2.3 Hz, 1H), 7.71 (dd, J = 8.5, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 5.41 (s, 1H), 5.33 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.05 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.94 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.84 (dd, J = 7.0, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 1.28 (s, 9H).

20

INTERMEDIATE 180

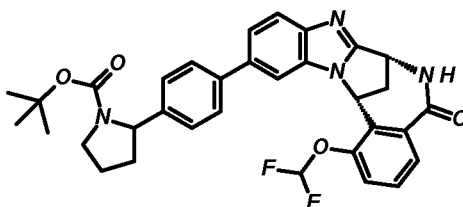
5-(4-bromophenyl)-2,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazole

To a solution of 1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-nitropropene (750 mg, 3.09 mmol), acetamidine hydrochloride (313 mg, 3.31 mmol) and potassium carbonate (421 mg, 3.015 mmol) in ethanol (12 mL) was added indium (III) chloride (33 mg, 0.149 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred at 70°C overnight. Ethanol was evaporated and the crude reaction mixture was diluted with water (2 mL), and extracted with DCM. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to give a yellow solid. The residue was purified by column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate) to afford the *title compound* (270 mg, 35%) as a pale yellow solid. LC/MS Method 3: RT 1.62 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 251/253.

INTERMEDIATE 181

1-[2-[(1*R*,3*R*)-7-chloro-3-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]ethanone

Intermediate 60 (1.50 g, 3.49 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (20 mL), and tributyl(1-ethoxyvinyl)tin (2.53 mL, 7.67 mmol) and bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II) dichloride (250 mg, 0.36 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ 3 times before heating at 105°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aqueous KF solution and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organics were, dried (sodium sulphate) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude compound was purified by column chromatography eluting with 0-10% MeOH:DCM to give the enol ether intermediate. The intermediate was dissolved in THF/1*N* HCl (1:1, 40 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 1 hour before neutralisation with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and extraction with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The organics were combined and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired methyl ketone (1.22 g, 3.10 mmol, 89%). LC/MS: ESI MH⁺ 393, retention time 1.31 minutes *Method 3*.

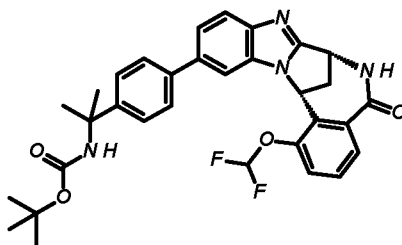
INTERMEDIATE 182

tert-butyl 2-{4-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]phenyl}pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a solution of *Example 11* (500 mg, 1.33 mmol) and *tert*-butyl 2-(4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)phenyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate (768 mg, 2.00 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) was added K₃PO₄ (566 mg, 2.67 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (52 mg, 0.14 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (108 mg, 0.11 mmol) with several drops of

water. The reaction mixture was degassed and flushed with nitrogen and then heated at 120 degrees in a microwave for 6 hours. The cooled reaction was diluted with H₂O (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc x 3. The combined organics were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography, firstly with EtOAc in DCM (0 to 100%) and then with 0-10% MeOH/DCM gave the *title compound* (575 mg, 66%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.40 minutes, m/z 487.2 (-BOC).

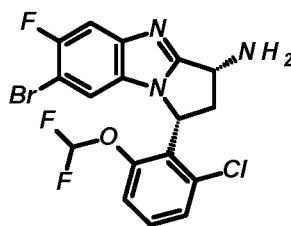
INTERMEDIATE 182(a)



tert-Butyl (2-{4-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]phenyl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

The *title compound* can be prepared from *Intermediate 171* (0.35 g, 0.93 mmol, 1eq) and (*tert*-butyl 2-(4-bromophenyl)propan-2-ylcarbamate (1eq) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 137*. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM followed by 0 to 10% MeOH in DCM) afforded the *title compound* as a brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.32 minutes, m/z 575.2

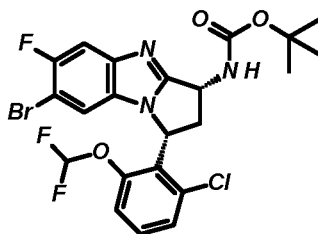
INTERMEDIATE 183



(1*R*,3*R*)-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-bromo-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]benzimidazol-3-amine

The *title compound* may be prepared from *Intermediate 10* in accordance with the Method described for *Intermediate 40*.

INTERMEDIATE 184

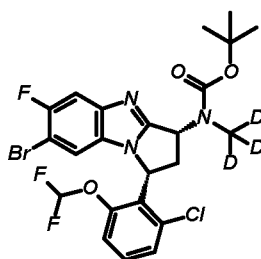


tert-butyl {(1R,3R)-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-7-bromo-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl} carbamate

The *title compound* may be prepared from *Intermediate 183* in accordance with the

5 Method described for *Intermediate 42*.

INTERMEDIATE 185



tert-butyl N-[(1R,3R)-7-bromo-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]-N-(trideuteriomethyl)carbamate

10

Intermediate 184 (300 mg, 0.549 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL).

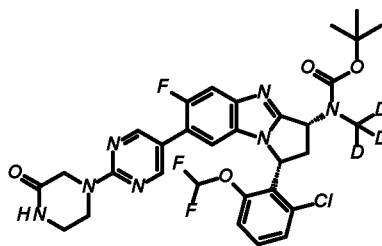
Potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (0.6 mL, 0.6 mmol) was added dropwise at -78 degree and stirred for 30 minutes before the addition of iodomethane-d₃ (0.06 mL, 1 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 10 minutes before being left in an ice-water bath

15

for 2 hours followed by 1 hour at room temperature. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride solution and extracted with EtOAc, the organics dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography, eluting with 0%-10% MeOH in DCM, to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (320 mg, 99%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.75 minutes, m/z 563.0/565.0

20

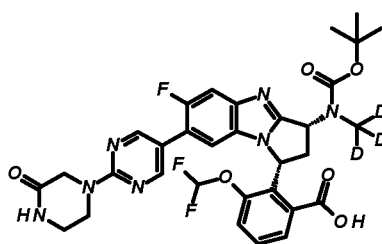
25

INTERMEDIATE 186

5 tert-butyl-N-[(1R,3R)-1-[2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-3-yl]-N-trideuteriomethyl) carbamate

Intermediate 185 (310 mg, 0.49 mmol), [2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid (0.55mmol, 1.1eq), potassium carbonate (115 mg, 0.83 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (7 mg, 0.03 mmol) and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (19 mg, 0.033 mmol) were dissolved in DMSO (5 mL, 70 mmol) and a drop of water added. The mixture was degassed thoroughly and nitrogen flushed. The mixture was heated for 1 hour in a microwave at 110°C. The mixture was separated between EtOAc and brine (25 mL of each) and the aqueous extracted with EtOAc (25 mL) and the combined organics washed with 3 x 20 mL of brine, dried (phase separator) - and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography on silica using a gradient EtOAc in DCM (0-100%) and then 1 to 15% MeOH in EtOAc to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (210 mg, 64%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.28 minutes, m/z 661.2.

20

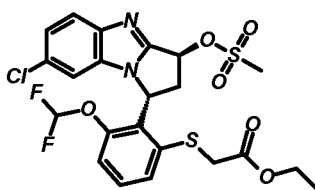
INTERMEDIATE 187

25 2-[(1R,3R)-3-[tert-butoxycarbonyl(trideuteriomethyl)amino]-6-fluoro-7-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy) benzoic acid

Into a 10mL glass vial was placed *Intermediate 186* (210 mg, 0.32 mmol), potassium carbonate (67 mg, 0.48 mmol), PdCl₂(dcbpp) (15 mg, 0.025 mmol), dimethyl sulfoxide (5

mL), water (0.1 mL, 6 mmol) and the vial equipped with a stirring bar was placed into a high pressure reactor. The headspace of the reactor was vacuum purge cycled with CO at 14psi (x 3) and then left with a headspace pressure of 5Bar. The vessel was heated to 105°C, (heating block temp) for a period of 24 hrs. The reaction mixture was separated
5 between ethyl acetate and water (20mL of each) and the organic layer was extracted with a further 2 x 20 mL of 10% sodium carbonate solution. The combined aqueous layers were then treated with citric acid until no longer basic. The solution was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL) and these organics washed with 4 x 20 mL of water. The organics were dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the *title*
10 *compound* as a white solid ~90% pure. (120 mg, 56%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.51 minutes, m/z 671.2

INTERMEDIATE 188



15

Ethyl 2-[2-[(1R,3S)-7-chloro-3-methylsulfonyloxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-a]benzimidazol-1-yl]-3-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl]sulfanylacetate

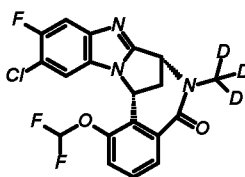
To a solution of *Intermediate 161* (1.35 g, 2.88 mmol) in DCM (30 mL) at 0 °C was added 4-dimethylaminopyridine (40 mg, 0.33 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (1.01
20 mL, 5.77 mmol) and methane sulfonyl chloride (335 µL, 4.32 mmol) and stirred for 45 minutes. After this time the reaction mixture was partitioned between DCM (40 mL) and water (50 mL), layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). Combined organics were washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (100 mL), dried (phase separator) and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* as
25 orange brown solid (1.57 g, quantitative yield). The crude product was progressed to the next synthetic step without further purification.

30

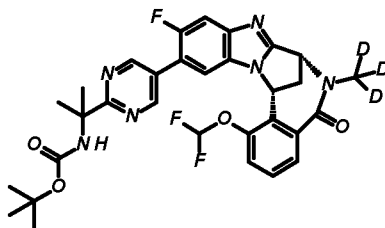
INTERMEDIATE 189

tert-Butyl N-[1-methyl-1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]ethyl]carbamate

- Bis(pinacolato)diboron (4.55 g, 17.6 mmol), *Intermediate 114* (3.70 g, 11.7 mmol),
5 potassium acetate (4.64 g, 46.8 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-
palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (1000 mg, 1.22 mmol) and 1,4-dioxane
(35 mL) were placed in a RBF and then degassed. The mixture was then heated at 105°C
for 1 hour, LCMS showed the completion of the reaction. The reaction mixture was
diluted with H₂O and extracted with EtOAc (x3), and the organics combined, dried
10 (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude material was used in the
subsequent Suzuki coupling (3.6g, 80%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.04 minutes, *m/z* 378.

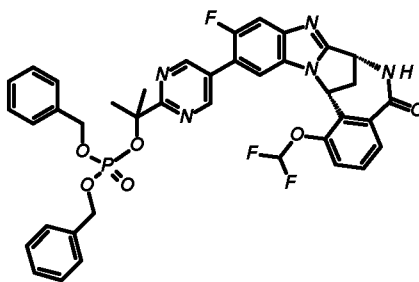
INTERMEDIATE 190

- 15 (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-(trideutero)methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one
Example 10 (650 mg, 1.65 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (15 mL, 184 mmol)
and potassium *bis*(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.8 mL, 1.8 mmol, 1 mol/L in TNF) was added
dropwise at -78 °C and stirred for 30 minutes before the addition of iodomethane-d³ (0.16
20 mL, 2.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 10 minutes before being
left in an ice-water bath for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was quenched with aqueous
saturated NH₄Cl solution and extracted with EtOAc (x3), the combined organics were
dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by
column chromatography eluting with 0%-10% MeOH/DCM to afford the *title compound*
25 (570 mg, 84%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.27 (dd, J = 5.3, 4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.93 –
7.26 (m, 5H), 6.24 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (dt, J = 14.3, 7.3 Hz,
1H), 2.81 (d, J = 13.8 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.00 minutes, *m/z* 411.0

INTERMEDIATE 191

tert-Butyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-(trideutero)methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

Intermediate 190 (570 mg, 1.38 mmol), Intermediate 189 (1.8 g, 4.0 mmol), potassium phosphate tribasic (1.05 g, 4.85 mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (65 mg, 0.17 mmol) were placed in a microwave vial and suspended in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ 3 times, followed by the addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (130 mg, 0.13 mmol) and three drops of water. The reaction mixture was heated at 140°C for 2 hours in a microwave. The reaction cooled to room temperature and quenched with H₂O (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 25 mL). The combined organics were dried over (Na₂SO₄), filtered and the solvents removed *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica eluting with 0 to 20% MeOH in EtOAc to afford the *title compound* (420 mg, 50%). LC/MS Method 3: RT 2.19 minutes, *m/z* 612.2

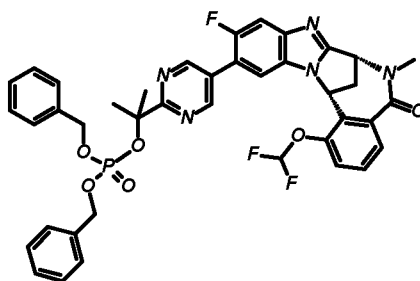
INTERMEDIATE 192

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl, di-O-benzyl phosphate.

Example 1 (26.0 g, 52.5 mmol) was suspended in dichloromethane (450 mL), placed under nitrogen and 5-methyl-1*H*-tetrazole (8.38 g, 99.7 mmol) was added and the mixture cooled to 5°C in an ice bath, evacuated and refilled with nitrogen twice then stirred for 5

minutes before adding dibenzyl *N,N*-di-*isopropyl*phosphoramidite (28.2 mL, 83.9 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 5 minutes before warming to room temperature and stirred for one further hour. The mixture was cooled to 0°C in an ice bath then hydrogen peroxide solution (5.96 mL, 105 mmol, 50.0% w/w in water) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour and monitored by LCMS until oxidation was complete. The mixture was washed with 0.25M sodium metabisulphite solution (250 mL), then saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (150 mL) and saturated brine (200 mL). The organic phase was dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to a pale yellow gum. The crude product was purified by chromatography on silica (EtOAc to 15% MeOH in EtOAc) to give a crude residue which was azeotroped with toluene (x3) to give the *title compound* as a white solid, (31.0g, 78%). ¹H NMR (d⁶-DMSO, 300 MHz) δ: 1.87 (s, 6 H), 2.75 (d, 1H, J=13.4 Hz), 3.50 (m, 1H), 4.92 (t, 1H, J=6.8 Hz), 5.02-5.05 (m, 4H), 6.36 (d, 1H, J=7.1 Hz), 7.25 (m, 10 H), 7.55 (m, 3H), 7.69 (d, 1H, J=11.5 Hz), 8.24 (dd, 1H, J=5.3, 4.2 Hz), 8.99 (s, 2H), 9.16 (d, 1H, J= 6.8 Hz). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.49 minutes, *m/z* 756.

INTERMEDIATE 193

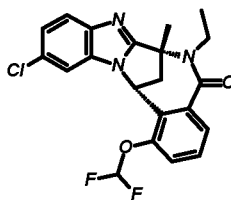


2-{{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]}pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl, di-*O*-benzyl phosphate.

To a solution of *Intermediate 192* (4.00 g, 5.29 mmol) in THF (70 mL) was added a solution of KHMDS in THF (1M, 5.60 mL, 5.60 mmol) dropwise at -78 °C and the mixture was stirred for 45 minutes before the addition of iodomethane (0.37 mL, 5.90 mmol). The reaction mixture was warmed to 0 °C and stirred for 2.5 hours before the reaction completed. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl solution and extracted with EtOAc (x3), the combined organics were dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography eluting with

0-10% MeOH in EtOAc gave the *title compound* (3.20 g, 4.2 mmol, 79%). LC/MS
Method 3: ES⁺ (M+H)⁺ 770, retention time 2.67 minutes.

INTERMEDIATE 194



5

(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 148 (100 mg, 0.25 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (2.5 mL). at the reaction was cooled to 0°C and sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil) (12 mg, 0.30 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 35 minutes. Iodomethane (0.27 mL, 3.34 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched by addition of water (2 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted by EtOAc (3 x 150 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified over silica gel (heptane / AcOEt 1/1), yielding to 35 mg (32%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS (*Method 3* ES⁺): RT 2.60 min, [M+H]⁺ 418.

15

INTERMEDIATE 195

2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde

N,N-Di-*isopropylamine* (38.4 ml, 271 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of *n*-butyllithium (1.6 M, 169 ml, 271 mmol) in THF (180 ml) at 0°C and the reaction mixture was stirred and allowed to warm to room temperature over 30 mins. The LDA solution was then added drop wise over 10 minutes to a solution of 1-chloro-3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzene (50 g, 246 mmol) in THF (500 ml) at -70°C and the resulting mixture was stirred at -70°C for 30 minutes. Finally *N,N*-dimethylformamide (23 ml, 296 mmol) was added dropwise and the resultant mixture stirred at -70°C for 30 minutes.

25

The reaction was quenched at -70°C by addition of NH₄Cl (saturated aqueous solution) to pH 7-8 and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 75 ml). The combined

organic phases were washed with water (100 ml), brine (100 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the *title compound* (55 g, 99% yield).

LCMS (*Method 16*, ES+) RT 1.32 min., 224 [M+H]⁺.

5

INTERMEDIATE 196

(*S,E*)-*N*-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)benzylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

(*S*)-2-Methylpropane-2-sulfinamide (49.9g, 411 mmol), potassium hydrogen phosphate (196 g, 1.12 mol) and potassium phosphate (238.2 g, 1.12 mol) were added to a solution of *Intermediate 195* (84 g, 374 mmol) in THF (2000 ml) at room temperature. The
10 resulting reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature over 20 hours, filtered and the solid was washed with EtOAc (3 x 200 ml). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to isolate the *title compound* (123 g).

LCMS (*Method 16*, ES+) RT 1.45 min., 328 [M+H]⁺.

15

INTERMEDIATE 197

Ethyl (*R*)-3-(((*S*)-*tert*-butylsulfinyl)amino)-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-propanoate

A solution of ethyl bromoacetate (106.1 ml, 938.2 mmol) in THF (100 ml) was added dropwise over 2 hours to a solution of zinc (245.5 g, 3.75 mol) and cuprous chloride (44.6
20 g, 450 mmol) in THF (800 ml) at 20-25°C (NB: prior to this addition, the solution of Zn and CuCl was heated at 70°C over 30mins and cooled down to room temperature). Once the addition was complete the reaction mixture was warmed to 50°C over 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and a solution of *Intermediate 196* (123 g, 375.29 mmol) in THF (500 ml) was added dropwise over 60mins. The resulting reaction mixture
25 was warmed to room temperature over 20 hours and filtered over charcoal. The cake was washed with EtOAc (3 x 250 ml) and the combined filtrates were washed with water (500 ml), with 10% citric acid solution (1000 ml) and brine (500 ml). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give the *title compound* (155 g, 99% yield).

LCMS (*Method 16*, ES+) RT 1.36 min., 416 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 198

Ethyl (*R*)-3-amino-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)propanoate hydrochloride

4M Hydrochloric acid solution in 1,4-dioxane (326.1 ml, 1.3 mol) was added dropwise
5 over 30 mins to a solution of *Intermediate 197* (155 g, 372.7 mmol) in a mixture of
ethanol (107 ml) and diethyl ether (215 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture
was then stirred for 2 hours and the resulting suspension was filtered. The cake was
washed with Et₂O (3 x 250 ml), with pentane (250 ml) and dried under suction to yield
49g of the *title compound*. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to
10 provide a viscous residue. Et₂O was added to the residue, and the mixture was stirred over
20 hours. The resulting suspension was filtered and the isolated cake was washed with
Et₂O (3 x 250 ml), with pentane (250 ml), and dried to yield 70g of the *title compound* as
the hydrochloride salt. LCMS (*Method 16*, ES+) RT 0.59 min., 311 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 199

15 Ethyl (*R*)-3-((5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)-
phenyl)propanoate

1-Bromo-2,5-difluoro-4-nitrobenzene (30.2g, 126.7 mmol) was added to a solution of
ethyl *Intermediate 198* (49g, 140.8 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (200 ml) and *N,N*-
diisopropylamine (46.76 ml, 281.5 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was heated at
20 85°C over two hours and, once cooled to room temperature, was then concentrated under
reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc (500 ml), washed with
water (500 ml), 10% citric acid solution (2 x 500 ml) and brine (500 ml). The organic
phase was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced
pressure. The resulting crude was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with EtOAc/*n*-
25 Heptane (2/98) as eluent to provide the *title compound* (45 g, 60% yield).

LCMS (*Method 16*, ES+) RT 1.60 min., 531 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 200

(*R*)-3-((5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-
propanal

- Diisobutylaluminium hydride was added dropwise over 2 hours to a solution of *Intermediate 199* (10 g, 18.9 mmol) in THF (100 ml) at -70°C under argon. The reaction mixture was stirred over 2 hours at -70°C. The reaction was quenched at -70°C by addition of NH₄Cl (saturated aqueous solution) to pH = 6 and the resulting suspension was filtered over a charcoal pad washing with EtOAc (75 mL). The filtrate was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 75 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with water (100 ml), brine (100 ml), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with EtOAc/n-Heptane (1/4) as eluent to give the *title compound* (5.8g, 63% yield).
- 10 LCMS (*Method 17*, ES+) RT 4.83 min., 487 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 201

- (R)-N-((R,Z)-3-((5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)-phenyl)propylidene)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide
- (R)-2-Methylpropane-2-sulfinamide (1.47 g, 11.9 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 200* (5.8 g, 11.35 mmol) and titanium(IV) isopropoxide (3.36 ml, 11.35 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 ml) at room temperature. The reaction was heated at reflux for 20 hours.
- After cooling to room temperature the reaction was quenched by addition of brine (50 ml) and the resulting mixture was stirred for 30 mins. The suspension was filtered over a charcoal pad, washed with dichloromethane until the filtrate is colourless. The filtrate was washed with brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* (6.6 g, 99% yield).
- 20
- LCMS (*Method 18*, ES+) RT 5.31 min., 588 [M+H]⁺.

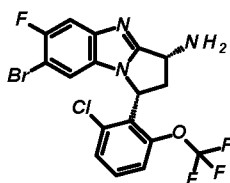
INTERMEDIATE 202

- (R)-N-((1R,3R)-3-((5-bromo-4-fluoro-2-nitrophenyl)amino)-3-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-1-cyanopropyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide
- Scandium(III) trifluoromethanesulfonate (1.30 g, 2.62 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 201* (7.7 g, 13.08 mmol) in dichloromethane (75ml) at room temperature followed by trimethylsilyl cyanide (3.44 ml, 26.16 mmol). The reaction mixture was then
- 25

stirred over 92 hours at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of water (100 ml) and the resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 50 ml). Combined organic phases were washed with brine (50 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the *title compound* (7.5 g, 93% yield).

LCMS (*Method 18*, ES+) RT 4.89 min., 615 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 203

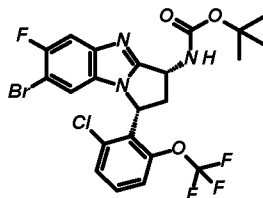


7-Bromo-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-amine

Stannous chloride (11.78 g, 60.9 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 202* (7.5 g, 12.18 mmol) in ethanol (75 ml). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux over 2 hours and water (40 ml) was then added. The resulting solution was heated to reflux for 16 hours.

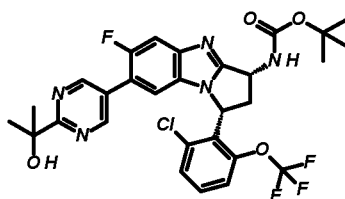
Once cooled to room temperature water (100 ml) and 2M Sodium hydroxide aqueous solution was added until pH = 9.0 while keeping the solution temperature below 30°C. The resulting suspension was filtered over a charcoal pad and washed through with dichloromethane (5x 50 ml). The filtrate was extracted with further dichloromethane (5x 50 ml). The combined organic phases were washed with brine (20 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the *title compound* as *cis/trans* mixture of isomers (4/1, 3.00 g, 53% yield).

LCMS (*Method 18*, ES+) RT 2.83 min., 464 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 204

tert-butyl ((1R,3R)-7-bromo-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-yl)carbamate

- 5 Di-*tert*-butyl carbonate (1.99 ml, 9.04 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 203* (3.00 g, 6.46 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was then stirred for 20 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with EtOAc/n-Heptane (1/4) as eluent to give the *title compound* (1.8g, 49% yield).
- 10 LCMS (*Method 19*, ES+) RT 2.51 min., 464 [M-BOC+H]⁺.

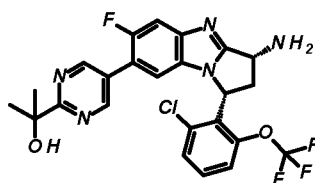
INTERMEDIATE 205

- 15 tert-Butyl ((1R,3R)-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-7-(2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-yl)carbamate
- 20 2-(5-(4,4,5,5-Tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol (0.26 g, 0.97 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 204* (0.50 g, 0.89 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (5 ml) under argon. Potassium carbonate (0.370 g, 2.66 mmol) was added to the solution and the reaction mixture was purged with argon prior.
- 20 *bis*-(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (0.023 g, 0.026 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was heated at 90°C for 2 hours and then cooled to room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of iced water and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2x 30 ml). The combined

organic phases were washed with brine (2x 20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 98/2) followed by SiO₂ flash chromatography with EtOAc/n-Heptane (3/7 to 1/1) as eluent to give the *title compound* (0.350 g, 64% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 1.38 min., 622 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 206



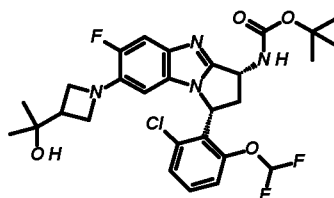
2-((5-((1R,3R)-3-amino-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-7-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-ol

2N Hydrochloric acid solution in diethyl ether (2.8 ml, 5.63mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 205* (0.35 g, 0.56 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature over 72 hours.

Water was added and the aqueous phase was treated with 2N sodium hydroxide aqueous solution until pH = 12. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x 50 ml) and then with EtOAc (2x 50 ml). The combined organic phases were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* (300mg).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.67 min., 522 [M+H]⁺.

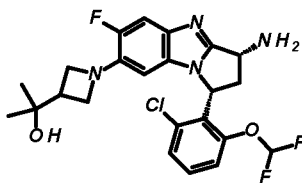
INTERMEDIATE 207



tert-Butyl ((1*R*,3*R*)-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-7-(3-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)azetidin-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]imidazol-3-yl)carbamate

- 2-(Azetidin-3-yl)propan-2-ol hydrochloride (0.208 g, 1.37 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.890 g, 2.74 mmol) were added to a solution of *Intermediate 184* (0.500 g, 0.91 mmol) in a mixture of toluene/DMF (99/1, 15ml). The resulting mixture was purged with argon. (R/S)-(+/-)-2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (0.018 g, 0.027 mmol) and *tris*(benzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (0.009 g, 0.009 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was then heated in a microwave at 100°C over 2 hours. As traces of the expected azetidinyll derivative were detected by LCMS, a second addition of all reagents [2-(azetidin-3-yl)propan-2-ol hydrochloride (0.208 g, 1.37 mmol), cesium carbonate (0.890 g, 2.74 mmol), (R/S)-(+/-)-2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (0.018 g, 0.027 mmol) and *tris*(benzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (0.009 g, 0.009 mmol)] was carried out. The reaction mixture was then heated in microwave at 100°C for a further 2 hours.
- Water (50 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x 50 ml). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 95/5) as eluent to give the *title compound* (0.249 g, 47% yield).
- LCMS (*Method 20*, ES⁺) RT 1.09 min., 581 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 208



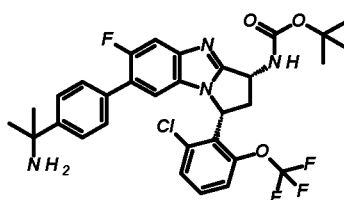
2-(1-((1*R*,3*R*)-3-amino-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]imidazol-7-yl)azetidin-3-yl)propan-2-ol

- Trifluoroacetic acid (0.33 ml, 4.29 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 207* (0.249 g, 0.428 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature over 24 hours.

Water (30 ml) was added and the aqueous phase was treated with 2N sodium hydroxide aqueous solution until pH = 12. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x 30 ml) and EtOAc (1x 30 ml). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the
 5 *title compound* (0.157 g, 76% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.64 min., 481 [M+H]⁺.

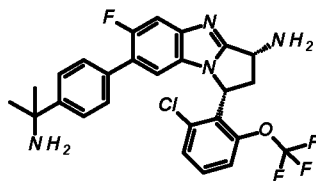
INTERMEDIATE 209



tert-butyl ((1*R*,3*R*)-7-(4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)-
 10 phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]imidazole-3-yl)carbamate

A solution of 2-(4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)phenyl)propan-2-amine in 1,4-dioxane (10 ml) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 204* (0.500 g, 0.885 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (40 ml) under argon. Sodium carbonate (0.188 g, 1.77 mmol) and water (1 ml) were added to the solution and purged with argon prior to addition of
 15 *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (0.021 g, 0.022 mmol) and tri-*tert*-butylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (0.026 g, 0.088 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was heated at 90°C for 3 hours and then cooled to room temperature over 15 hours. Water (30 ml) added and the resulting mixture extracted with EtOAc (2x 30 ml). The combined organic phases were washed with brine (2x 20 ml), dried over sodium
 20 sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 9/1) as eluent to give the *title compound* (0.250 g, 46% yield).

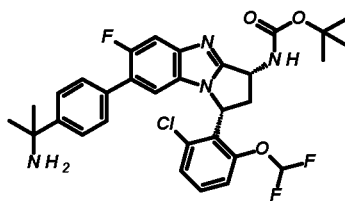
LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.91 min., 619 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 210

(1R,3R)-7-(4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-amine

- 5 2N Hydrochloric acid solution in diethyl ether (2.0 ml, 4.04 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 209* (0.250 g, 0.404 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 72 hours. Water (30 ml) was added and the aqueous phase was treated with 2N sodium hydroxide aqueous solution until to pH = 12. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x 50 ml) and then
- 10 with EtOAc (2x 50 ml). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the *title compound* (0.195 g, 93% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.45 min., 519 [M+H]⁺.

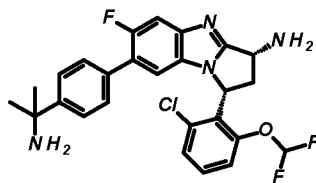
INTERMEDIATE 211

15

tert-butyl ((1R,3R)-7-(4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-yl)carbamate

- The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 184* (0.500 g, 0.91 mmol) in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Intermediate 209* after purification by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 95/5) as eluent to give (0.324 g, 59% yield).
- 20

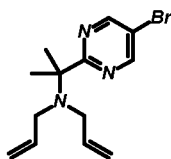
LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.86 min., 601 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 212

(1R,3R)-7-(4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazole-3-amine

- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate* (0.324 g, 0.54 mmol) in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Intermediate 210* to afford the *title compound* (0.240 g, 89% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.43 min., 501 [M+H]⁺.

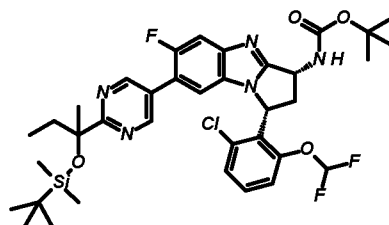
INTERMEDIATE 213

10

N,N-diallyl-2-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-amine

- To a mixture of 2-(5-bromopyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-amine (3.00 g, 13.9 mmol) and potassium carbonate (5.81 g, 41.6 mmol) in acetonitrile (50 mL) was added allyl bromide (3.56 g, 29.1 mmol) and the mixture heated to 50 °C for 4 hours. A further portion of allyl bromide (850 mg, 6.95 mmol) was added and the reaction allowed to stir at room temperature for 72 hours. The mixture was partitioned between diethyl ether (200 mL) and 2M HCl. The organic phase was further extracted with 2M HCl (x2) and the aqueous phase washed with diethylether (x2). The aqueous phase was cooled on ice and made basic with solid sodium hydroxide. The aqueous was then extracted with dichloromethane and the organic solvents dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and the volatiles removed *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* as a red oil, (3.40g, 83% yield). LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 2.63 minutes, 296/298 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 8.96 (s, 2H), 5.80-5.60 (m, 2H), 5.10-4.85 (m, 4H), 3.20-3.10 (m, 4H), 1.50 (s, 6H).
- 15
- 20

25

INTERMEDIATE 214

tert-butyl ((1*R*,3*R*)-7-(2-(2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)butan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*]imidazol-3-yl)carbamate

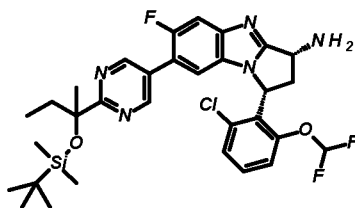
A solution of 2-(2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)butan-2-yl)-5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidine [prepared from 5-bromo-2-(2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)butan-2-yl)pyrimidine (0.500 g, 1.45 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (0.450 g, 1.74 mmol) potassium acetate (0.426 g, 4.34 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (0.037 g, 0.043 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 ml) at 95°C during 2 hours] in 1,4-dioxane (10 ml) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 184* (0.650 g, 1.19 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (40 ml) under argon. Sodium carbonate (0.253 g, 2.38 mmol), water (1 ml) were added and the suspension purged with argon. *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (0.029 g, 0.030 mmol) and *tri-tert*-butylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (0.035 g, 0.119 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was heated at 95°C for 3 hours before cooling to room temperature.

Water (30 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2x 30 ml). The combined organic phases were washed with brine (30 ml), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 98/2) as eluent to give a brown viscous oil. Purification by preparative HPLC provided the *title compound* (0.310 g, 36% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 1.98 min., 732 [M+H]⁺.

25

30

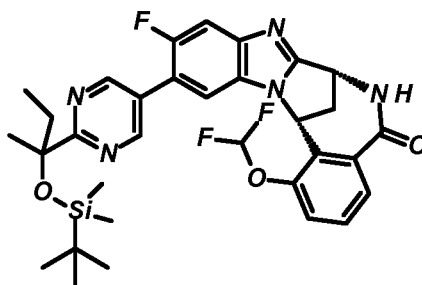
INTERMEDIATE 215

(1R,3R)-7-(2-(2-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)butan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-1-(2-chloro-6-(difluoromethoxy)phenyl)-6-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[d]pyrrolo[1,2-a]imidazol-3-
 5 amine

2N Hydrochloric acid solution in diethyl ether (1.9 ml, 3.82 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 214* (0.280 g, 0.382 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours.

Water (30 ml) was added and the aqueous phase was treated with 2N sodium hydroxide
 10 aqueous solution until pH = 12. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (2x 30 ml) and with EtOAc (1x 30 ml). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the *title compound* (0.200 g, 78% yield).

LCMS (*Method 16*, ES⁺) RT 1.34 min., 632 [M+H]⁺.

INTERMEDIATE 216

(7R,14R)-11-(2-(2-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)butan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzo[f]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-
 20 a][1,4]diazocin-5(14H)-one

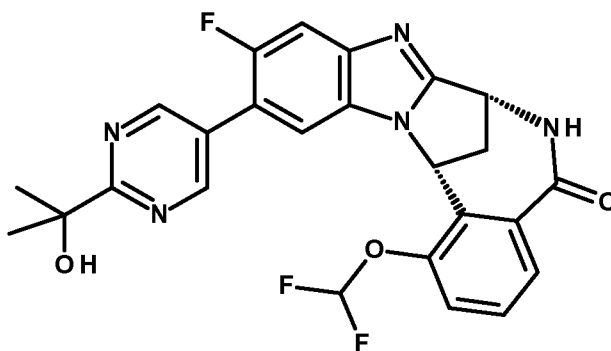
A 0.6M solution of phenol in anhydrous DMSO (0.63 ml, 0.38 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 215* (0.200 g, 0.32 mmol) in anhydrous DMSO (6 ml). Potassium carbonate (0.066 g, 0.47 mmol), dried 4Å molecular sieves (0.240 g), dichloro-[bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane]palladium(II) (0.019 g, 0.032 mmol) were added.

The reaction mixture was heated at 100°C under 3 bars of carbon monoxide over 24 hours.

EtOAc (100 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was washed with water (3x 100 ml), brine (100 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting crude residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (98/2 to 95/5) as eluent to afford the *title compound* (0.176 g, 89% yield) LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 1.84 min., 624 [M+H]⁺.

EXAMPLE 1

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

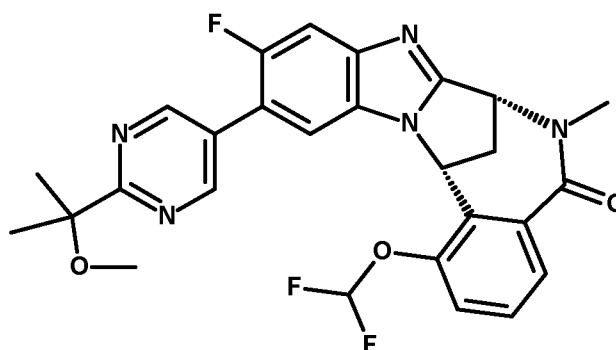


Intermediate 14 was dissolved with pTSA (2.092, 11.00 mmol, 5 eq) in methanol (60 mL) and the mixture was stirred overnight at r.t. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (200 mL) and a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (200 mL) was added. The aqueous layer was extracted by 3 x 50 mL of EtOAc and the combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The obtained residue was taken up in a minimum of EtOAc, triturated, and filtered off. The obtained precipitate was washed with EtOAc and dried to afford the title compound (1.6g, 76%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.89 (s, 2 H), 8.46 (d, *J* 8.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (m, 2 H), 7.48 (m, 2 H), 7.38 (m, 1 H), 6.84 (t, *J* 72.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.37 (d, *J* 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 5.00 (t, *J* 6.4 Hz, 1 H), 4.68 (s, 1 H), 3.51 (dt, *J* 13.4, 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 2.90 (d, *J* 13.3 Hz, 1 H), 1.67 (s, 6 H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.28 min, 496.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 2

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-methoxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



5

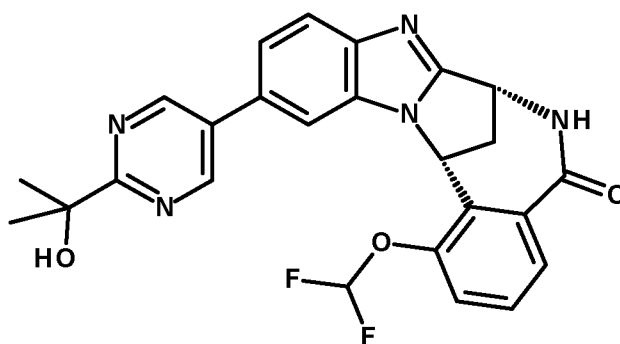
Example 1 (8 mg, 0.01615 mmol) was dissolved in 0.2 mL of dry THF. Sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil, 1.6 mg, 0.04037 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was heated at 65°C for 1.5 h. Methyl iodide (2.3 mg, 0.01615 mmol) was added at r.t. and the mixture stirred at r.t for 16h.

10 An excess of methyl iodide was then added to the mixture and stirred for 1h. Water was added, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, the combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo* to the *title compound* as an off white solid(3 mg, 35.7%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ ppm 8.93 (s, 2H), 8.51 (d, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (m, 2H),
 15 7.44 (t, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (d, *J* 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.84 (t, *J* 7.2 Hz, 1H), 6.28 (d, *J* 7.2 Hz, 1H), 4.98 (d, *J* 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.52 (s, 3H), 3.48 (m, 1H), 3.28 (s, 3H), 2.90 (d, *J* 13.6 Hz, 1H), 1.70 (s, 6H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.39 min, 524.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 3

20 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

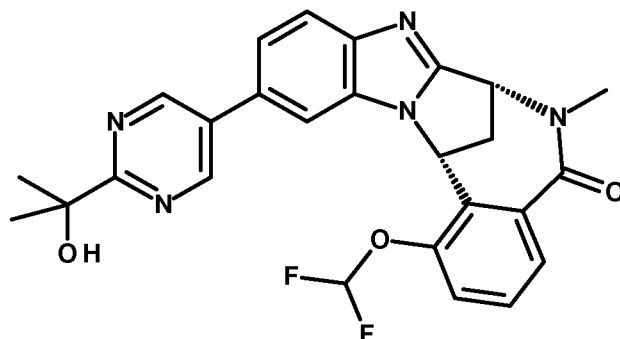


Intermediate 23 (525 mg, 0.8873 mmol) was dissolved in 60 mL of methanol and cooled to 0°C. pTSA (1g, 0.7031 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 16h. The mixture was cooled down to 0°C, pTSA (1g, 0.7031 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was heated at 60°C for 2h. The solvent was evaporated, the residue was taken up in dichloromethane and washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate. The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM, the combined layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in *vacuo*. The crude compound was trituated with EtOAc filtered, washed with a minimum of cold ethyl acetate and dried *in vacuo* to afford the *title compound* as a white solid (318 mg, 75%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ ppm 9.14 (d, *J* 6.9 Hz, 1H), 9.04 (s, 2H), 8.25 (dd, *J* 4.6 Hz, *J* 4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.86-7.50 (m, 6H), 6.38 (d *J* 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (s, 1H), 4.92 (t, *J* 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (m, 1H), 2.77 (d, *J* 13.3 Hz, 1H), 1.54 (s, 6H). LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺) RT 1.26 min, 478.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 4

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

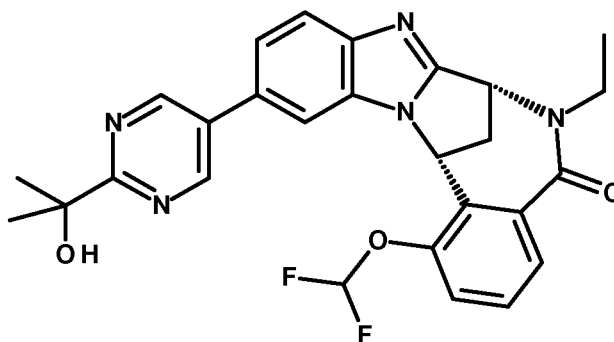


Intermediate 24 was dissolved in methanol (20 mL/g), pTSA (0.600 g, 3.152 mmol, 2.2 eq) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at r.t. overnight. APTS (0.300 g, 1.176 mmol, 1.1 eq) was added and the reaction mixture was heated at 40°C for 2h, then 45°C for 1 h and following 50°C for 15 minutes until disappearance of starting material in LCMS. EtOAc (600 mL) was added and the mixture was washed successively with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (200 mL) and a saturated solution of NaCl (200 mL), dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with diethylether (150 mL) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the *title compound* as an off-white solid (0.701 g, 99%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.83 (s, 2 H), 8.43 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.84 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.70 (s, 1 H), 7.47 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.39 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.26 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1 H), 6.79 (t, J = 72.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.33 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1 H), 5.25 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 3.55 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 3.53 (s, 3 H), 3.38 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1 H), 2.89 (d, J = 13.7 Hz, 1 H), 1.57 (s, 6 H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.30 min, 492.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 5

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



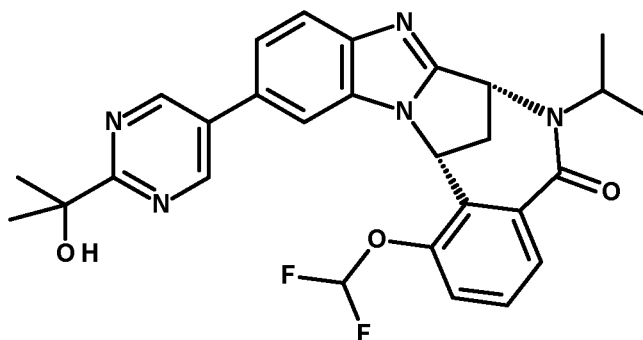
Intermediate 25 (69 mg, 0.1113 mmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of methanol, pTSA (105.9 mg, 34.0908 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at r.t. for 16 h. EtOAc was added, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was

purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 75% EtOAc in heptane) and triturated with diethyl ether to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (23 mg, 40.9%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 8.95 (s, 2 H), 8.56 (d, J = 7.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.93 (m, 1 H), 7.81 (s, 1 H), 7.54 (m, 1 H), 7.48 (m, 1 H), 7.35 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1 H), 6.89 (t, J = 72.3 Hz, 1 H), 6.41 (s, 1 H), 5.25 (m, 1 H), 4.17 (m, 1 H), 3.95 (m, 1 H), 3.59 (m, 1 H), 2.93 (m, 1 H), 1.68 (s, 6 H), 1.49 (m, 3 H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.36 min, 506.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 6

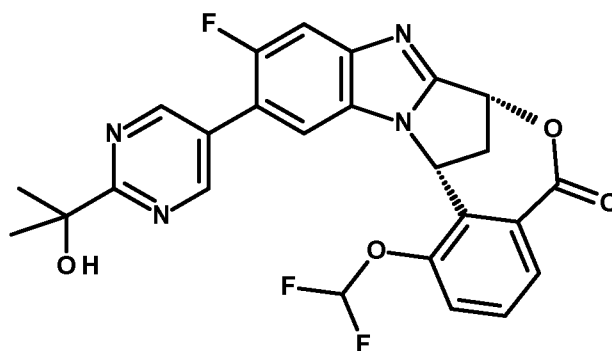
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-(propan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



Intermediate 26 (10 mg, 0.0158 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (0.2 mL) and pTSA (6.6 mg, 0.0347 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at r.t.. After 16 h, pTSA (6.6 mg, 0.0347 mmol) was again added and the mixture heated at 50°C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, the residue dissolved in EtOAc washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulphate, concentrated *in vacuo* and triturated with diethyl ether to afford the *title compound* as a white solid (7 mg, 85.4 % yield). LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 3* RT 1.42 min, 520.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 7

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-one

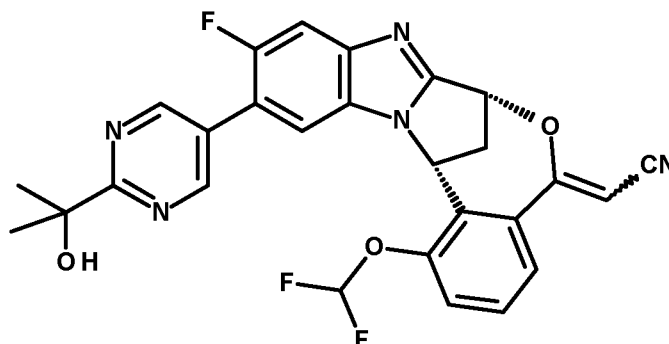


To a suspension of *Intermediate 29* (50 mg, 0.0972 mmol) in 1 mL of toluene was added cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane (25.9 mg, 0.0282 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated at 100°C for 16 h. The mixture was cooled to r.t., taken up with EtOAc and washed with 1N sodium hydroxide. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulphate and concentrated *in vacuo* and triturated with diethyl ether to afford the *title compound* as an off-white solid (3 mg, 6.2 % yield).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ ppm 8.96 (s, 2 H), 8.08 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1 H), 7.76 (d, *J* = 11.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.65 (t, *J* = 73.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.61 (m, 2 H), 7.55 (m, 1 H), 6.47 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 6.10 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1 H), 5.17 (bs, 1 H), 3.61 (m, 1 H), 3.18 (d, *J* = 14.7 Hz, 1 H), 1.49 (m, 6 H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.36 min, 497.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 8

(2Z)-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-ylidene]acetonitrile and (2E)-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocin-5(14H)-ylidene]acetonitrile



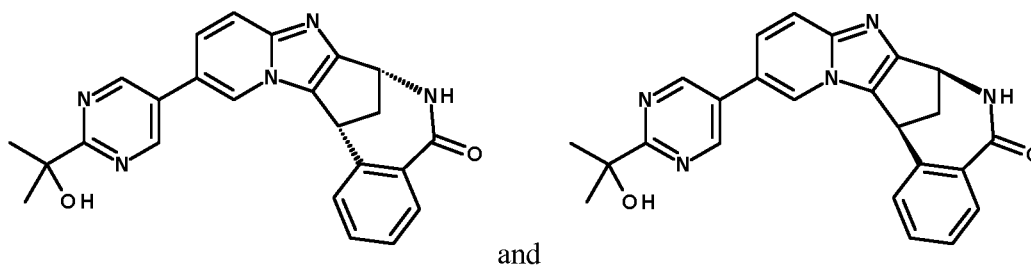
To a suspension of *Intermediate 29* (50 mg, 0.0972 mmol) in 1 mL of toluene was added cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane (25.9 mg, 0.0282 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated at 100°C for 16 h. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by reverse phase preparative LCMS (basic conditions). The residue was dissolved in 2 mL of MeOH and passed through an acidic exchange-ion column (400 mg, conditioning: MeOH 10mL), followed by washing of the column with 10 mL of methanol. The compound was discharged from the resin by elution of 10 mL of ammonia (1 M in methanol) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by preparative TLC with EtOAc - hexane (8/2), to afford the *title compound* as a colourless oil (2.5 mg, 4.95 % yield) in a 6/4 mixture of Z/E isomers.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 8.93 (s, 1.2 H), 8.90 (s, 0.8 H), 7.69 (t, J = 11.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.60 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 0.6 H), 7.40 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, J = 7.4 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.84 (t, J = 72.5 Hz, 0.4 H), 6.83 (t, J = 72.3 Hz, 0.6 H), 6.28 (m, 1 H), 6.01 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 0.4 H), 5.87 (d, J = 4.1 Hz, 0.6 H), 5.34 (s, 0.6 H), 5.07 (s, 0.4 H), 3.32 (m, 1 H), 3.07 (d, J = 14.1 Hz, 0.4 H), 3.02 (d, J = 13.9 Hz, 0.6 H), , 1.67 (s, 6 H).

LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 1.39 min, 520.0 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 9

(7R,14R) and (7S, 14S)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-d][2]benzazocin-5(6H)-one



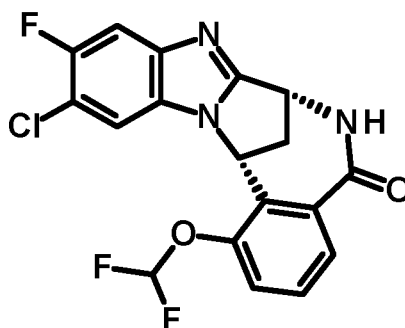
25

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 37* (300 mg, 0.71 mmol), Na₂CO₃ (378 mg, 3.57 mmol) and dichloro [bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane] palladium(II) [Pd-133 from Johnson Matthey] (40 mg, 0.06 mmol), 1,4-dioxane (9 mL) under CO gas (5 bars) at 150 °C for 15h, following the protocol described for *Intermediate 14* (5.5 mg, 2%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.10 (s, 2H), 8.90 (s,

30

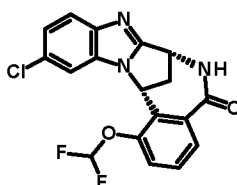
1H), 8.70 (d, *J* 6.3 Hz, 1H), 8.28 (d, *J* 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.95 (d, *J* 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, *J* 9.4 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (d, *J* 9.4 Hz, 1H), 7.48 (t, *J* 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.27 (t, *J* 7.7 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (s, 1H), 4.75 (d, *J* 6.1 Hz, 1H), 4.69 (t, *J* 6.3 Hz, 1H), 2.44 (d, *J* 12.6 Hz, 2H), 1.54 (s, 6H). LCMS Method 3 (ES⁺) RT 1.64min, 412.0 (M+H)⁺.

5

EXAMPLE 10

(7*R*,14*R*)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

- 10 In a high pressure reactor, *Intermediate 41* (927 mg, 2.076 mmol) was solubilized in dry 1,4-dioxane (21 mL). Potassium carbonate (1.4 g, 10.4 mmol) was added. A solution of palladium(II) acetate (23.3 mg, 0.1038 mmol) and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (61.9 mg, 0.1038 mmol) in 1 mL of dry dioxane was then added. The reactor was closed and degassed by 3 successive vacuum / nitrogen cycles and then with
- 15 CO by 3 successive vacuum / CO cycles. The bomb was charged with CO to 8 psi and heated at 110°C overnight. The reaction mixture was subsequently filtered through a pad of celite and the pad rinsed by 50 mL of EtOAc. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified over silica gel using AcOEt / MeOH 10/0 to 9/1 to yield 534 mg (65%) of the *title compound* as a pale brown solid. LCMS basic: RT 1.97 min. (ES⁺)
- 20 394/396 (M+H)⁺. 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO): 9.13 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.23 (dd, *J*₁ = 6.9 Hz, *J*₂ = 2.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.70 (d, *J* = 10.1 Hz, 1 H), 7.60 (t, *J* = 73.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.51 (m, 3 H), 6.30 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1 H), 4.88 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 3.45 (m, 1 H), 2.73 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 11

25

(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 40 (3.7 g, 8.6 mmol), activated molecular sieve 4A powder (1.2 g), potassium carbonate (1.5 equiv., 13 mmol) followed by dichloro[9,9-dimethyl-4,5-

- 5 bis(diphenylphosphino)xanthene]palladium(II) (0.04 equiv., 0.35 mmol) were poured into the center of the 100 mL Glass Parr reaction vessel. 3 cycles of vacuum (~20 mmHg) followed by Argon were applied to the closed reactor.

- Anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (35 mL) was added, followed by phenol 5M in DMSO (1.1 equiv., 9.5 mmol). The solution was degassed by 3 vacuum (~20 mmHg) / argon cycles
10 followed by 3 cycles of vacuum / CO resulting in a final CO pressure of 1 bar.

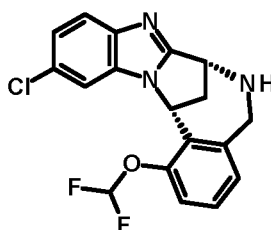
The mixture was stirred and heated overnight at 100 °C under the CO atmosphere. The reaction was cooled to 30°C, the reactor vessel was opened and EtOAc (40 mL) was added. The resulting mixture was filtered on a pad of Celite, evaporated *in vacuo* to yield a green oil.

- 15 The residue thus obtained was taken up in EtOAc (100 mL) and the organic layer was washed with water, K₂CO₃ (saturated aqueous solution) and brine (saturated aqueous solution). The aqueous layer was then re-extracted with EtOAc (1 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The obtained green solid (3.65 g), was taken up in EtOAc, the insoluble material was filtered
20 and rinsed with Et₂O to afford 1.06 g (33.1%) of the *title compound* as a grey solid. The filtrate can be purified by flash chromatography to provide additional product if required:

LCMS basic: MH⁺ m/z = 376, RT 1.90 minutes.

- ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ 9.12 (d, 1 H, J = 6.7 Hz), 8.23 (dd, 1 H, J = 7.0, 2.4 Hz),
25 7.60 (m, 5 H), 7.20 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.7, 2.1 Hz), 6.29 (d, 1 H, J = 7.1 Hz), 4.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 6.7 Hz, 6.7 Hz), 3.46 (m, 1 H), 2.72 (d, 1 H, J = 13.4 Hz).

EXAMPLE 12



(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

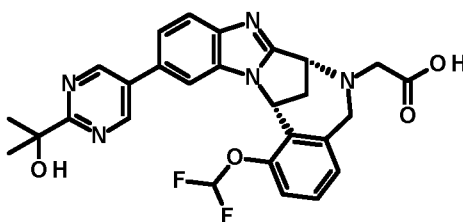
Intermediate 45 (0.0525 mmol) was solubilized in THF (0.5 mL) and ethanol (0.5 mL).

Polymer-supported cyanoborohydride (33 mg, 0.132 mmol, 4 mmol/g) was added. The

5 reaction mixture was subjected to an orbital shaker for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was then filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude material was purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC (basic condition) to afford 7 mg (37%) of the *title compound*. LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.5 min., 362/364(M+H)⁺. LCMS acidic (ES⁺) RT 2.12 min., 362/364(M+H)⁺.

10 ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.69 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (m, 3 H), 7.13 (m, 1 H), 6.99 (m, 1 H), 6.73 (m, 1 H), 6.10 (m, 1 H), 4.77 (m, 1 H), 3.66 (m, 1 H), 3.21 (m, 1 H), 3.01 (d, 1 H, J = 15.3 Hz), 2.94 (m, 1 H), 2.50 (m, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 13



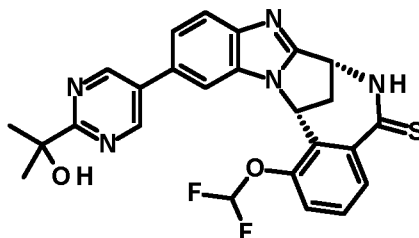
15 [(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]acetic acid

Intermediate 46 (34 mg, 0.076 mmol), 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl) pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (2.5 equiv., 0.190 mmol), K₃PO₄ (2 equiv., 0.152 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (0.05 equiv., 0.0038 mmol), and

20 tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (0.12 equiv., 0.0091 mmol) were dissolved in a degassed mixture of 1,4 dioxane (0.9 mL) and water (0.1 mL). The reaction mixture was heated overnight at 105°C.

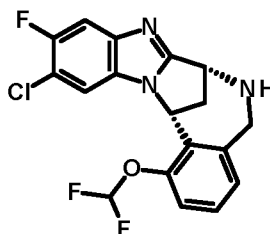
The mixture was cooled to r.t; water was added and the mixture extracted with EtOAc.

The aqueous layer was brought to pH 2-3 with HCl 1N, extracted with EtOAc, dried over
25 magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by reverse phase chromatography to afford 3 mg (7.5%) of the *title compound* as a white solid at 90% purity. LCMS (ES⁺) 522/523 (M+H)⁺

EXAMPLE 14

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-5(14H)-thione

- 5 To a solution of *Intermediate 47 5* (15 mg, 0.025 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (23.5 mg, 0.124 mmol). The slurry was stirred overnight at r.t. The reaction mixture was quenched with NaHCO₃ (10% aqueous solution) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 5 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by preparative TLC (DCM /
- 10 MeOH 9 / 1) followed by a second purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (DCM / MeOH 100 / 0 to 95 / 5) to afford 9 mg (74%) of the *title compound*. LCMS acidic (ES⁺) RT 2.29 min., 494(M+H)⁺.

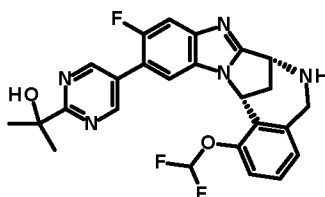
EXAMPLE 15

- 15 (7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine

- Example 10* (178 mg, 0.452 mmol) was solubilized in dry THF (5 mL). At 0°C, borane dimethyl sulfide complex (340 µL, 2M solution in THF, 0.68 mmol) was added. The
- 20 reaction mixture was allowed to warm to r.t. and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, the residue was taken up in MeOH, stirred and heated under reflux for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was purified by reverse phase preparative LCMS (basic condition) to afford 65 mg (38%) of the *title compound*. LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 3.55 min., 380/382(M+H)⁺. LCMS acidic
- 25 (ES⁺) RT 3.56 min., 380/382(M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 7.52 (d, 1 H, J

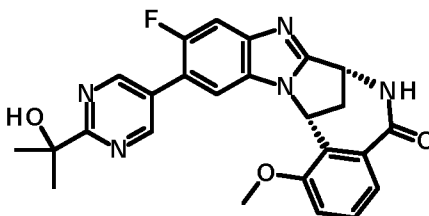
= 9.6 Hz), 7.23 (m, 2 H), 7.12 (m, 1 H), 6.97 (d, 1 H, J = 7.4 Hz), 6.71 (m, 1 H), 6.09 (d, 1 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 4.70 (d, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.64 (m, 1 H), 3.21 (m, 1 H), 2.98 (d, 1 H, J = 15.3 Hz), 2.48 (d, 1 H, J = 12.6 Hz).

5

EXAMPLE 16

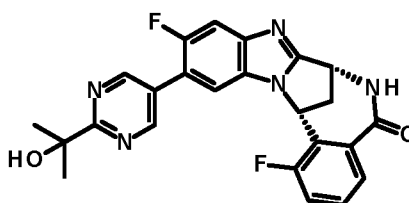
2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

Example 15 (47 mg, 0.1237 mmol), 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (82 mg, 0.3105 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (5.524 mg, 0.01485 mmol), tris (dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (5.6 mg, 0.0061 mmol), and K₃PO₄ (52.5 mg, 0.248 mmol) were placed in a tube, and filled with argon. Degassed 1,4 dioxane (1 mL) and water (100 µL) were added and the resulting slurry was stirred at 105°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to r.t.
before addition of EtOAc (2 mL) and water (2 mL). The aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude was purified by reverse phase preparative LCMS (acidic condition) to afford the TFA salt of the *title compound* which was solubilized in EtOAc (2 mL) and washed with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 33 mg (55%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS basic (ES+) RT 3.69 min., 482(M+H)⁺. LCMS acidic (ES+) RT 1.91 min., 482(M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 8.87 (m, 2 H), 7.62 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (s, 1 H), 7.20 (m, 1 H), 7.12 (m, 1 H), 6.99 (m, 1 H), 6.72 (m, 1 H), 6.17 (m, 1 H), 4.78 (m, 1 H), 4.66 (m, 1 H), 3.66 (m, 1 H), 3.25 (m, 1 H), 3.05 (m, 1 H), 2.53 (m, 1 H), 1.65 (s, 6 H).

EXAMPLE 17

(7R,14R)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-methoxy-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 5 *Intermediate 57* (145 mg, 0.31 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DMA (3 mL) in a 25 mL pressure reactor and Na₂CO₃ (165 mg, 1.56 mmol) was added. The mixture was degassed with a stream of nitrogen for 10 minutes then the pressure vessel was sealed and subjected to three vacuum/nitrogen flush cycles, before repeating the process with carbon monoxide and charging the pressure to 3.0 bar. The mixture was stirred for 5 minutes then
- 10 heated to 150 °C and stirred at this temperature overnight. The reactor was allowed to cool to r.t.. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (20 mL) and filtered through a pad of celite, washing with excess EtOAc (20 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (15 mL), then brine (15 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to yield 160 mg of a crude residue. Purification by reverse phase chromatography (eluting
- 15 with 0-100% MeCN (+0.1% NH₄OH)/H₂O (+0.1% NH₄OH)) to yield 2.1 mg (1.5%) of the *title compound* as a beige solid. . LCMS *Method 6* (ES+) RT 3.52 min., 460.2 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH-d₄) δ 8.95 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 2H), 8.04 (dd, J = 8.0, 1.1 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (d, J = 11.2 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (t, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.37 - 7.29 (m, 1H), 6.62 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.96 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.13 (s, 3H), 3.51 (dt, J
- 20 = 13.5, 6.9 Hz, 1H), 2.80 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 1.65 (s, 6H), 1.63 - 1.57 (m, 1H).

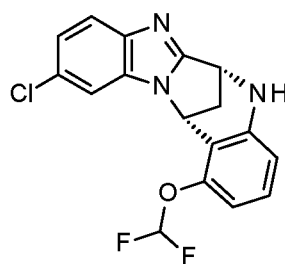
EXAMPLE 18

- 25 (7R,14R)-1,10-difluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 58* (200 mg, 0.44 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) was added sodium carbonate (232 mg, 2.19 mmol) dichloropalladium; dicyclohexyl(3-dicyclohexylphosphanylpropyl)-phosphane (53.8 mg, 0.0877 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 160°C under 5 bar of CO pressure overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and rinsed with ethanol (10 mL). The filtrate was evaporated and the crude was dissolved in DCM (10 mL) and treated with a saturated aqueous solution of NH₄Cl (5 mL) The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue purified on silica gel (DCM/iPrOH/ aq NH₃ 90:9:1), yielding 32 mg (16%) of the *title compound*.

LCMS acidic *Method 4* (ES+) RT 2.06 min., 448.2 (M+H)⁺

EXAMPLE 19



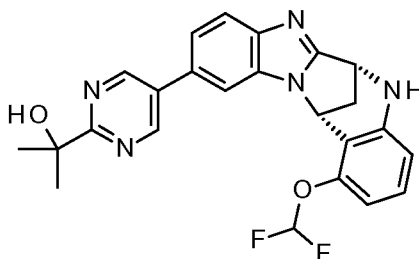
15 (6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

A mixture of *Intermediate 40* (500 mg, 1.17 mmol), potassium carbonate (322 mg, 2.33 mmol), 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (69 mg, 0.12 mmol) and palladium(II) acetate (26 mg, 0.12 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (16 mL) was de-gassed and stirred at 110°C under nitrogen for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (69 mg, 0.12 mmol) and palladium(II) acetate (26 mg, 0.12 mmol) were added to the reaction mixture. The solvent was de-gassed and the mixture was stirred at 110 °C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, filtered through celite and the latter was washed with EtOAc. The combined filtrate and washings were evaporated to dryness using an oil pump to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (25 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to afford the *title compound* (249 mg, 0.71 mmol, 61% yield) as a brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.29 mins (pH 10), m/z 348 and 350.

¹H NMR: (CD₃OD, 300 MHz) δ: 2.48 (d, J = 11.2 Hz, 1H), 2.99 (dt, J = 11.2, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (m, 1H (overlap with the residual water), 5.93 (d, J = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 6.40 (d, J = 8.1

Hz, 2H), 6.96 (t, J = 74 Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.17 (dd, J = 8.6, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 20



5

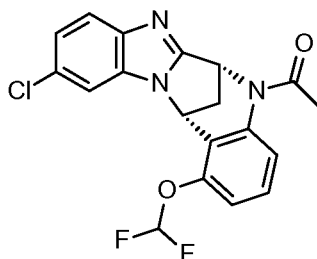
2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

A mixture of 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (purchased from commercial sources) (110.5 mg, 0.42 mmol), *Example 19* (97 mg, 0.28 mmol), K₃PO₄ (118.3 mg, 0.56 mmol), and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (15.9 mg, 0.042 mmol) was solubilized in 1,4-dioxane (1.95 mL) and water (0.19 mL) and the mixture degassed with nitrogen before addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (18.4 mg, 0.019 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at 105 °C for 15 hours or until LCMS showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and the crude mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with saturated brine (2 x 10 mL), dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil which was purified by preparative HPLC (pH = 10) to afford the *title compound* (23 mg, 0.051 mmol, 18% yield) as a white solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.09 mins (pH 10), m/z 450 .

20

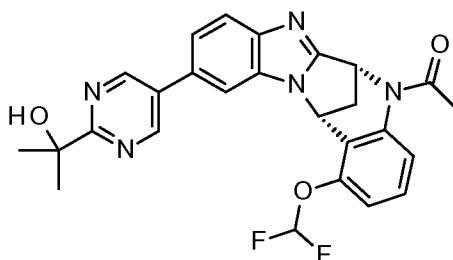
¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ: 1.54 (s, 6H), 2.38 (d, J = 11.3 Hz, 1H), 2.94 (dt, J = 11.3, 4.3 Hz, 1H), 4.91 (t, J = 3.5 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (bs, 1H), 5.91 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 6.34 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 2H), 6.97 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.15 (d, J = 3.7 Hz, 1H), 7.38 Hz (dd, J = 73, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (dd, J = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.68-7.72 (m, 2 H), 9.06 (s, 2H).

25

EXAMPLE 21

1-[(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]ethanone

- 5 *Example 19* (245 mg, 0.7044 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (2 mL) and acetic anhydride (2 mL). The mixture was stirred at 110°C for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and quenched with 2N NaOH aq. (2 mL). The crude mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 10 mL). The organic phase was washed with saturated brine (10 mL), the combined organic phases was dried with sodium sulphate,
- 10 filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to afford the *title compound* (177 mg, 65% yield) as a yellow solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.08 mins (pH 10), m/z 390 and 392.
- ¹H NMR: (CD₃OD, 300 MHz) δ: 2.66 (d, J = 11.9 Hz, 1H), 2.69 (s, 3H), 3.20 (dt, J =
- 15 11.9, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 5.99 (d, J = 3.9 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (d, J = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.08 (t, J = 73.4 Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.53 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 8.22 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 22

20

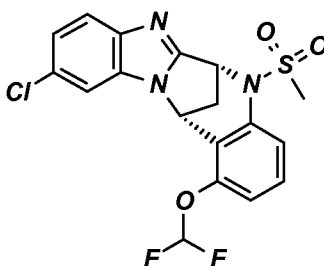
1-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]ethanone

- The *title compound* was prepared from 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (179.9 mg, 0.68 mmol), and *Example 21* according to a
- 25 method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to give,

following purification by preparative HPLC (pH = 10), a white solid (13 mg, 0.026 mmol, 5.8% yield): LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.93 mins (pH 10), m/z 492 .

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ: 1.54 (s, 6H), 2.61 (d, J = 12.4 Hz, 1H), 2.69 (s, 3H), 3.20 (dt, J = 12.1, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 5.75 (s, 1H), 6.00 (d, J = 3.2 Hz, 1H), 6.08 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.46 Hz (dd, J = 72.1, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (dd, J = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.76-7.80 (m, 2H), 8.21 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 9.07 (s, 2H).

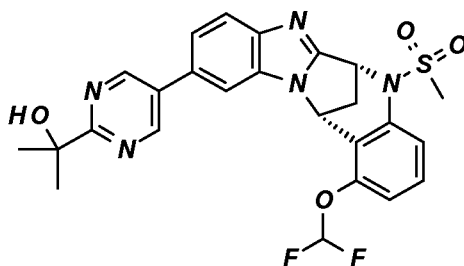
EXAMPLE 23



10 (6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To a round bottom flask were added *Intermediate 59* (2.80 g, 5.52 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (248 mg, 1.11 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (1.38 g, 2.21 mmol) and potassium carbonate (1.93 g, 13.8 mmol). The mixture was sealed and
15 purged 3 times with nitrogen. Toluene (55 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the vial was kept under nitrogen and stirred for 15 hours at 110°C. Then, the reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, filtered through celite and the latter was washed with EtOAc. The combined filtrate and washings were evaporated to dryness using an oil pump to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography in silica gel (0 to 100%
20 EtOAc in Hexane) to afford the *title compound* (1.87 g, 4.39 mmol, 79.5% yield) as a brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.15 mins (pH 10), m/z 426 and 428.

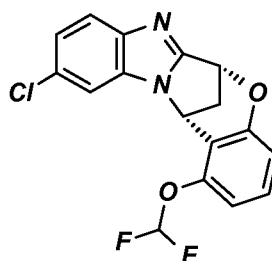
¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ: 2.64 (d, J = 12.0 Hz, 1H), 3.05 (s, 3H), 3.18 (dt, J = 12.0, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 5.92 (d, J = 3.6 Hz, 1H), 6.08 (d, J = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (dd, J = 8.3, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.22 (dd, J = 8.7, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (t, J = 73.2 Hz, 1H),
25 7.47 (d, J = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.57 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 24

2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol, and *Example 23* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in hexane), a white solid (542 mg, 84% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.04 mins (pH 10), m/z 528.
- 10 ¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ: 1.55 (s, 6H), 2.68 (d, J = 12.1 Hz, 1H), 3.05 (s, 3H), 3.24 (dt, J = 12.3, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (s, 1H), 5.96 (d, J = 3.6 Hz, 1H), 6.13 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.50 Hz (dd, J = 72.4, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.62-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.67 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.81 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 9.07 (s, 2H).

15

EXAMPLE 25

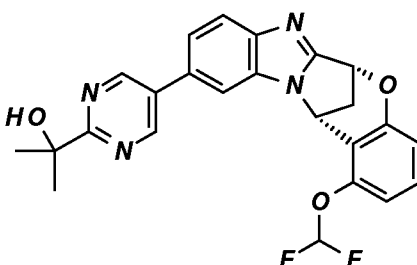
(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzoxazepine

- A mixture of *Intermediate 60* (287 mg, 0.668 mmol), cesium carbonate (440 mg, 1.33 mmol), 8-hydroxyquinoline (10 mg, 0.068 mmol), in toluene (0.7 mL) was degassed followed by the addition of copper (I) iodide (6.5 mg, 0.033 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, filtered through celite and the latter was washed with CH₂Cl₂. The combined filtrate and washings were evaporated to dryness using an oil pump to give an oil which
- 20

was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 75% EtOAc in Hexane) to afford the *title compound* (40 mg, 0.1147 mmol, 17.17% yield) as a red solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.51mins (pH 10), m/z 349 and 351.

¹H NMR: (CD₃OD, 300 MHz) δ: 2.75 (d, J = 12.4 Hz, 1H), 3.13 (ddd, J = 12.4, 4.4, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 5.83 (d, J = 1.4 Hz, 1H), 6.01 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1H), 6.63 (dd, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 6.70 (dd, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.01 (t, J = 73.4 Hz, 1H), 7.15 (t, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (dd, J = 8.6, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 26

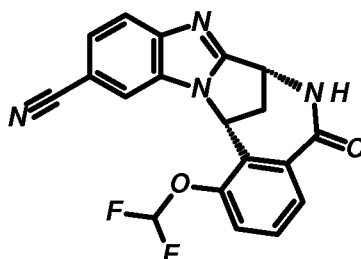


2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzoxazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

The title compound was prepared from 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol, and *Example 25* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in Hexane) a white solid (4.5 mg, 12% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.02 mins (pH 10), m/z 451.

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ: 1.48 (s, 6H), 2.68 (d, J = 12.9 Hz, 1H), 3.09 (ddd, J = 12.9, 4.2, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.05 (s, 1H), 5.92 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.92 (d, J = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 6.60 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.65 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.12 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (dd, J = 72.4, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (dd, J = 8.6, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (m, 2H), 9.01 (s, 2H).

EXAMPLE 27

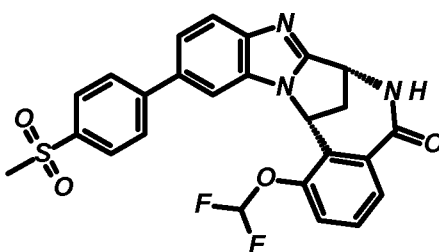


(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-11-carbonitrile

To a mixture of *Example 11* (100 mg, 0.266 mmol), zinc cyanide (35 mg, 0.298 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenylphosphine) palladium (31 mg, 0.0266 mmol) was added *N, N*-dimethyl-formamide (3 mL). The mixture was degassed for 3 minutes before being heated in microwave at 180 °C for 20 minutes. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (30 mL) and water (40 mL), and the organics were washed with saturated brine (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC (reverse phase) to give the *title compound* (5.1 mg, 5.2% yield) as a white solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 367, retention time 1.69 minutes (pH 10).

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 400 MHz) δ 9.17 (d, J=6.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.23 (dd, J=7.5, 1.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.79 (m, 2 H), 7.7-7.4 (m, 4H), 6.38 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.94 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (m, 1H), 2.77 (d, J = 13.5 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 28



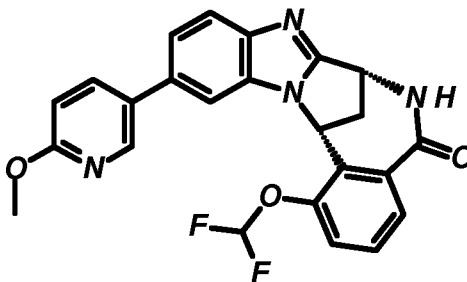
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from 4-methylsulfonylphenyl-boronic acid, and *Example 11* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, following purification by flash chromatography on a 100g-SNAP Biotage silica cartridge eluting with 0% - 10% MeOH/EtOAc followed by prep HPLC (reverse phase, 30%-50% MeCN/H₂O, pH 10) to give (8.83 mg, 0.178 mmol, 48%) as a white solid.

LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 496.0, retention time 1.82 minutes (pH 10).

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ 9.14 (d, J=6.6 Hz, 1 H), 8.23 (dd, J=5.7, 3.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.00 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.9-7.4 (m, 9H), 6.37 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.89 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (m, 1H), 3.27 (s, 3H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H).

5

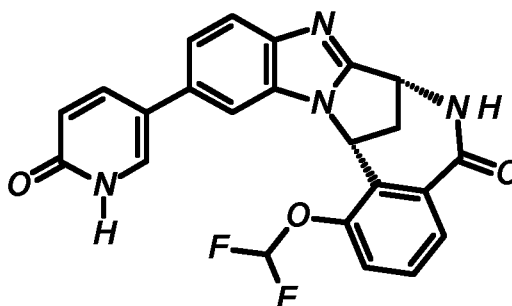
EXAMPLE 29

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from 2-methoxy-5-pyridineboronic acid and *Example 11*, according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, following purification by flash chromatography to give (29 mg, 24%) as a white solid.

LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 449.0, retention time 2.07 minutes (pH 10).

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 400 MHz) δ 9.13 (d, J=6.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.42 (d, J=2.32 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, J=5.9, 3.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.9-7.4 (m, 7H), 6.93 (d, J=8.6 Hz, 1H), 6.35 (d, J=7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.88 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.48 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, J = 13.3 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 30

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(6-oxo-1,6-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

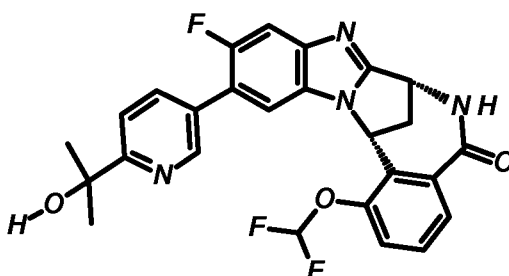
A mixture of *Example 29* (22.4 mg, 0.050 mmol) and pyridine hydrochloride (29.0 mg, 0.246 mmol) were heated at 160 °C for 5 minutes and allowed to cool to ambient

temperature. The mixture was then diluted with DCM / MeOH, concentrated and purified by prep HPLC (reverse phase) to afford the desired product (22.0 mg, 0.051 mmol, 78%) as a white solid.

LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH^+ 435.0, retention time 1.34 minutes (pH 10).

- 5 ^1H NMR: (DMSO- d_6 , 300 MHz) δ 11.8 (br s, 1H), 9.11 (d, $J=6.7$ Hz, 1 H), 8.22 (m, 1 H), 7.9-7.3 (m, 8H), 6.44 (d, $J=9.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.31 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.86 (t, $J = 6.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.46 (m, 1H), 2.72 (d, $J = 13.4$ Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 31



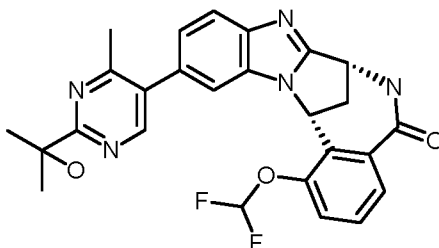
- 10 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- A degassed mixture of *Example 10* (299 mg, 0.56 mmol), 6-(2-(trimethylsilyloxy)propan-2-yl)pyridine-3-boronic acid pinacol ester (295 mg, 0.84 mmol),
15 tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (26.0 mg, 0.03 mmol), potassium phosphate tribasic (296 mg, 1.40 mmol), and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (26.0 mg, 0.07 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (4.5 mL) and water (0.5 mL) was heated to 105 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled to r.t, diluted with EtOAc (50 mL) and washed with water (2 x 50 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residues were dissolved in DCM (4 mL) and 4M HCl solution (1.5 mL) was added. The solution was stirred at r.t for 1 hour. Saturated aqueous sodium carbonate solution (50 mL) was added, and the aqueous layer separated. The organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a crude oil. The crude material was purified by column chromatography, eluting with 0-
20 100% EtOAc in DCM, followed by 0-10% MeOH in EtOAc to give the *title compound* as an off-white powder (105 mg, 38% yield).

^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 9.15 (d, 1 H, $J = 6.8$ Hz), 8.61 (s, 1 H), 8.26-8.21 (m, 1 H), 7.90 (dt, 1 H, $J = 1.9, 8.2$ Hz), 7.77 (d, 1 H, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.61 (t, 1 H, $J = 7.5$ Hz), 7.61 (d, 1 H, $J = 11.5$ Hz), 7.52-7.50 (m, 3 H), 6.34 (d, 1 H, $J = 7.1$ Hz), 5.27 (s, 1 H), 4.91 (t,

1 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.52-3.45 (m, 1 H), 2.75 (d, 1 H, J = 13.4 Hz), 1.49 (s, 6 H). LCMS
Method 3 ESI MH⁺ 495.1

EXAMPLE 32



5

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6-methyl-pyrimidin-5-yl]-
6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

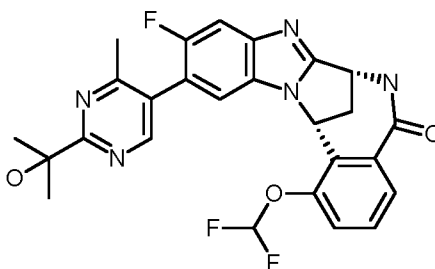
The *title* compound was synthesised from *Example 11* (240 mg, 0.639 mmol), and
Intermediate 61 (213.2 mg, 0.7664 mmol), according to a method involving the same

10 procedural steps as those described for *Example 20* to give, after purification by flash
column chromatography, an oil, which was subsequently freeze dried to provide a white
solid (115 mg, 0.234 mmol, 36%).

1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 9.15 (d, 1 H, 6.6 Hz), 8.61 (s, 1 H), 8.23 (dd, 1 H, 4.8
Hz), 7.73 (d, 1 H, 8.3 Hz), 7.56, (m, 1H), 7.51 (m, 3 H), 7.22 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.3, 1.7 Hz),
15 6.34 (d, 1 H, J = 7.1 Hz), 5.07 (s, 1 H), 4.91 (t, 1 H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.50 (m, 1 H), 2.76 (d, 1
H, J = 13.3 Hz), 2.46 (s, 3 H), 1.54 (s, 6 H). HPLC-MS *Method 3* (pH10): MH⁺ m/z =
492.2, RT 1.81 minutes; *Method 4* (pH3): MH⁺ m/z = 492.2, RT 1.80 minutes.

20

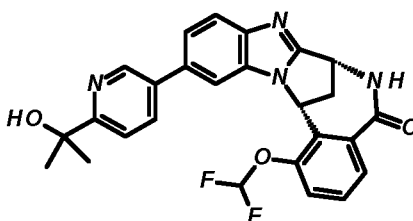
25

EXAMPLE 33

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6-methyl-
pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-
 5 5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was synthesised from *Example 10* (300 mg, 0.762 mmol), and *Intermediate 61* (254.3 mg, 0.9142 mmol), according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to give, after purification by column chromatography, an oil, which was subsequently freeze dried to give a white solid (125
 10 mg, 0.245 mmol, 32%).

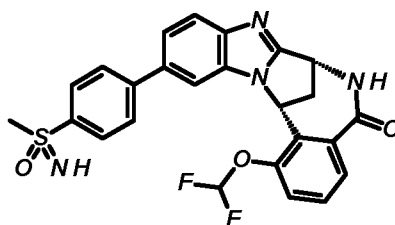
¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 9.15 (d, 1 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 8.62 (s, 1 H), 8.22 (dd, 1 H, J = 6.2, 3.2 Hz), 7.65 (d, 1 H, J = 10.8 Hz), 7.53 (d, 1H, 7.8 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1H, 7.8Hz), 7.51 (t, 1H, 7.2 Hz) 7.39 (d, 1 H, J = 6.6 Hz), 6.33 (d, 1 H, 7.1 Hz), 5.08 (s, 1 H), 4.87 (t, 1 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.50 (dt, 1 H, 13.6, 6.8 Hz), 2.75 (d, 1 H, J = 13.4 Hz), 2.33 (d, 3H, 1 Hz), 1.54
 15 (s, 6 H). HPLC-MS *Method 3* (pH10): MH⁺ m/z = 510.2, RT 1.88 minutes; *Method 4* (pH3): MH⁺ m/z = 510.2, RT 1.91 minutes.

EXAMPLE 34

20 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-
7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (140 mg, 0.373 mmol) and 6-(2-(trimethylsilyloxy)propan-2-yl)pyridine-3-boronic acid pinacol ester (171 mg, 0.484 mmol) were added to a small microwave tube and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (17.6 mg, 0.0186 mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (17.0 mg, 0.0447 mmol) were added with dioxane (2 mL), followed by K₃PO₄ (158 mg, 0.745 mmol) in water (1 mL). The mixture was degassed and heated to 105°C for 18 hours. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (30 mL) and washed with water (10 mL). The organic was concentrated *in vacuo*, re-dissolved in DCM (10 mL) and 4.0M HCl in dioxane (5 mL) added and the mixture was stirred at r.t for 1 hour. The mixture was partitioned between DCM and sodium carbonate (20 mL). The organic phase was dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by preparative HPLC gave the *title compound* (35 mg, 20%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR: (d6-DMSO, 300 MHz) δ: 1.48 (s, 6 H), 2.74 (d, 1H, J=13.3 Hz), 3.49 (m, 1H), 4.88 (t, 1H, J=6.7 Hz), 5.24 (s, 1H), 6.35 (d, 1H, J=7.0 Hz), 7.49-7.53 (m, 3H), 7.69-7.72 (m, 3H), 7.66 (t, 1H, J_{H-F}=73.2Hz), 7.97 (dd, 1H, J = 5.6, 8.2 Hz), 8.21-8.24 (m, 1H), 8.73 (d, 1H, J= 1.8 Hz), 9.13 (d, 1H, 6.8 Hz). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.76 mins (pH 10), m/z 477.

EXAMPLE 35

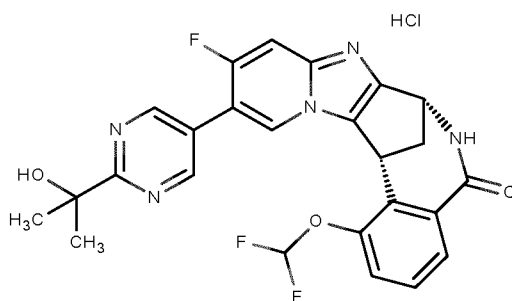


(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(S-methylsulfonylimidoyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (200 mg, 0.532 mmol) and imino-methyl-oxo-[4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)phenyl]-sulfane (210 mg, 0.745 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (25.1 mg, 0.0266 mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (24.2 mg, 0.0639 mmol) were added to a small microwave tube. 1,4-Dioxane (2 mL) was added, followed by K₃PO₄ (226 mg, 1.06 mmol) in water (0.3 mL). The mixture was degassed, placed under nitrogen and heated to 105°C for 18 hours. LCMS showed a poor conversion. Another identical portion of catalyst, ligand and the boronate as above were added along with more dioxane (0.5 mL) and water (0.2 mL) and the mixture heated to 110°C for a further 18 hours. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water (50 mL each) The organic layer was dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in*

vacuo. The material was subjected to column chromatography (silica, 0 to 20% MeOH in DCM) and the product containing fractions were concentrated in *vacuo* to give a brown solid, which, after further purification by prep HPLC provided the *title compound* (9.1mg, 3.5%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR: (d6-DMSO, 300 MHz) δ: 2.74 (d, 1H, J=13.3 Hz), 3.11 (d, 3H, J=0.8 Hz), 3.49-3.54 (m, 1H), 4.24 (s, 1H), 4.89 (t, 1H, J=6.7 Hz), 6.36 (d, 1H, J=7.0 Hz), 7.49-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.67 (dt, 1H, J_{H-F} = 73.3, 1.0 Hz), 7.71-7.74 (m, 2H), 7.80-7.83 (m, 2H), 7.98-8.01 (m, 2H), 8.21-8.24 (m, 1H), 9.14 (d, 1H, 6.7 Hz). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.54 mins (pH 10), m/z 495.

EXAMPLE 36

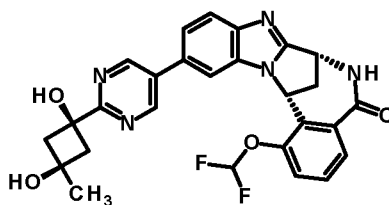


(1R,11R)-18-(difluoromethoxy)-6-fluoro-5-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-3,9,12-triazapentacyclo[9.8.1.0^{2,10}.0^{3,8}.0^{14,19}]icosa-2(10),4,6,8,14(19),15,17-heptaen-13-one hydrochloride

Intermediate 72 (260 mg, 0.52 mmol), Na₂CO₃ (274 mg, 2.59 mmol) and 2,2-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetracyclohexyl-1λ⁵,3λ⁵-diphospha-2-palladacyclohexane (28 mg, 0.04 mmol) were suspended in degassed anhydrous dimethylacetamide (6 mL) in a 25 mL pressure vessel. The vessel was sealed and degassed thoroughly under vacuum then placed under an atmosphere of nitrogen. This process was repeated then the vessel was evacuated and charged with 3 bar CO gas. The mixture was heated to 140 °C overnight whereon the internal pressure reached 4.8 bar. On cooling to r.t, the mixture was diluted with DCM:MeOH (50 mL) and washed with water (30 mL). The aqueous layer was back extracted with DCM:MeOH (2 x 30 mL). The combined organic layer was filtered through Celite and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford a beige solid. Purification by column chromatography (KP-NH, Biotage isolera) eluting with 0-100% MeOH in DCM followed by purification using achiral SFC (20% MeOH: 80% CO₂ with Phenomenex Synergi 4u Polar RP 25cm column at 15ml/min) gave the free base 65 mg

(25%) as an off white solid. Suspension in 1:1 MeCN:water (3 mL) and treatment with 1N aqueous HCl (129.5 μ L, 1eq) followed by freeze drying gave the *title compound* (67.5 mg, 25%) as a fluffy colourless solid. *Method 6* HPLC-MS: MH⁺ m/z 496, RT 2.27 min (100%), ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.98 (s, 2H), 8.88 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 8.27 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 8.22 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.78 - 7.68 (m, 1H), 7.67 - 7.38 (m, 1H), 7.46 - 7.32 (m, 2H), 5.19 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 4.73 (t, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 3.77 - 3.15 (m, 2H), 2.43 (d, *J* = 13.0 Hz, 1H), 1.54 (s, 6H).

EXAMPLE 37



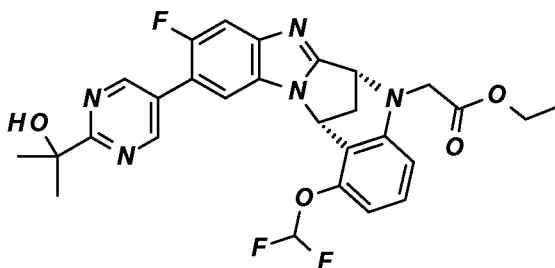
10

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(cis-1,3-dihydroxy-3-methylcyclobutyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one
Intermediate 79 (500 mg, 1.34 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (408.0 mg, 1.61 mmol),
 15 tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (61.00 mg, 0.161 mmol), potassium carbonate (22 mg, 0.161 mmol), potassium acetate (398 mg, 4.02 mmol) were placed in a 8 mL vial filled with nitrogen. 1,4-dioxane (4.8 mL) was added and the solution homogenized for 5 minutes before addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (63 mg, 0.067 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at 100 °C, using a preheated oil
 20 bath, for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was filtered giving a clear crude solution of boronic acid used without further treatment. LCMS basic RT 0.920 min. (ES⁺) 339.0 (M+H)⁺
 To *Example 11* (127 mg, 0.338 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (15.4 mg, 0.04055 mmol), potassium phosphate (143 mg, 0.676 mmol) in a vial was added the above described crude solution of 3-[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy-1-methyl-3-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]cyclobutanol, and water (0.12 mL).
 25 The slurry was degassed before addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (16 mg, 0.0169 mmol). The resulting solution was heated at 100°C overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through sodium sulfate and rinsed with EtOAc (10 mL). The filtrate was evaporated, and the residue was purified over silica gel (100% EtOAc) yielding a
 30 slightly yellow glass (192 mg). LCMS basic (ES⁺) RT 2.35 min, 635.0 (M+H)⁺

The above intermediate (192 mg, 0.3029 mmol) was solubilised in THF (1.8 mL) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1 M in THF) (0.9 mL, 0.9 mmol) was added drop-wise. The reaction mixture was stirred at r.t for 2 hours. The volatiles were removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane (20 mL) and water (20 mL).

- 5 The DCM layer was washed by 2x20 mL of water. The combined aqueous layers were extracted by 2x 20 mL of DCM. The combined organic layers were washed by 4x20 mL of water and brine (1x10 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 109 mg of white solid. The white solid was recrystallized with 3 mL of isopropanol yielding 40 mg (26%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS basic
- 10 *Method 3* (ES+) RT 1.49 min, 520.4 (M+H)⁺

EXAMPLE 38



- Ethyl [(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]acetate
- 15

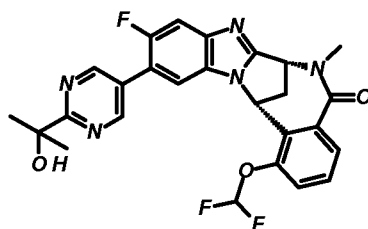
- A solution of *Intermediate 93* (250 mg, 0.39 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (36 mg, 0.058 mmol), cesium carbonate (261 mg, 0.80 mmol) and palladium acetate (12 mg, 0.053 mmol) in toluene (8 mL) was degassed and heated to 110 °C for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, partitioned
- 20 between EtOAc (30 mL) and water (30 mL) and the phases were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with saturated brine (10 mL), dried with sodium sulphate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography in silica gel (0 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to afford the *title compound* (169 mg, 78% yield) as a brown solid.
- 25 *LC/MS Method 3*: RT 2.26 mins (pH 10), m/z 554.

¹H NMR: (CD₃OD, 300 MHz) δ: 1.20 (t, J = 7.1 Hz, 3H), 1.66 (s, 6H), 2.69 (d, J = 11.7 Hz, 1H), 3.01 (dt, J = 11.7, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.44-4.15 (m, 4H), 4.96 (d, J = 3.4 Hz, 1H), 6.11 (d, J = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 6.41 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 6.54 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.12 (t, J = 8.4 Hz,

1H), 7.05 Hz (t, J = 73.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (d, J = 11.2 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 8.97 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 2H).

EXAMPLE 39

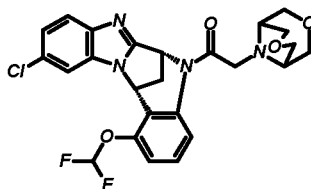
- 5 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one



The *title compound* can be synthesised from *Intermediate 158* and [2-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-ethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20*.

- ¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 300 MHz) δ 8.95 (d, J=1.7 Hz, 1 H), 8.23 (dd, J=6.7, 2.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.9-7.3 (m, 5H), 6.29 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.27 (d, J=7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.15 (s, 1H), 3.52 (m, 1H), 3.36 (s, 3H), 2.84 (d, J = 13.9 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H).
- 15 LC/MS: *Method 3*: MH⁺ 510.3, RT 2.04 minutes.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 40

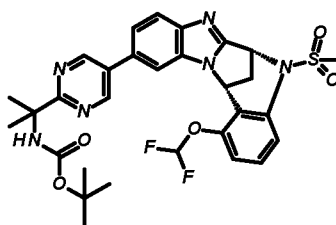


- 1-[(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]-2-(3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)ethanone

- To a solution of *Example 19* (50 mg, 0.14 mmol) in dichloromethane (1 mL), was added triethylamine (24 μL, 0.17 mmol) followed by chloroacetyl chloride (12 μL, 0.015 mL). After stirring for 1 hour, a further 0.11 equiv of chloroacetyl chloride (1.2 μL, 0.014 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 20 min.
- 25 Triethylamine (24 μL, 0.17 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture followed by 3,7-

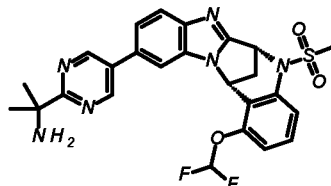
dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (11.5 mg, 0.168 mmol) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The reaction mixture was directly purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) and then DCM/MeOH (from 0 to 20%) as eluent. A second purification by Prep-HPLC (basic conditions) afforded 20 mg (27%) of the *title compound*. LCMS Method 3 (ES+) RT 2.91 min. $[M+H]^+ = 517/519$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.12 (d, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.68 – 7.59 (m, 1H), 7.51 – 7.41 (m, 1H), 7.34 – 7.19 (m, 2H), 6.97 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.25 (s, 1H), 6.07 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.14 (s, 3H), 4.06 (s, 1H), 3.83 (s, 4H), 3.22 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.63 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H).

10

EXAMPLE 41

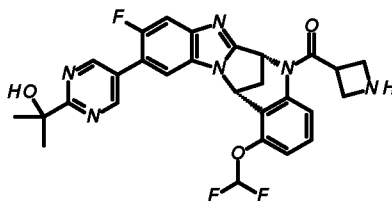
tert-butyl (2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

The *title compound* was prepared from *tert*-butyl N-[1-methyl-1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]ethyl]carbamate, and *Example 23* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to give, following purification by Prep-HPLC the *title compound* as a white solid (100.5 mg, 48% yield). LC/MS Method 3: RT 2.46 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 627$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.02 (s, 2H), 7.80 (d, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.77 – 7.70 (m, 1H), 7.64 – 7.52 (m, 2H), 7.50 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.38 (d, $J = 73.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.34 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, $J = 8.2$ Hz, 1H), 6.13 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.95 (d, $J = 4.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.29 – 3.16 (m, 1H), 3.07 (s, 3H), 2.68 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.60 (s, 6H), 1.32 (bs, 9H).

EXAMPLE 42

2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-amine

- 5 To a solution of *Example 41* (98 mg, 0.15 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) was added 4M HCl in dioxane (6 mL). The reaction was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature and then the solvent was evaporated and the crude was dissolved in dichloromethane (5 mL) and a saturated aqueous solution of Na₂CO₃ was added until pH= 8-9. The two phases were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 5 mL,) the
- 10 combined organic layers were washed with brine, filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated. The solid obtained was triturated in ether and filtered to give the *title compound* as a white solid (49.2 mg, 60% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.65 mins (pH 10), [M+H]⁺= 527. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.04 (s, 2H), 7.85 – 7.71 (m, 2H), 7.64 – 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.50 (t, J = 73.4 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.13 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.95 (d, J = 3.9 Hz, 1H), 3.23 (dt, J = 12.2, 4.5
- 15 Hz, 1H), 3.07 (s, 3H), 2.68 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 2.31 (bs, 2H), 1.47 (s, 6H).

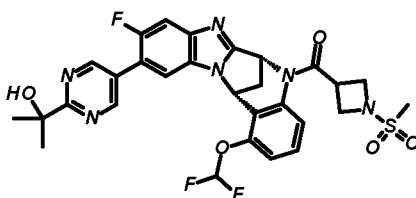
EXAMPLE 43

- Azetidin-3-yl[(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]methanone
- 20

To *Intermediate 95* (158 mg, 0.24 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) was added 4M HCl in 1,4-dioxane (2mL) and the reaction was stirred for 10 minutes. Methanol (2 mL) was added to keep the mixture in solution. The reaction mixture was stirred for 3 hours before the solvent was evaporated. The crude material was purified by preparative HPLC,

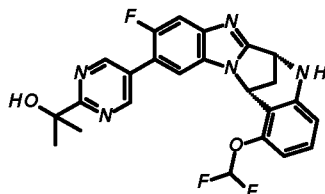
yielding 22 mg (15%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 1.57 min., $[M+H]^+ = 551$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.97 (d, $J = 1.7$ Hz, 2H), 8.22 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.70 (d, $J = 11.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.61 (d, $J = 6.9$ Hz, 1H), 7.43 (t, $J = 73.8$ Hz, 1H), 7.29 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, $J = 8.2$ Hz, 1H), 6.07 (d, $J = 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 5.61 (bs, 1H), 5.15 (bs, 1H), 4.38 (bs, 1H), 4.07 (bs, 1H), 3.84 (bs, 4H), 3.20 – 3.08 (m, 1H), 2.64 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.56 (s, 6H).

EXAMPLE 44



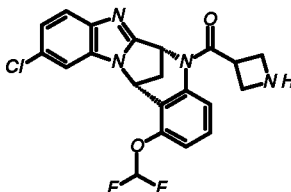
10 [(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl][1-(methanesulfonyl)azetidin-3-yl]methanone

Methanesulfonyl chloride (3 μL , 0.038 mmol) was added to a solution of *Example 43* (17 mg, 0.03 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (6 μL , 0.034 mmol) in DCM (0.3 mL) at 0 $^{\circ}\text{C}$. The reaction mixture was stirred at this temperature for 10 minutes and then at room temperature for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated and the crude material was purified by preparative HPLC, yielding 1.5 mg (8%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.04 min., $[M+H]^+ = 629$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol- d_4) δ 8.98 (d, $J = 1.6$ Hz, 2H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.70 (d, $J = 6.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, $J = 11.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.29 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.15 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.96 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.21 (d, $J = 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 5.80 (s, 1H), 4.46 (dq, $J = 13.6, 6.2$ Hz, 2H), 4.31 (td, $J = 13.6, 12.0, 5.9$ Hz, 2H), 3.30 – 3.18 (m, 1H), 3.04 (s, 3H), 2.73 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.66 (s, 6H). OH signal is exchanged with water. One proton is missing due to overlapping with the solvent residual peak.

EXAMPLE 45

2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 A mixture of *Intermediate 92* (500 mg, 0.9117 mmol), cesium carbonate (594 mg, 1.82 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphtyl (80 mg, 0.13 mmol) and palladium(II) acetate (25 mg, 0.11 mmol) in toluene (18 mL) was de-gassed and stirred at 110°C under nitrogen for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, filtered through a pad of celite and washed with ethyl acetate. The combined
- 10 filtrate and washings were evaporated to dryness using an oil pump to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (25 to 100% EtOAc in hexanes) to afford the *title compound* (165 mg, 0.35 mmol, 39% yield) as a brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.99 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 468$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.97 (d, J = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 7.61 (d, J = 11.7 Hz, 1H), 7.53 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.21 – 7.13 (m, 1H), 7.17
- 15 (t, J = 74.2 Hz, 1H), 6.98 (t, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.35 (t, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 5.90 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.14 (s, 1H), 4.92 (t, J = 3.7 Hz, 1H), 2.95 (dt, J = 9.0, 4.3 Hz, 1H), 2.37 (d, J = 11.4 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H).

EXAMPLE 46

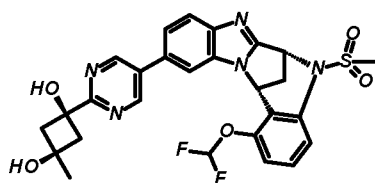
- 20 Azetidin-3-yl[(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]methanone

HCl 4M in dioxane was added To *Intermediate 97* (10 mg, 0.019 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) was added 4M HCl in 1,4-dioxan (2 mL) and the reaction stirred for 5 hours before

the solvent was evaporated. The crude material was purified by preparative HPLC, yielding 3 mg (39%) of the *title compound* as a white solid.

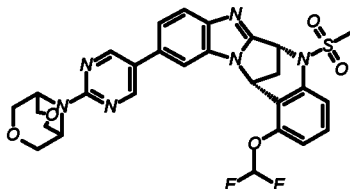
LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.12 min, $[M+H]^+ = 431$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.21 (d, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.64 (d, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.46 (d, $J = 2.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.42 (t, $J = 74.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.27 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.20 (dd, $J = 8.7, 2.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, $J = 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.03 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.56 (d, $J = 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.41 – 4.30 (m, 1H), 4.10 – 3.65 (m, 4H), 3.09 (dt, $J = 12.1, 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.60 (d, $J = 12.0$ Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 47



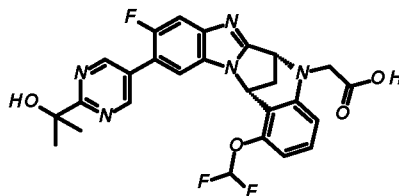
cis-1- $\{5-[(6R,12R)$ -11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-methylcyclobutane-1,3-diol

A solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1M in THF, 0.36 mL, 0.36 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 98* (82 mg, 0.12 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (0.72 mL) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was partitioned between dichloromethane (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The two layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 20mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with brine, filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 47 mg (68%) of the *title compound* as a brown solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 1.61 min. (pH 10), $[M+H]^+ = 570$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.09 (s, 2H), 7.81 (dd, $J = 8.5, 0.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.78 – 7.76 (m, 1H), 7.62 (dd, $J = 8.5, 1.8$ Hz, 1H), 7.58 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.50 (t, $J = 73.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.34 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, $J = 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.13 (d, $J = 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 5.96 (d, $J = 3.8$ Hz, 1H), 5.61 (s, 1H), 4.95 (s, 1H), 3.32 – 3.18 (m, 1H), 3.07 (s, 3H), 2.97 – 2.85 (m, 2H), 3.05 (s, 3H), 2.68 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.41 (d, 1.09 $J = 12.9$ Hz, 2H).

EXAMPLE 48

(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-{2-[(1S,5S)-3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-7-(methanesulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

The *title compound* was prepared from 9-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]-3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane and *Example 23* according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to give, following purification by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, the *title compound* as a white solid (114 mg, 58% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.88 mins (pH 10), $[M+H]^+ = 597$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.71 (s, 2H), 7.77 – 7.68 (m, 1H), 7.65 – 7.53 (m, 2H), 7.49 (t, $J = 1.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.46 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.33 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.10 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.93 (d, $J = 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.52 (s, 2H), 4.10 – 3.93 (m, 4H), 3.77 (dd, $J = 11.1, 2.7$ Hz, 4H), 3.21 (dt, $J = 12.3, 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 3.06 (s, 3H), 2.66 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 49

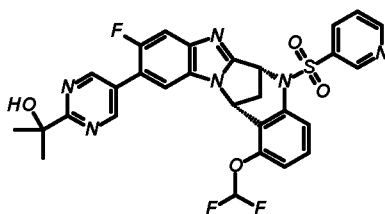
[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]acetic acid

A solution of 1M sodium hydroxide in water (30 μ L, 0.03 mmol) was added to a solution of *Example 38* (17 mg, 0.031 mmol) in ethanol (30 μ L). The mixture was stirred for 3 hours and then purified directly by preparative HPLC affording the *title compound* as a white solid (9 mg, 54%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.68 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 526$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.96 (d, $J = 1.7$ Hz, 2H), 7.66 – 7.58 (m, 1H), 7.54 (d, $J = 6.9$

Hz, 1H), 7.35 (t, J = 74.2 Hz, 1H), 7.04 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.37 (dd, J = 8.3, 4.7 Hz, 2H), 5.95 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.15 (s, 1H), 4.95 (d, J = 3.4 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (d, J = 4.1 Hz, 2H), 2.95 (dt, J = 11.3, 4.3 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). COOH signal interchange with the water of the DMSO and one proton is missing due to overlapping with the residual signal of

5 DMSO.

EXAMPLE 50



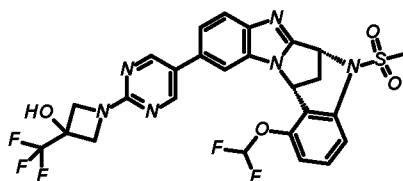
2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(pyridin-3-ylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

10 To *Intermediate 99* (275 mg, 0.40 mmol), in a Schlenk tube were added cesium acetate (383 mg, 1.99 mmol), cuprous iodide (155 mg, 0.79 mmol) and dimethylsulfoxide (0.4 mL) and the mixture was sealed and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C for 18 hours before water and ethyl acetate was added to the reaction mixture and the two layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl

15 acetate (x2) and the combined organic layers were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent evaporated. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 8 mg (3%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 4*: RT 2.15 min. (pH 3), [M+H]⁺ = 609.

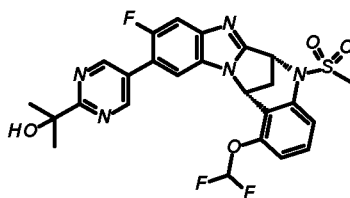
¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.24 (dd, J = 2.5, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 8.95 (d, J = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.81 (dd, J = 4.8, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 8.58 (ddd, J = 8.2, 2.5, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, J = 11.3 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (ddd, J = 8.2, 4.8, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (d, J = 11.6 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (t, J = 74.7 Hz, 1H), 7.27 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.88 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.36 (d, J = 3.7 Hz, 1H), 6.08 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.15 (s, 1H), 3.28 – 3.18 (m, 1H), 2.61 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H).

20

EXAMPLE 51

1-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-3-ol

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 23* (149 mg, 0.35 mmol), and *Intermediate 100* (186 mg, 0.54 mmol), according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 40-100% EtOAc in hexane) and freeze dried from acetonitrile/water to give the *title compound* (119 mg, 56 %) as a pale yellow solid. δ_H (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 8.70 (s, 2 H), 7.71-7.75 (m, 1 H), 7.61 (d, 1 H, *J* 1.3 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1 H, *J* 8.7 Hz), 7.49 (dd, 1 H, *J* 73.9, 72.5 Hz), 7.46 (dd, 1 H, *J* 8.5, 1.7 Hz), 7.42 (s, 1 H), 7.33 (t, 1 H, *J* 8.5 Hz), 6.92 (d, 1 H, *J* 8.2 Hz), 6.10 (d, 1 H, *J* 4.4 Hz), 5.93 (d, 1 H, *J* 3.5 Hz), 4.34 (m, 2 H), 4.12 (d, 2 H, *J* 9.9 Hz), 3.17-3.25 (m, 1 H), 3.06 (s, 3 H), 2.63-2.70 (m, 1 H). LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 4*: 609 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.21 minutes. LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 5*: 609 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.17 minutes.

EXAMPLE 52

20

2-{5-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 101* (192 mg, 0.31 mmol), potassium carbonate (107 mg, 0.77 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (92 mg, 0.15 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (24 mg, 0.11 mmol) and toluene (3 mL) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 23*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 20-100% EtOAc in hexane) and further purified by

25

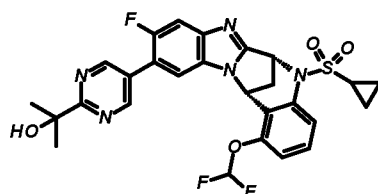
preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (40 mg, 24 %) as a white solid. δ_{H} (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) 8.97 (d, 2 H, J 1.7 Hz), 7.70-7.75 (m, 1 H), 7.62 (d, 1 H, J 6.8 Hz), 7.58 (d, 1 H, J 8.6 Hz), 7.46 (dd, 1 H, J 74.1, 72.6 Hz), 7.35 (t, 1 H, J 8.5 Hz), 6.94 (d, 1 H, J 8.1 Hz), 6.12 (d, 1 H, J 4.3 Hz), 5.97 (d, 1 H, J 3.6 Hz), 5.15 (s, 1 H), 3.19-3.28 (m, 1 H),
 5 3.09 (s, 3 H), 2.68 (d, 1 H, J 12.1 Hz), 1.56 (s, 6 H).

LCMS (ES+) *Method 5*: 546 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.07 minutes.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 546 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.13 minutes.

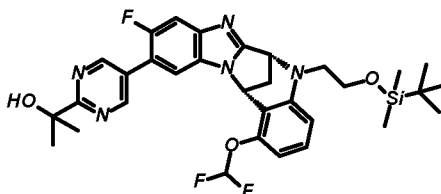
EXAMPLE 53

10



2-{5-[(6R,12R)-7-(cyclopropylsulfonyl)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 102* (110 mg, 0.17 mmol), potassium carbonate (60 mg, 0.43 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (44 mg, 0.07 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (10 mg, 0.045 mmol) and toluene (2 mL) in accordance with the synthetic Method of *Example 23*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 20-100% EtOAc in hexane) and further purified by preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (6 mg, 6 %) as an off-white solid. δ_{H} (300 MHz,
 15 DMSO- d_6) 8.98 (d, 2 H, J 1.7 Hz), 7.71 (d, 1 H, J 11.4 Hz), 7.63 (s, 1 H), 7.60 (d, 1 H, J 2.1 Hz), 7.47 (dd, 1 H, J 74.3, 72.3 Hz), 7.33 (t, 1 H, J 8.5 Hz), 6.92 (d, 1 H, J 8.1 Hz), 6.11 (d, 1 H, J 4.3 Hz), 5.98 (d, 1 H, J 3.5 Hz), 5.15 (s, 1 H), 3.16-3.25 (m, 1 H), 2.85-2.95 (m, 1 H), 2.63-2.70 (m, 1 H), 1.56 (s, 6 H), 1.21-1.31 (m, 2 H), 0.94-1.05 (m, 2 H).
 20 LCMS (ES+) *Method 5*: 572 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.71 minutes.
 25 LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 572 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.22 minutes.

EXAMPLE 54

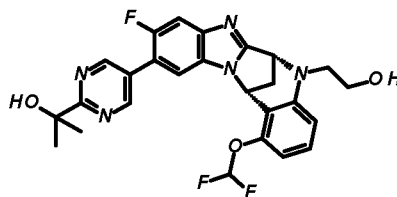
2-{5-[(6R,12R)-7-(2-{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)ethyl]-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 103* (125 mg, 0.18 mmol), cesium carbonate (117 mg, 0.36 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (16 mg, 0.026 mmol) and palladium(II) acetate (6 mg, 0.027 mmol) and toluene (5 mL) by the method of *Example 38*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 20-50% EtOAc in hexane) and freeze dried from acetonitrile/water to give the *title compound* (84 mg, 76 %) as an off-white solid.

δ_H (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 8.89 (d, 2 H, *J* 1.7 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1 H, *J* 11.4 Hz), 7.47 (d, 1 H, *J* 6.9 Hz), 7.29 (dd, 1 H *J* 74.3, 73.0 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1 H, *J* 8.4 Hz), 6.54 (d, 1 H, *J* 8.6 Hz), 6.36 (d, 1 H, *J* 7.9 Hz), 5.88 (d, 1 H, *J* 4.4 Hz), 5.07 (s, 1 H), 4.93 (d, 1 H, *J* 3.3 Hz), 3.70-3.92 (m, 2 H), 3.33-3.52 (m, 2 H), 2.90-2.98 (m, 1 H), 2.31 (d, 1 H, *J* 11.7 Hz), 1.48 (s, 6 H), 0.81 (s, 9 H), 0.00 (s, 6 H).

LCMS (ES+) *Method 5*: 626 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.37 minutes.

LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 626 (M+H)⁺, RT 3.41 minutes.

EXAMPLE 55

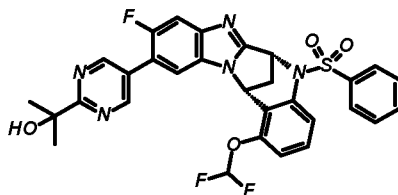
2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(2-hydroxyethyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Example 54* (78 mg) in THF (5 mL) was added tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1M in THF, 0.26 mL, 0.26 mmol) and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After which time the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between DCM (20 mL) and brine (20 mL), layers separated and

organics washed with brine (2 x 20 mL), the combined aqueous extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organics were dried (phase separator) and the volatiles concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (45 mg, 71 %) as a white solid.

- 5 δ_H (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) 8.96 (d, 2 H, J 1.7 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1 H, J 11.5 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1 H, J 6.8 Hz), 7.36 (dd, 1 H, J 74.5, 72.8 Hz), 7.08 (t, 1 H, J 7.6 Hz), 6.59 (d, 1 H, J 8.5 Hz), 6.42 (d, 1 H, J 8.0 Hz), 5.95 (d, 1 H, J 4.4 Hz), 5.05-5.22 (m, 1 H), 5.01 (d, 1 H, J 3.2 Hz), 3.69-3.79 (m, 1 H), 3.54-3.65 (m, 1 H), 3.36-3.53 (m, 2 H), 3.12-3.21 (m, 1 H), 2.94-3.03 (m, 1 H), 2.44 (d, 1 H, J 11.3 Hz), 1.55 (s, 6 H).
- 10 LCMS (ES+) *Method 5*: 512 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.91 minutes.
LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 512 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.91 minutes.

EXAMPLE 56



15

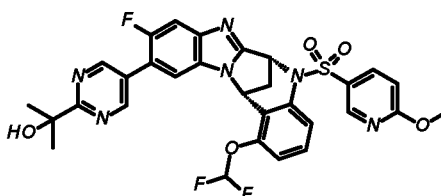
2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-(phenylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 104* (174 mg, 0.25 mmol), potassium carbonate (90 mg, 0.64 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (62 mg, 0.10 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (14 mg, 0.062 mmol) and toluene (3 mL) by the method of *Example 23*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) and further purified by preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (6 mg, 4 %) as a white solid.
- 20

- 25 δ_H (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) 8.96 (d, 2 H, J 1.6 Hz), 8.10-8.16 (m, 2 H), 7.77 (d, 1 H, J 11.3 Hz), 7.55-7.71 (m, 4 H), 7.40 (dd, 1 H, J 74.3, 72.1 Hz), 7.31-7.36 (m, 1 H), 7.21 (t, 1 H, J 8.4 Hz), 6.84 (d, 1 H, J 8.1 Hz), 6.34 (d, 1 H, J 3.6 Hz), 6.07 (d, 1 H, J 4.1 Hz), 5.03-5.27 (m, 1 H), 3.17-3.27 (m, 1 H), 2.51-2.56 (m, 1 H), 1.55 (s, 6 H).

LCMS (ES+) *Method 5*: 608 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.45 minutes.

- 30 LCMS (ES+) *Method 4*: 608 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.48 minutes.

EXAMPLE 57

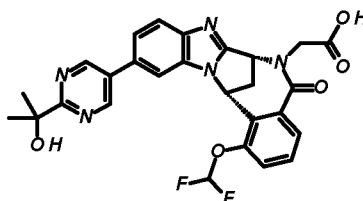
2-(5-((6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7-[(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)sulfonyl]-7,12-
 5 dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl}pyrimidin-2-
 yl)propan-2-ol

To a microwave vial was added *Intermediate 105* (146 mg, 0.20 mmol), potassium carbonate (71 mg, 0.51 mmol), (+/-)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (51 mg, 0.08 mmol), palladium(II) acetate (11 mg, 0.05 mmol) and toluene (2.5 mL). The
 10 reaction mixture was sealed and degassed with nitrogen and heated to 120 °C in a microwave for 2 hours. After which time the reaction was cooled to room temperature, filtered through celite and washed with EtOAc and DCM. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and the crude material purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-100% EtOAc in hexane) and further purified by preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (6
 15 mg, 5 %) as an off-white solid.

δ_H (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 8.95 (d, *J* 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.88 (dd, *J* 2.7, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 8.45 (dd, *J* 8.9, 2.7 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (d, *J* 11.3 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (d, *J* 6.8 Hz, 1H), 7.47 (d, *J* 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (dd, *J* 74.1, 72.2 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (t, *J* 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.00 (dd, *J* 8.9, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 6.87 (d, *J* 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.32 (d, *J* 3.8 Hz, 1H), 6.07 (d, *J* 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.15 (s, 1H), 3.89 (s, 3H),
 20 3.23 (dt, *J* 12.3, 4.4 Hz, 1H), 2.57 (d, *J* 12.3 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H).

LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 5* 639 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.36 minutes.

LCMS (ES⁺) *Method 4* 639 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.48 minutes.

EXAMPLE 58

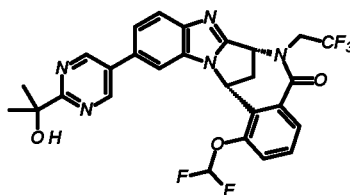
25

[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-oxo-

5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]acetic acid

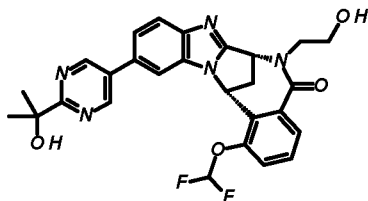
To a solution of *Intermediate 106* (20.0 mg, 0.03 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was added a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (0.4 mL, 0.4 mmol, 1M in THF) at ambient temperature and the reaction stirred for 72 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between water (10 mL) and DCM (2 × 10 mL), and the organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by preparative HPLC afforded the *title compound* (3.0 mg, 19%).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.27 (dd, *J* = 6.3, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 7.84 – 7.56 (m, 3H), 7.55 – 7.40 (m, 2H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.31 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (s, 1H), 4.56 (d, *J* = 16.3 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (d, *J* = 16.1 Hz, 1H), 3.56 (dt, *J* = 14.0, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 2.89 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: MH⁺ 536, retention time 1.19 minutes.

EXAMPLE 59(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

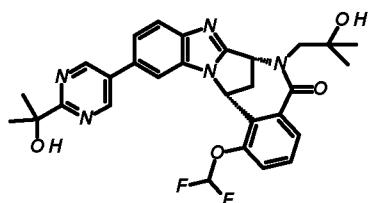
To a solution of *Intermediate 107* (100.0 mg, 0.148 mmol) in THF (10 mL) were added HCl (20 mL, 40 mmol, 2M in 1,4 dioxan), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was neutralised with NaOH (10% aqueous solution) and extracted with DCM (2 × 10 mL), the organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by preparative HPLC afforded the desired product (15.0 mg, 18%).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.26 (dd, *J* = 7.0, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.03 – 7.37 (m, 6H), 6.38 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.45 (d, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (s, 1H), 4.94 – 4.70 (m, 1H), 4.59 (dt, *J* = 15.3, 9.3 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (dt, *J* = 14.3, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.90 (d, *J* = 13.9 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 560, retention time 2.19 minutes.

EXAMPLE 60

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxyethyl)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- To a solution of *Intermediate 109* (60.0 mg, 0.094 mmol) in THF (5.0 mL) were added aqueous HCl (10 mL, 20 mmol, 2M), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours before the completion of the reaction. The reaction mixture was neutralised with 10% aqueous NaOH solution and extracted with DCM (2 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by preparative HPLC (reverse phase) afforded the *title compound* (27.0 mg, 55%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.31 (dd, *J* = 5.5, 4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.99 – 7.39 (m, 6H), 6.32 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.38 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 4.01 – 3.88 (m, 2H), 3.88 – 3.71 (m, 4H), 3.54 (dt, *J* = 14.1, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 2.85 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS
- Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 522, retention time 1.69 minutes.

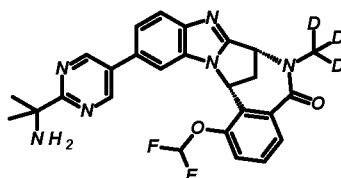
EXAMPLE 61

- (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 23* (120 mg, 0.2 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) were added cesium carbonate (320 mg, 1.01 mmol) and 1-iodo-2-methylpropan-2-ol (50.0 μL, 0.41 mmol), and the mixture was heated in a microwave at 150 °C for 22 hours. The reaction mixture

was partitioned between water and DCM (2×10 mL), and the organics were combined, dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by preparative HPLC (reverse phase) afforded the *title compound* (12.0 mg, 11%). ^1H NMR (300 MHz, $\text{DMSO-}d_6$) δ 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.32 (dd, $J = 5.5, 4.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.99 – 7.37 (m, 6H), 6.34 (d, $J = 6.9$ Hz, 1H), 5.65 (d, $J = 7.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.05 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.72 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.58 (dd, $J = 14.0, 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.86 (d, $J = 13.8$ Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H), 1.21 (d, $J = 5.7$ Hz, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH^+ 550, retention time 1.57 minutes.

EXAMPLE 62



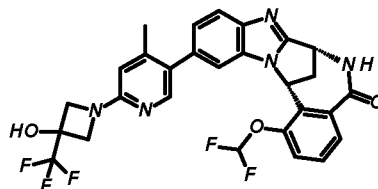
10

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(trideutero)methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 111 (36.0 mg, 0.06 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of HCl in dioxane (4 mL, 4 M) and stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified on silica eluting with 0-10% MeOH/ DCM to give the *title compound* (10 mg, 34%). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, D_2O) δ 8.97 (s, 2H), 8.21 (dd, $J = 7.4, 2.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.94 (dd, $J = 1.7, 0.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.74 (dd, $J = 8.7, 0.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.59 (dd, $J = 8.7, 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.50 – 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.15 (d, $J = 2.4$ Hz, 2H), 6.64 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 5.51 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.59 (dt, $J = 14.4, 7.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.03 (d, $J = 14.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.75 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH^+ 494, retention time 1.45 minutes.

20

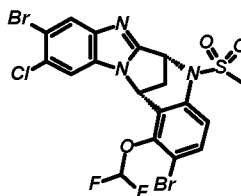
EXAMPLE 63



(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{6-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyridin-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 138* (300 mg, 0.84 mmol) and *Example 11* (350 mg, 0.93 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) and water (0.4 mL) were added K₃PO₄ (540 mg, 2.55 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (38 mg, 0.1 mmol) and *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (40 mg, 0.042 mmol) were added. The mixture was degassed for 10 minutes before heating at 105 °C for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL), dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica eluting with 0 to 10% MeOH in DCM to give the *title compound*, which was then treated with HCl (1.1 eq., 0.5M) to form the HCl salt (107 mg, 21%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.16 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.24 (dd, *J* = 6.4, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 7.82 – 7.25 (m, 7H), 7.19 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 6.32 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.92 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.44 (d, *J* = 10.2 Hz, 1H), 4.21 (d, *J* = 10.1 Hz, 1H), 3.58 – 3.37 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 2.30 – 2.16 (s, 3H). LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI MH⁺ 572, retention time 1.86 minutes.

EXAMPLE 64

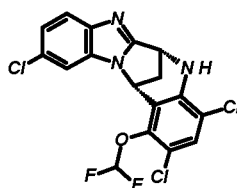


(6R,12R)-3,10-dibromo-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(methylsulfonyl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine

N-Bromosuccinimide (19 mg, 0.11 mmol) was added to a solution of *Example 23* (35 mg, 0.08 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was left to stir overnight. Further *N*-bromosuccinimide (19 mg, 0.11 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture heated at 80°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled and concentrated *in vacuo* to a yellow oil, azeotroping with heptane to remove excess DMF. The crude material was purified by chromatography on silica, eluting with 0-50 % EtOAc in hexanes to afford a clear oil. The material was freeze-dried (MeCN/water) to afford the *title compound* as a white solid (20 mg, 42% yield). ¹H NMR: (DMSO-*d*₆, 400 MHz) δ: 2.66 (d, *J* = 12.4 Hz,

1H), 3.10 (s, 3H), 3.18 (dt, J = 25.0, 8.3, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 5.93 (d, J = 3.6 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (d, J = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 7.31 (t, J = 74.1 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (d, J = 9.3 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, J = 19.5 Hz, 1H), 7.70 (s, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H). LC/MS *Method 5* RT 2.87 mins, m/z 584 and 586.

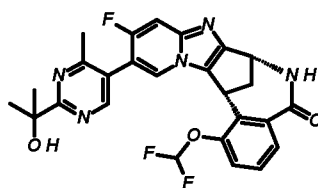
5

EXAMPLE 65

(6R,12R)-2,8,10-trichloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo [2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

N-Chlorosuccinimide (21 mg, 0.16 mmol) was added to a solution of *Example 19* (43 mg, 0.12 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) at RT. The reaction was stirred at 60°C for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled and concentrated *in vacuo* to a yellow oil, azeotroping with heptane to remove the DMF. The crude material was subjected to chromatography on silica (0-50% EtOAc in hexanes) and evaporated to afford a clear oil. The material was freeze-dried (MeCN/water) to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (9 mg, 17% yield). ¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆, 400 MHz) δ: 2.35 (d, J = 11.8 Hz, 1H), 3.00 (dt, J = 16.0, 8.0, 4.0 Hz, 1H), 5.00 (d, J = 3.7 Hz, 1H), 5.92 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (dd, J = 8.6, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (t, J = 73.9 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (d, J = 4.1 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 5* RT 2.60 mins (pH 10), m/z 417

20

EXAMPLE 66

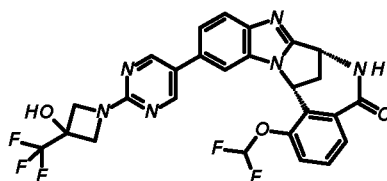
25

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-d][2]benzazocin-5(6H)-one

Intermediate 112 (150 mg, 0.29 mmol), Na₂CO₃(s) (0.15 g, 1.45 mmol) and

- 2,2-dichloro-1,1,3,3-tetracyclohexyl-1 λ^5 ,3 λ^5 -diphospha-2-palladacyclohexane (0.02 g, 0.02 mmol) were suspended in degassed anhydrous dimethylacetamide (3.0 mL) in a 25 mL pressure vessel. The vessel was sealed and degassed thoroughly under vacuum then placed under an atmosphere of nitrogen. This process was twice repeated then the vessel
- 5 was evacuated and charged with 3 bar CO gas. The mixture was heated to 150 °C overnight whereon the internal pressure reached 5 bar. On cooling to room temperature, the mixture was thoroughly evacuated, diluted with EtOAc (20 mL) and filtered over a pad of celite, washing the filter cake with further EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (25 mL) and the aqueous phase re-extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL).
- 10 The combined organic phase was washed with brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude product (165 mg) as a brown glass. Column chromatography (C18, biotage isolera, 30 g) eluting with 0 to 45 % acetonitrile in water spiked with 0.1% formic acid afforded the racemic target (30 mg, 19%) as a tan solid.
- 15 Preparative chiral SFC employing a Chiralcel OD-H 25cm eluting with 15% Methanol: 85% CO₂ eluting at 15 ml / min, gave the desired *enantiomer* eluting at 4.88 minutes. Freeze drying from 1:1 MeCN-water afforded the *title compound* (6.9 mg, 5%, 92% chiral purity) as a colourless solid. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.87 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 8.69 (s, 1H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 7.9, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 8.08
- 20 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.64 (d, *J* = 11.1 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (t, *J* = 75.0 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (d, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (t, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.13 (d, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (s, 1H), 4.68 (t, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 2.43 – 2.39 (m, 1H), 2.37 (s, 3H), 1.53 (s, 6H). LCMS *Method 6*: MH⁺ *m/z* 510, RT 2.37 min

25

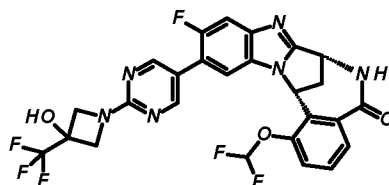
EXAMPLE 67

30

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 11* (350 mg, 0.933 mmol) and *Intermediate 100* (642 mg, 1.86 mmol), according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 12% MeOH in EtOAc) to give the *title compound* (305 mg, 59%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.13 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.68 (s, 2H), 8.22 (q, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 7.73 – 7.64 (m, 1H), 7.60 (dd, *J* = 1.9, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.57 – 7.38 (m, 4H), 6.34 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.88 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.39 – 4.29 (m, 2H), 4.17 – 3.96 (m, 2H), 3.60 – 3.39 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, *J* = 13.3 Hz, 1H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES⁺) RT 1.87 min, 557 (M-H)⁺

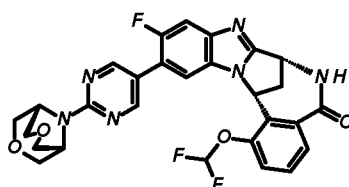
EXAMPLE 68



(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 10* (75 mg, 0.19 mmol) and *Intermediate 100* (138mg, 0.40 mmol), according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 12% MeOH in EtOAc) to obtain the *title compound* (61mg, 53%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.06 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.49 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.16 (dd, *J* = 6.0, 3.4 Hz, 1H), 7.59 – 7.28 (m, 5H), 6.26 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.82 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 4.28 (d, *J* = 10.3 Hz, 2H), 4.06 (d, *J* = 10.1 Hz, 2H), 3.41 (dd, *J* = 13.5, 6.8 Hz, 1H), 2.66 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H). LCMS *Method 5*: (ES⁺) RT 1.96 min, 575 (M-H)⁺

EXAMPLE 69

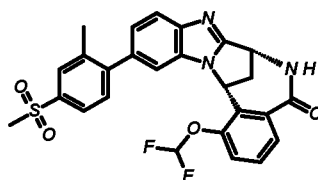


(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[(1S,5S)-3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 10* (75 mg, 0.19 mmol) and [5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]-3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (126 mg, 0.38 mmol), by a palladium catalysed *Suzuki* coupling according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*. The crude compound was purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford the *title compound*
- 10 (5 mg, 5%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.14 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.57 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.24 (dd, *J* = 5.6, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 7.65 – 7.56 (m, 1H), 7.54 – 7.42 (m, 4H), 6.33 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.90 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.53 (s, 2H), 4.03 (d, *J* = 11.3 Hz, 4H), 3.82 – 3.74 (m, 4H), 3.48 (dt, *J* = 13.5, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.74 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES+) RT 1.79 min, 565 (M+H)⁺

15

EXAMPLE 70



- (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-methyl-4-(methanesulfonyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-
- 20 7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

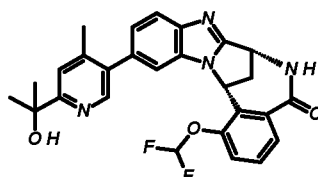
- (1-bromo-4-methanesulfonyl-2-methylbenzene (483 mg, 1.86 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (525 mg, 2.0 mmol), and potassium acetate (369 mg, 3.7 mmol) were dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (15 mL) and the mixture degassed thoroughly with nitrogen. 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane
- 25 complex (38 mg, 0.05 mmol) was then added and the mixture heated for 2.5 hours under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was separated between EtOAc (25 mL) and water (25 mL). The organic layer was passed through a phase separator and evaporated *in vacuo*.

The crude product was engaged in a Suzuki reaction with *Example 11* (350 mg, 0.93 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (42 mg, 0.11 mmol),

tris(dibenzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (56 mg, 0.060 mmol), and K₃PO₄ (592 mg, 2.79 mmol) in dioxane (5ml) plus 2 drops of water. The mixture was heated in microwave for 18 hours at 110 degrees. After this time the reaction mixture was separated between EtOAc (25 mL) and water (25 mL) and the organic layer was passed through a phase separator and evaporated *in vacuo*. The resultant residue was then purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂, 0 to 100% EtOAc in DCM and then 1 to 10% MeOH in EtOAc) to obtain mostly pure product (350 mg as brown solid 90% pure). Further purification by flash chromatography on silica gel 1-10% MeOH in DCM gave the *title compound* as off white powder (45 mg, 10%).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.15 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.31 – 8.18 (m, 1H), 7.89 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.87 – 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.59 – 7.38 (m, 4H), 7.45 (t, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 7.36 – 7.15 (m, 1H), 6.31 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.89 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (dt, *J* = 13.6, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.26 (s, 3H), 2.74 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.30 (s, 3H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES⁺) RT 1.83 min, 510 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 71



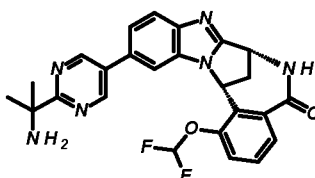
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 113 (650 mg, 0.97 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (6 mL) and treated with a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1M in THF, 2.90 mL, 2.90 mmol) dropwise and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* and separated between water and DCM. The organic phase was evaporated *in vacuo* and treated with 2M HCl (aq) (20 mL) and THF (5mL). The reaction was stirred overnight and a further 20 mL of 2M HCl (aq) added. After a further 18 hours the reaction mixture was diluted with water (75 mL) and then evaporated *in vacuo* to remove volatiles. The aqueous was washed with DCM (4 x 50 mL) to remove impurities and then the solution was then made basic with saturated sodium carbonate solution and extracted into DCM (2 x 75 mL). The combined organics were washed with water (50

mL) dried (sodium sulphate), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid was then dissolved in 0.5N HCl (aq) and freeze dried to afford the *title compound* as the HCl salt. (332 mg, 70%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.20 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.25 (dt, *J* = 8.6, 4.3 Hz, 1H), 8.17 (s, 1H), 7.81 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (m, 4H), 7.40 – 7.32 (m, 1H), 6.37 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.97 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.58 – 3.43 (m, 1H), 2.78 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (s, 3H), 1.65 (s, 6H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES+) RT 1.62 min, 491 (M+H)⁺

10

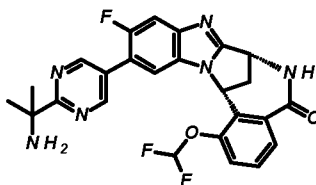
EXAMPLE 72

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 115 (154 mg, 0.21 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of 4M HCl in dioxane (10 mL) and stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. After this time the mixture was evaporated *in vacuo* and separated between EtOAc (50 mL) and sodium carbonate (50 mL), the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL) and the combined organics were dried (through a phase separator) and evaporated *in vacuo*. The crude compound was purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford the *title compound* (27 mg, 27%).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.14 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 9.02 (s, 2H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 6.0, 3.4 Hz, 1H), 7.80 – 7.65 (m, 3H), 7.59 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.41 (m, 2H), 6.36 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.90 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (dt, *J* = 13.9, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 2.75 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.10 (s, 2H), 1.46 (s, 6H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES+) RT 1.30 min, 477.2 (M+H)⁺

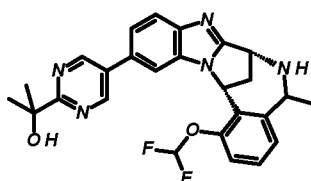
25

EXAMPLE 73

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

Intermediate 116 was dissolved in a mixture of dioxane (5 mL) and 4M HCl in dioxane (5mL). The mixture was stirred for 3 hours at room temperature before being evaporated
 5 *in vacuo*. The reaction mixture was then separated between EtOAc (25 mL) and 1M HCl (20mL). The acid layer made basic with saturated sodium carbonate solution and extracted with DCM (3x25mL). The combined organic layers were dried (phase separator) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (25 mg, 40% over two steps). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.16 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.92
 10 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.24 (p, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 7.71 – 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.58 – 7.46 (m, 4H), 6.35 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.92 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (dt, *J* = 13.5, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.75 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.15 (s, 2H), 1.48 (s, 6H). LCMS basic *Method 5* (ES+) RT 1.45 min, 495.2 (M+H)⁺

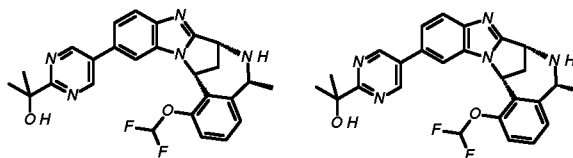
EXAMPLE 74



15

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

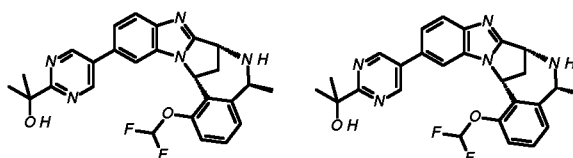
Intermediate 119 (150 mg, 0.3991 mmol), 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (105 mg, 0.3976 mmol), cesium carbonate (0.260 g.,
 20 0.797 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (18.3 mg., 0.020 mmol), and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (17.8 mg., 0.0479 mmol) were dissolved in a degassed mixture of 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) and water (0.5 mL). The reaction mixture was heated for 3 hours at 105°C. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, the combined organic layers dried
 25 over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC-LCMS (basic conditions; Gr 5-70 (NH₄)₂CO₃) to afford 36 mg (19%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 1.76 min., 478.2 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 75

or

- 5 2-{5-[(5R or 5S,7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
 The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 120* (40 mg, 0.106 mmol) and 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol according to a method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to
 10 afford the *title compound* 24 mg (47%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 8.91 (s, 2 H), 7.91 (d, 1 H, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.46 (m, 2 H), 7.27 (t, 1 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.15 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (t, 1 H, J = 73.8 Hz), 6.29 (d, 1 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 4.73 (d, 1 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 4.68 (s, 1 H), 3.18 (m, 1 H), 2.90 (q, 1 H, J = 6.3 Hz), 2.47 (d, 1 H, J = 12.4 Hz), 2.42 (s, 1 H), 1.64 (s, 6 H), 1.41 (d, 3 H, J = 6.4 Hz). LCMS
 15 *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 2.36 min., 478.2 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 76

or

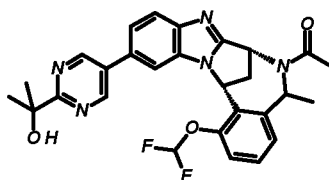
20

2-{5-[(5R or 5S,7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 121* (40 mg, 0.106 mmol) and 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol according to a
 25 method involving the same procedural steps as those described for *Example 20*, to afford the *title compound* 25 mg (49%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ ppm 8.94 (s, 2 H), 7.87 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1 H, J

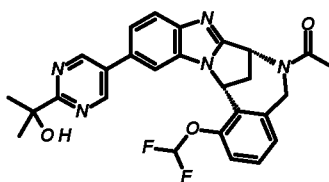
= 1.4 Hz), 7.45 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.5, 1.7 Hz), 7.23 (t, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.09 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 6.77 (t, 1 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 6.25 (d, 1 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 4.71 (m, 2 H), 4.50 (q, 1 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 3.24 (ddd, 1 H, J = 13.0, 7.5, 6.0 Hz), 2.61 (d, 1 H, J = 12.6 Hz), 2.01 (s, 1 H), 1.65 (s, 6 H), 0.45 (d, 3 H, J = 7.4 Hz). LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) RT 1.83 min., 478.2 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 77

1-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]ethanone

To a solution of *Example 74* (30 mg, 0.063 mmol) in dichloromethane (0.5 mL) was added pyridine (50 μ L). The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and acetic anhydride (0.5 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Water and solid NaHCO₃ were added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 24 mg (74%) of the *title compound* as a mixture of diastereomers. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 3.53 min and 3.70 min., 520.3 (M+H)⁺.

20

EXAMPLE 78

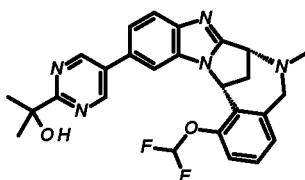
1-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7H)-yl]ethanone

To a solution of *Intermediate 128 I* (300 mg, 0.48 mmol) in methanol (7 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (460 mg, 2.42 mmol). The reaction

25

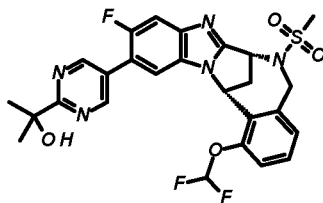
mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The methanol was evaporated at *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in DCM (2 mL). The organic layer was washed with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (3 x 1 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative basic reverse phase HPLC-MS to afford 150 mg (61%) of the *title compound* as a white powder.
LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES+) RT 3.71 min., 506 (M+H)⁺.
LCMS *Method 4* acidic (ES+) RT 3.88 min., 506 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 79



2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
Intermediate 129 (80 mg, 0.135 mmol) was treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 78*. The crude material was purified by preparative basic reverse phase HPLC-MS affording 2.4 mg (4%) of the *title compound* as an off white solid.
LCMS *Method 3* basic (ES+) RT 3.83 min., 478.1 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 80



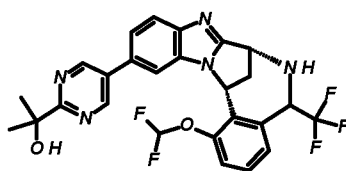
2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-(methylsulfonyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
Example 16 (14.3 mg, 0.03 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (0.6 mL). The solution was cooled at -60°C before successive addition of triethylamine (8.34 µL, 0.06 mmol) and a solution of methanesulfonyl chloride (2.31 µL, 0.03 mmol) in DCM

(20 μ L). The solution was slowly warmed to room temperature overnight. The reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated aqueous solution of NH_4Cl (1 mL) and diluted by DCM (2 mL). The organic layer was washed with successively a saturated solution of NH_4Cl (2 x 1 mL) and a saturated solution of NaHCO_3 (2 x 1 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC-MS yielding to 11 mg (66%) of the *title compound* as an off white solid.

LCMS Method 3 (ES+) RT 4.07 min., 560.13 (M+H)⁺.

LCMS Method 4 (ES+) RT 4.24 min., 560.13 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 81



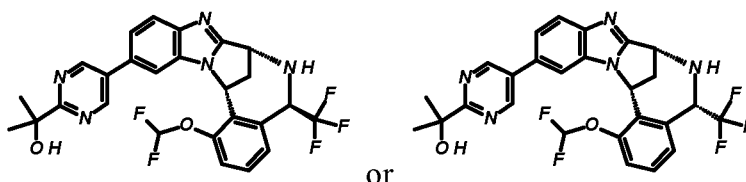
2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Intermediate 130* (7 mg, 0.011 mmol) in methanol (0.5 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (10 mg, 0.053 mmol) and the resulting slurry was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was then diluted with dichloromethane and aqueous saturated solution of NaHCO_3 . The two phases were separated and the aqueous layer further extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude material was purified by basic reverse phase HPLC-MS, yielding to 2.8 mg (49%) of the *title compound* in a 83/17 ratio of diastereoisomers.

LCMS Method 3 (ES+) RT 4.1 min., 532.2 (M+H)⁺.

LCMS Method 4 (ES+) RT 2.66 min., 532.2 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 82



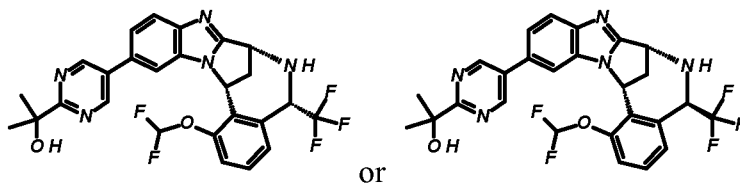
2-{5-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
or

5 2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Intermediate 131* (4.8 mg, 0.0074 mmol) in methanol (0.5 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (7.1 mg, 0.037 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The methanol was evaporated at room temperature *in vacuo*.

10 The crude material was purified by basic reverse phase HPLC-MS, yielding 3.9 mg (99%) of the *title compound* as a pale yellow oil. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.72 (m, 2 H), 7.17 (s, 1 H), 7.03 (m, 4H), 6.86 (m, 2 H), 6.38 (m, 1 H), 5.32 (m, 1H), 4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.51 (m, 1 H), 3.48 (m, 1 H), 2.83 (m, 1 H), 2.41 (m, 1 H), 1.62 (m, 6 H). LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺) RT 2.33 min., 532.2 (M+H)⁺. LCMS *Method 4* (ES⁺) RT 2.35 min.,
15 532.2 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 83



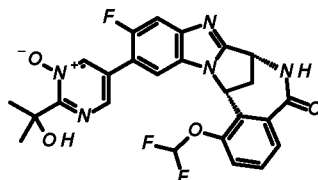
2-{5-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
or

20 2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
25

To a solution of *Intermediate 132* (23 mg) in methanol (1 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (34 mg). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The methanol was evaporated at room temperature *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by basic reverse phase HPLC-MS, yielding 15 mg (80%) of the
30 *title compound* as a pale yellow oil.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.93 (m, 2 H), 7.97 (m, 1 H), 7.51 (m, 2 H), 7.33 (m, 2 H), 7.23 (m, 1 H), 6.77 (m, 1 H), 6.32 (m, 1 H), 4.91 (m, 1 H), 4.68 (m, 1 H), 3.39 (m, 1 H), 3.21 (m, 1 H), 2.67 (m, 1 H), 2.54 (m, 1 H), 1.63 (m, 6 H). LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) RT 2.33 min., 532.2 (M+H) $^+$. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 2.59 min., 532.2 (M+H) $^+$.

5

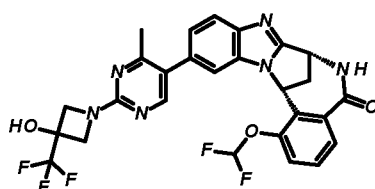
EXAMPLE 84

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Example 1* (10 mg, 0.02 mmol) in DCM (0.5 mL) were added *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid (57 mg, 0.33 mmol) and NaHCO_3 (14 mg; 0.16 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 24 hours. The mixture was diluted with DCM (1 mL) and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO_3 (1 mL) and brine (1 mL), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) to give 0.5 mg (5 %) of the *title compound*. LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) RT 5.30 minutes, 512.2 (M+H) $^+$.

Analytical method used for the separation :
 semi preparative HPLC column: Sunfire prep C18 5 μm 10x150 mm column
 Gradient: 98% *Solvent A* (Water, acetonitrile, Formic acid (95/5/0.5, v/v/v)) to 90% *Solvent B* (Acetonitrile, Formic acid (99.3/0.7, v/v)) in 9 minutes with a hold at 90% B of 4 minutes.
 Flow rate: 7 ml/ min

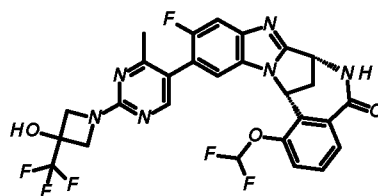
25

EXAMPLE 85

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (350 mg, 0.93 mmol) and crude *Intermediate 133* (1.00 g, 2.8 mmol) were dissolved in dioxane (10mL) and K₃PO₄ (592 mg, 2.79 mmol) in water (1mL) was added, degassed and placed under nitrogen before adding tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (44 mg, 0.047 mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (42 mg, 0.11 mmol). The mixture was heated to 105°C under nitrogen for 18 hours. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and water (50mL each), separated and the organic phase dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (silica 25g, 0-15% gradient of methanol in dichloromethane) to give the *title compound* as an off-white solid (240 mg, 45% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.90 mins, m/z 573. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.13 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.31 – 8.13 (m, 2H), 7.89 – 7.24 (m, 6H), 7.18 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 6.30 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.88 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.31 (d, *J* = 10.5 Hz, 2H), 4.08 (d, *J* = 10.2 Hz, 2H), 3.48 (dt, *J* = 13.6, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.73 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.29 (s, 3H).

EXAMPLE 86

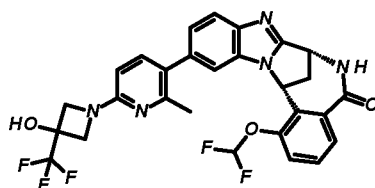


(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 10* and *Intermediate 133* in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 85* to afford an off white solid. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 8.44 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 8.09 (br s, 1H), 7.53 - 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.40 - 7.33 (m, 1H), 7.16 (br s, 1H), 6.77 (t, *J* = 72.6 Hz, 1H), 6.32 (d, *J* = 7.0

Hz, 1H), 4.97 (s, 1H), 4.52 (d, $J = 10.1$ Hz, 2H), 4.24 (d, $J = 10.2$ Hz, 2H), 3.57 - 3.40 (m, 1H), 2.87 (d, $J = 13.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.26 (s, 3H). LCMS; *Method 8*, RT = 2.78 min, $m/z = 591.0$.

EXAMPLE 87



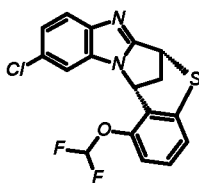
5

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{6-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-2-methylpyridin-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 135 (500 mg, 1.39 mmol) and *Example 11* (300 mg, 0.80 mmol) were treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 86*. After purification by preparative HPLC, the *title compound* was obtained as a white solid (30mg). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 9.14 (d, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 8.24 (dd, $J = 5.9, 3.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.76 – 7.24 (m, 7H), 7.13 (dd, $J = 8.4, 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 6.44 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 1H), 6.29 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.88 (t, $J = 6.7$ Hz, 1H), 4.24 (d, $J = 9.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.98 (d, $J = 9.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.48 (dt, $J = 13.5, 6.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.73 (d, $J = 13.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.28 (s, 3H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.02 minutes, m/z 572.

15

EXAMPLE 88



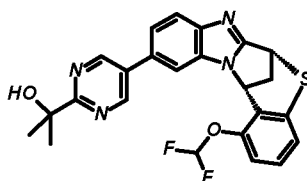
20

(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepine

Intermediate 136, (1.90 g, 3.35 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (20mL), cooled to 0°C under nitrogen and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.76 mL, 4.4 mmol) and then methanesulfonyl chloride (0.31 mL, 4.0 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred for 1 hour until TLC analysis shows conversion to the faster running mesylate. Sodium

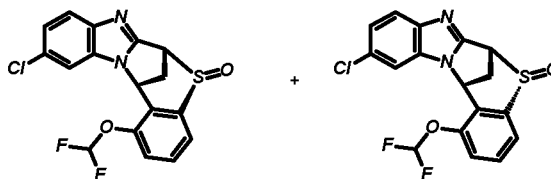
ethoxide 21%wt solution in ethanol (2.5 mL, 6.7 mmol) was added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature with stirring overnight. A further portion of the sodium ethoxide solution (2.5 mL) was added and stirred for another 48 hours. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, then partitioned between dichloromethane and aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (75mL each). The organic phase was dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by chromatography (silica, isohexane/ DCM 0-100% gradient, then 0-10% ethyl acetate in DCM) afforded the *title compound* as a pink solid (670 mg, 55% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.77 – 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.49 (t, 1H, *J*_{H-F} = 73.4 Hz), 7.35 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 7.31 – 7.11 (m, 2H), 7.01 – 6.89 (m, 1H), 6.01 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 4.97 (d, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 3.50 – 3.34 (m, 1H), 2.66 (d, *J* = 12.2 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.16 minutes, *m/z* 365/367.

EXAMPLE 89



2-({5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

Example 88 (100 mg, 0.25 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (13 mg, 0.014 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (13 mg, 0.033 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (116 mg, 0.44 mmol) were added to a microwave tube, dioxane (3mL) added followed by K₃PO₄ (174 mg, 0.82 mmol) dissolved in water (300μL) was added and the vessel placed under nitrogen. The mixture was heated to 140°C under nitrogen in the microwave (3bar pressure) until LCMS shows reaction to be complete (typically 1 hour). Purification by chromatography (silica, 0 to 10% methanol gradient in dichloromethane) followed by additional column chromatography (silica, EtOAc, 0 to 7% gradient of methanol) gave the *title compound* as an off white solid (105 mg, 82% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.07 (s, 2H), 7.82 – 7.35 (m, 4H), 7.26 (t, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 4.2 Hz, 2H), 6.08 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 5.13 (s, 1H), 5.06 – 4.97 (m, 1H), 3.47 (dt, *J* = 12.2, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 2.71 (d, *J* = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.02 minutes, *m/z* 467.0.

EXAMPLE 90 and EXAMPLE 91

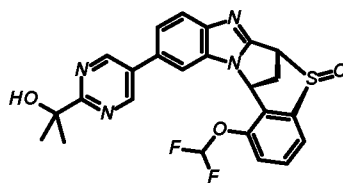
Example 90: (6R,7R,12S)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepine 7-oxide

Example 91: (6R,7S,12S)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepine 7-oxide

Example 88 (1.00 g, 2.741 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (15 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (5 mL) was added and stirred vigorously, 3-*meta*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (645 mg, 2.88 mmol, 77%) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 hours. The layers were separated and the organic phase dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by chromatography (silica, dichloromethane 0 to 5% methanol) gave the *title compounds*. The major diastereoisomer, *Example 90*, eluting first (771mg, 74%) and then the minor diastereoisomer, *Example 91* (44mg, 4%).

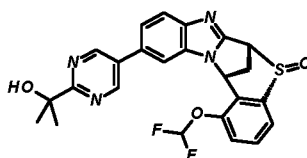
Example 90, Major diastereoisomer: ^1H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.61 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.37 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.32 – 7.15 (m, 2H), 6.77 (dd, J = 72.7, 71.8 Hz, 1H), 5.98 (d, J = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 4.90 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (d, J = 13.0 Hz, 1H), 3.43 (dt, J = 13.1, 5.4 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.93 minutes, m/z 381.0/383.0.

Example 91, Minor diastereoisomer: ^1H NMR (300 MHz, Chloroform-*d*) δ 7.73 – 7.60 (m, 2H), 7.47 (t, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.25 – 7.15 (m, 2H), 6.77 (dd, J = 72.7, 71.8 Hz, 1H), 5.95 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 1H), 5.08 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.44 (dt, J = 13.6, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.85 (d, J = 13.5 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.80 minutes, m/z 381.0/383.0.

EXAMPLE 92

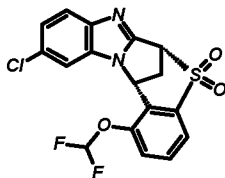
2-{5-[(6R,7R,12S)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-oxido-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 *Example 90* (56 mg, 0.147 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester were treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 89*. Flash column chromatography (silica, 0 to 5% gradient of methanol in dichloromethane) afforded the *title compound* as a pale brown solid (12mg, 17% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.98 (s, 2H), 7.79 – 7.60 (m, 2H), 7.58 – 7.44 (m, 4H),
 10 7.34 (q, *J* = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (d, *J* = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 5.05 (s, 1H), 3.51 – 3.30 (m, 2H), 1.47 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.59 minutes, *m/z* 483.0

EXAMPLE 93

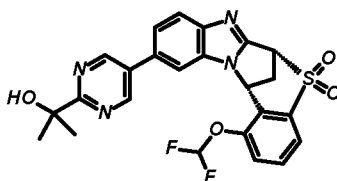
- 2-{5-[(6R,7S,12S)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-oxido-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- Example 91* (44 mg, 0.15 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester were treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 89*. Flash column chromatography (silica, 0 to 5% gradient of methanol in dichloromethane) afforded the *title compound* as a pale brown solid (15mg, 27% yield).
 20 ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.08 (s, 2H), 7.89 – 7.49 (m, 6H), 7.40 – 7.23 (m, 1H), 6.08 (d, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 5.46 (d, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (s, 1H), 3.44 (dt, *J* = 13.6, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.93 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.56 minutes, *m/z* 483.0.

EXAMPLE 94

(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepine 7,7-dioxide

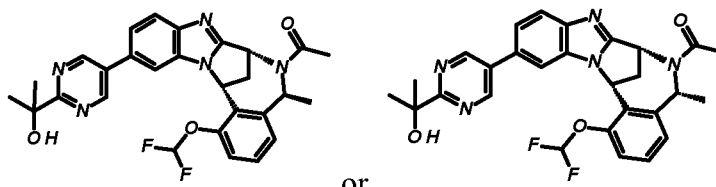
- 5 *Example 88* (240 mg, 0.66 mmol) treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 90/91* with 2eq of mCPBA. The *title compound* was obtained after chromatography as a white solid (196 mg, 76% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.75 – 7.60 (m, 3H), 7.56 (t, 1H, *J*_{H-F} = 72.7 Hz), 7.53 – 7.45 (m, 1H), 7.41 (dd, *J* = 2.1, 0.5 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (dd, *J* = 8.7, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 6.12 (d, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 5.61 (d, *J* = 5.7 Hz, 1H), 3.75 (dt, *J* = 13.6, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.52 (d, *J* = 13.6 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.86 minutes, *m/z* 397.0/399.0.

EXAMPLE 95

- 15 2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7,7-dioxido-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- Example 94* (198 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester were treated in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 89* to give the *title compound* after chromatography as an off-white solid (90mg, 36% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.08 (s, 2H), 7.91 – 7.79 (m, 1H), 7.74 – 7.58 (m, 5H), 7.54 – 7.41 (m, 1H), 6.17 (d, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 5.63 (d, *J* = 5.7 Hz, 1H), 5.13 (s, 1H), 3.87 – 3.70 (m, 1H), 3.56 (d, *J* = 13.5 Hz, 1H), 1.55 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.72 minutes, *m/z* 499.0.

EXAMPLE 96



1-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone

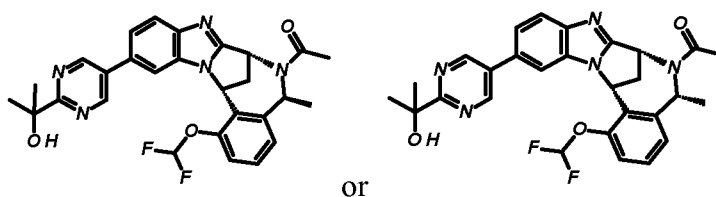
5 or

1-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone

To a solution of *Example 76* (22 mg, 0.046 mmol) and pyridine (5 μ L, 0.06 mmol) in dichloromethane (0.5 mL), cooled at 0°C, was added acetic anhydride (460 μ L; 4.6 mmol). The reaction was allowed to reach ambient temperature and stirred overnight. The crude reaction mixture was poured into ice water (2 mL), before neutralisation by solid NaHCO₃. The aqueous layer was extracted by ethyl acetate (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in *vacuum*. The residue was taken up in di-*isopropyl* ether and concentrated in *vacuum*. The resulting solid was dissolved in 1-4 dioxane / water (1 : 1 mixture, total volume 5 mL) before freeze drying to yield 21 mg (90 %) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.18 min, [M+H]⁺ = 520.2

20

EXAMPLE 97



1-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone

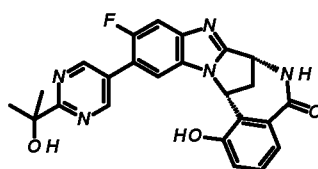
25

Or

1-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-5-methyl-5,14-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-6(7*H*)-yl]ethanone

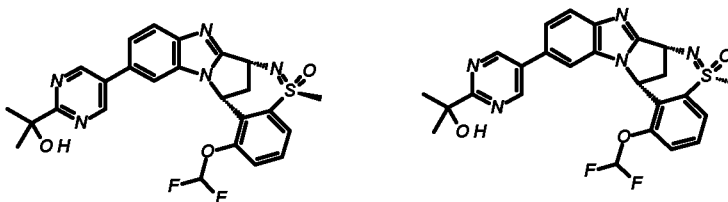
The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 75* (2.3 mg, 4.8 μ mol) by the method of *Example 96*. The crude material was purified by basic reverse phase preparative HPLC-MS, yielding 2.1 mg (90%) of the *title compound* as a colorless oil. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.20 min, [M+H]⁺ = 520.2.

EXAMPLE 98



(7*R*,14*R*)-10-fluoro-1-hydroxy-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

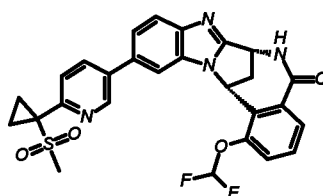
Example 1 (300 mg, 0.61 mmol) was dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran (10 mL/mmol). The solution was cooled to 0°C and sodiumbis(trimethylsilyl)amide (5 eq, 3.03 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and quenched with water (5 mL). Tetrahydrofuran was evaporated; the aqueous layer was brought to pH 6-7 by addition of 0.1N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 10 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified over silica gel (5-10% MeOH in DCM), yielding 85 mg (31%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 1.64 min., [M+H]⁺ = 446.2. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ ppm 10.56 (s, 1 H), 8.97 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 2 H), 8.93 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.79 (dd, *J*₁ = 8.0 Hz, *J*₂ = 1.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.71 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.63 (d, *J* = 11.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.20 (t, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.10 (dd, *J*₁ = 8.0 Hz, *J*₂ = 1.2 Hz, 1 H), 6.41 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1 H), 5.14 (s, 1 H), 4.87 (t, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1 H), 3.42 (m, 1 H), 2.68 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1 H), 1.56 (s, 6 H).

EXAMPLE 99

or

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methyl-5-oxido-7,14-dihydro-7,14-methano-5λ-4-
 5 benzimidazo[2,1-d][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Intermediate 142* (8 mg) in MeOH (5 mL) was added *p*-toluene sulfonic acid monohydrate (18.6 mg, 0.1 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The methanol was evaporated and the residue was taken up in DCM (5 mL). The organic layer was washed with a mixture of saturated aqueous sodium
 10 bicarbonate solution and water ~50/50 (3mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by reverse phase preparative LCMS yielding 3.7 mg (57%) of *the title compound* as a pale yellow solid.
 LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.02 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 512.1. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, MeOD-*d*₄) δ 9.04 (s, 2 H), 7.99 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1 H), 7.94 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1 H), 7.84 (dd, J₁ = 6.4
 15 Hz, J₂ = 2.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.75 (s, 1 H), 7.69 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.68 (s, 1 H), 7.36 (t, J = 72.6 Hz, 1 H), 6.87 (d, J = 7.9 Hz, 1 H), 5.34 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 2 H), 3.61 (m, 1 H), 3.56 (s, 3 H), 2.95 (d, J = 13.2 Hz, 1 H), 1.65 (s, 6 H).

EXAMPLE 100

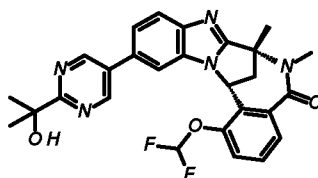
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{6-[1-(methylsulfonyl)cyclopropyl]pyridin-3-yl}-6,7-
 20 dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Example 11 (30 mg, 0.08 mmol), bis(pinacolato)diboron (25 mg, 0.096 mmol), potassium acetate (24 mg, 0.24 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (7
 25 mg, 0.019 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipaladium(0) (7mg, 0.008 mmol) were mixed in degassed dioxane (1 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 24 hours. *Intermediate 143* (29 mg, 0.08 mmol), [1,1'-

bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (4 mg, 0.006 mmol), cesium carbonate (52 mg, 0.16 mmol) and water (0.11 mL) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 95°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuum and the crude was purified by reverse phase basic preparative LCMS yielding 8 mg (19%) of the

5 *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 1,19 min, [M+H]⁺ = 537.1. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, MeOD-*d*₄) δ 8,90 (s, 1 H), 8,36 (dd, J = 7,0, 1,3 Hz, 1 H), 8,23 (dd, J = 8,2, 1,7 Hz, 1 H), 8,02 (s, 1 H), 7,88 (m, 3 H), 7,55 (m, 2 H), 7,35 (t, J = 72,8 Hz, 1 H), 6,74 (d, J = 7,2 Hz, 1 H), 5,27 (d, J = 6,7 Hz, 1 H), 3,67 (m, 1 H), 3,04 (s, 3 H), 3,01 (d, J = 13,6 Hz, 1 H), 1,87 (s, 2 H), 1,58 (m, 2 H).

10

EXAMPLE 101

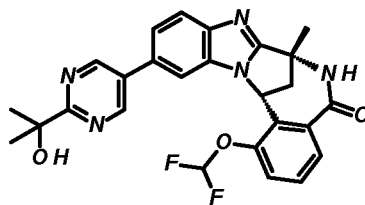
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dimethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

15 *Intermediate 149* (55 mg, 0.14 mmol), 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (75 mg, 0.27 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (12 mg, 0.033 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipaladium(0) (12mg, 0.014 mmol), potassium triphosphate (60 mg, 0.27 mmol) and water (0,22 mL) were mixed in degassed 1,4-dioxane (2.2 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 130°C under nitrogen for 3

20 hours. The crude reaction mixture was partially concentrated and purified over silica gel (Heptane : EtOAc 75 to 100%), yielding 63 mg (93%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 2.19 min, [M+H]⁺ = 506.2. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8,96 (s, 2 H), 8,55 (d, J = 8,0 Hz, 1 H), 7,93 (d, J = 7,7 Hz, 1 H), 7,82 (s, 1 H), 7,54 (d, J = 7,8 Hz, 1 H), 7,49 (t, J = 8,5 Hz, 1 H), 7,35 (d, J = 7,8 Hz, 1 H), 6,90 (t, J =

25 72,7 Hz, 1 H), 6,23 (d, J = 6,0 Hz, 1 H), 4,70 (bs, 1 H), 3,46 (m, 4 H), 3,14 (d, J = 13,5 Hz, 1 H), 2,22 (s, 3 H), 1,68 (s, 6 H).

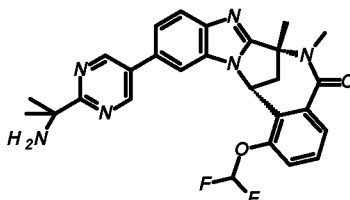
30

EXAMPLE 102

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 148* (29 mg, 0.08 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (41 mg, 0.15 mmol) following the procedure used for *Example 101*. The crude material was purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC, yielding 6 mg (13%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.05 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 492. ¹H NMR (300
- 10 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8,95 (s, 2 H), 8,48 (d, J = 8,0 Hz, 1 H), 8,04 (d, J = 8,2 Hz, 1 H), 7,79 (s, 1 H), 7,66 (d, J = 8,3 Hz, 1 H), 7,55 (t, J = 8,3 Hz, 1 H), 7,45 (d, J = 7,7 Hz, 1 H), 6,93 (t, J = 72,8 Hz, 1 H), 6,52 (d, J = 4,3 Hz, 1 H), 3,67 (s, 1 H), 3,50 (m, 1 H), 3,09 (d, J = 13,3 Hz, 1 H), 2,31 (s, 3 H), 1,68 (s, 6 H).

15

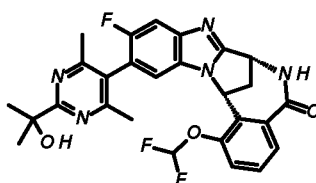
EXAMPLE 103

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dimethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- To a solution of *Intermediate 150* (13 mg, 0.022 mmol) in DMF (0.5 mL), at 0°C, was added sodium hydride (60% mineral oil) (0,88 mg, 0.022 mmol) at 0°C and stirred at
- 20 room temperature for 30 minutes. Iodomethane (3 mg, 0.022 mmol) was then added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC-MS to yield 7 mg (0.012 mmol, 53%) of a *white solid*. The intermediate was added to a solution of DCM / trifluoroacetic acid
- 25 (1:1, 0,25 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour before addition of a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (1 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted by DCM (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄,

filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by reverse phase basic preparative HPLC-MS, yielding 2.2 mg (38%) of the *title compound* as a *beige solid*. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 1.99 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 505$.

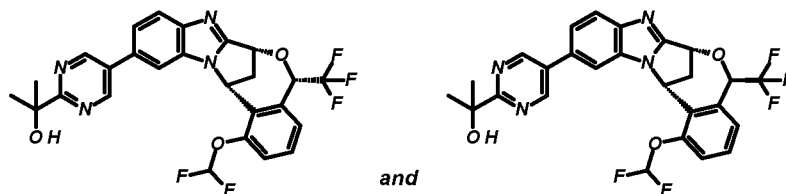
5

EXAMPLE 104

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4,6-dimethylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 10 *Example 1* (25 mg, 0.052 mmol) was dissolved in a 1:1 mixture of TFA/MeCN (0.53 mL) in a 4 mL glass vial. $[Ir\{dF(CF_3)ppy\}_2(dtbbpy)]PF_6$ (1.175 mg, 0.00105 mmol, Aldrich) and *tert*-butyl peroxyacetate (41.5 mg, 0.16 mmol, 50% solution in mineral spirits, 3.0 eq., Aldrich) were then added. The mixture was degassed with argon for 5 minutes then irradiated with blue light emitting diodes (460 nm visible light, OSRAM Oslon SSL 80
- 15 royal-blue on Star, 1000 mA, ~1 W) until UPLC-MS analysis indicates complete consumption of starting material (12 hours). The solvents were removed by evaporation to give an orange oil. Purification by reverse phase preparative chromatography (acidic mode, gradient from 30% MeCN in 0.1% TFA in water up to 95% MeCN) yielded the *title compound* as a colorless oil (5.8 mg, 21 % yield). LCMS *Method 4* (ES+): RT: 2.41
- 20 min, $[M+H]^+ = 524.2$. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT: 2.21 min, $[M+H]^+ = 524.2$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, MeOD- d_4) δ 8,26 (t, $J = 4,7$ Hz, 1 H), 7,52 (d, $J = 9,9$ Hz, 1 H), 7,42 (m, 3 H), 7,05 (dd, $J = 73,6, 72,1$ Hz, 1 H), 6,43 (d, $J = 7,1$ Hz, 1 H), 4,97 (d, $J = 6,7$ Hz, 2 H), 3,54 (s, 1 H), 3,49 (m, 1 H), 2,80 (d, $J = 13,6$ Hz, 1 H), 2,37 (s, 3 H), 2,17 (s, 3 H), 1,59 (s, 6 H).

25

EXAMPLE 105 AND EXAMPLE 106

2-{5-[(5*R*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,14-dihydro-7*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][2,5]benzoxazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol
and

2-{5-[(5*S*,7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-(trifluoromethyl)-5,14-dihydro-7*H*-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*d*][2,5]benzoxazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

5 *Intermediate 155* (50 mg, 0.091 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (1 mL), cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane (100 μ L, 0.1 mmol) was added. The slurry was stirred overnight at 100°C. Additional cyanomethylenetriethylphosphorane (100 μ L, 0.1 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred overnight at 100°C to complete the
10 reaction. The solvent was evaporated and the crude partitioned into EtOAc (2 mL) and water (1 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 1 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by reverse phase basic HPLC-MS followed by reverse phase acid HPLC-MS purification. Each diastereoisomer was taken up in EtOAc (1 mL) and
15 neutralized by a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (1 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 1 mL). The organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give the following diastereoisomers.

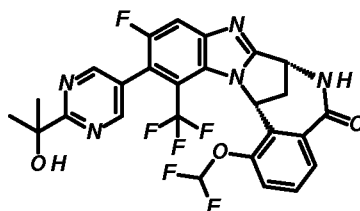
3 mg (6%) of *Diastereomer A* was isolated as white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 2.39 min., 533 (M+H)⁺. LCMS *Method 4* (ES+): RT 2.54 min., 533 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR
20 (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.95 (s, 2 H), 7.91 (m, 1 H), 7.67 (m, 1 H), 7.48 (m, 1 H), 7.38 (m, 1 H), 7.28 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1 H), 6.85 (m, 1 H), 6.23 (m, 1 H), 5.60 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1 H), 5.49 (m, 1 H), 4.70 (m, 1 H), 3.20 (m, 1 H), 3.00 (m, 1 H), 1.66 (s, 6 H).

9mg (19%) of *Diastereomer B* was isolated as off white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES+): RT 2.59 min., 533 (M+H)⁺. LCMS *Method 4* (ES+): RT 2.76 min., 533 (M+H)⁺. ¹H
25 NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.93 (m, 2 H), 8.02 (m, 1 H), 7.54 (m, 2 H), 7.35 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 2 H), 7.29 (m, 1 H), 6.79 (m, 1 H), 6.40 (m, 1 H), 5.71 (m, 1 H), 4.68 (m, 1 H), 3.84 (m, 1 H), 3.12 (m, 1 H), 2.78 (m, 1 H), 1.65 (s, 6 H).

General procedure for the late stage trifluoromethylation

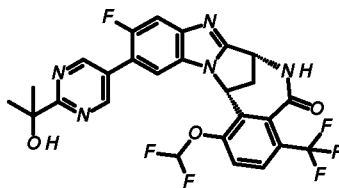
30 To a solution of *Example 1* (600 mg, 1.211 mmol) in degassed acetonitrile (1ml) and TFA (1ml) was added trifluoromethanesulfonyl chloride (65 μ L, 0.6045 mmol) followed by [Ir(DF(CF₃)PPY)₂(DTBPY)]PF₆ (4.5 mg, 0.0040 mmol) under argon. The slurry was stirred overnight under blue light emitting diodes (460 nm visible light, OSRAM Oscon

SSL 80 royal-blue on Star, 1000 mA, ~1 W). The reaction was performed in 6 vials of 100 mg portions of *Example 1*. The six crude mixtures were gathered and diluted with EtOAc (10 mL) and washed by a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ (2 x 5 mL). The aqueous layer was back extracted by EtOAc (5 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over
 5 MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced. The residue was purified by reverse phase basic LCMS to afford a mixture of the desired isomers as a yellow solid (218 mg, 33% yield).

EXAMPLE 107

10 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-12-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one 1.1 mg (0.5 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES⁺) RT 5.82 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H
 15 NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.99 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 8.86 (s, 1H), 8.75 (s, 1H), 8.10 (d, J = 8.10, 1H) 8.06 (d, J = 8.06 Hz, 1H), 7.51 (t, J = 7.51 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (d, J = 7.44 Hz, 1H), 7.14 (dd, J = 73.9, 72.3 Hz, 1H), 6.46 (d, J = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 5.14 (s, 1H), 4.92 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.51 (m, 1H), 2.67 (d, J = 13.6 Hz, 1H), 1.54 (s, 6H).

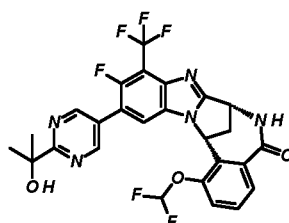
20

EXAMPLE 108

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-4-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one
 25 77.1 mg (35 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES⁺) RT 5.90 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR

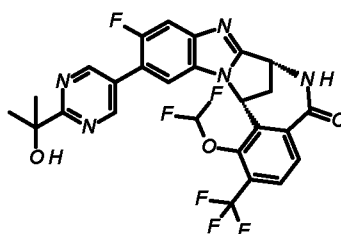
(400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.97 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 2 H), 8.85 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.90 (m, 1 H), 7.71 (m, 2 H), 7.54 (m, 2 H), 6.29 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1 H), 5.16 (m, 1 H), 4.90 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1 H), 3.49 (m, 1 H), 2.77 (m, 1 H), 1.56 (s, 6 H).

5

EXAMPLE 109

(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-9-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

- 10 16.6 mg (7.6 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES⁺) RT 5.95 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.20 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.99 (m, 2 H), 8.25 (m, 1 H), 7.81 (m, 1 H), 7.52 (m, 3 H), 6.42 (m, 1 H), 5.23 (m, 1 H), 4.99 (m, 1 H), 3.53 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1 H),
15 2.80 (m, 1 H), 1.56 (s, 6 H).

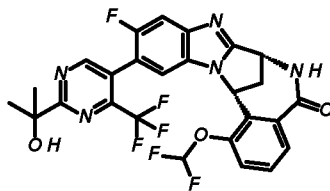
EXAMPLE 110

(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

- 20 28.6 mg (13 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES⁺) RT 5.96 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.42 (m, 1 H), 8.89 (m, 2 H), 8.44 (m, 1 H), 7.93 (m, 1 H), 7.68
25

(m, 1 H), 7.38 (m, 2 H), 6.39 (m, 1 H), 5.17 (m, 1 H), 4.97 (m, 1 H), 3.59 (m, 1 H), 2.87 (m, 1 H), 1.55 (s, 6 H).

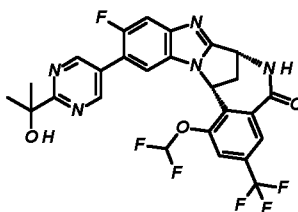
EXAMPLE 111



5 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

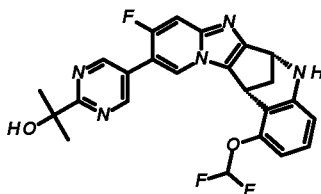
9.8 mg (5 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode
10 (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES+) RT 5.91 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.19 (m, 1 H), 9.10 (m, 1 H), 8.25 (m, 1 H), 7.67 (m, 1 H), 7.49 (m, 4 H), 6.32 (s, 1 H), 5.40 (m, 1 H), 4.92 (m, 1 H), 3.53 (m, 1 H), 2.75 (m, 1 H), 1.60 (s, 6 H)

EXAMPLE 112



15 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

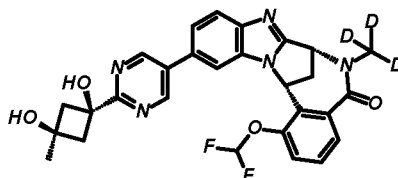
9.8 mg (5 %) of the *title compound* as an off white solid was isolated from the above described mixture of diastereomers by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode
20 (formic acid) *Method 14*. LCMS *Method 15* (ES+) RT 6.07 min., 564 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.45 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 8.98 (m, 2 H), 8.52 (m, 1 H), 7.88 (m, 2 H), 7.70 (m, 1 H), 7.57 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1 H), 6.42 (m, 1 H), 5.17 (m, 1 H), 4.97 (m, 1 H), 3.52 (m, 1 H), 2.86 (m, 1 H), 1.56 (s, 6 H).

EXAMPLE 113

2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-3-fluoro-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanopyrido[1',2':1,2]imidazo[4,5-c][1]benzazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

To a solution of *Intermediate 157* (69 mg, 0.12 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added tetrabutylammonium fluoride (0.25 mL, 0.25 mmol) and reaction stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (30 mL) and the organic phase washed with water (2 x 30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, 0-20% MeOH in DCM) and further purified by preparative HPLC-MS to give the *title compound* as a yellow solid (2 mg, 3.6 %).

¹H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol-*d*₄) δ 8.97 (s, 2H), 8.38 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (d, *J* = 11.0 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (t, *J* = 74.3 Hz, 1H), 6.88 (t, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.33 (dd, *J* = 13.6, 8.3 Hz, 2H), 4.85 – 4.72 (m, 2H), 2.97 – 2.88 (m, 1H), 2.21 (d, *J* = 10.3 Hz, 1H), 1.66 (s, 6H).
LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) 468 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.94 minutes.
LCMS *Method 4* (ES+) 468 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.76 minutes.

EXAMPLE 114

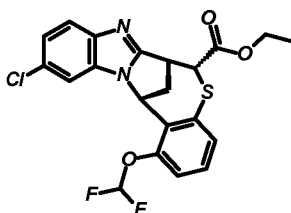
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(cis-1,3-dihydroxy-3-methylcyclobutyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

To a solution of *Intermediate 160* (220 mg, 0.34 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1 mL, 1.0M in THF) and the reaction stirred for 18 hours. Reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (25 mL) and washed with water (3 x 25 mL), the aqueous was extracted with DCM (3 x 25 mL), combined organics washed with brine and

dried (by passage through a phase separator cartridge) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by column chromatography (SiO₂, gradient elution with DCM/MeOH/ 0.88 aqueous NH₃: 97.5% : 2.25% : 0.25% to 87.5% : 11.25% : 1.25%), to give the *title compound* (134 mg, 74 %) as an off-white solid.

- 5 ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.08 (s, 2H), 8.28 (dd, *J* = 5.6, 3.8 Hz, 1H), 7.79 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.76 (d, *J* = 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.69 (t, *J* = 73.6 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.52 – 7.48 (m, 2H), 6.32 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.62 (s, 1H), 5.26 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 4.96 (s, 1H), 3.53 (dt, *J* = 14.2, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.95 – 2.87 (m, 2H), 2.85 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 2.42 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 2H), 1.09 (s, 3H).
- 10 LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 537 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.53 minutes.
LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 537 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.54 minutes.

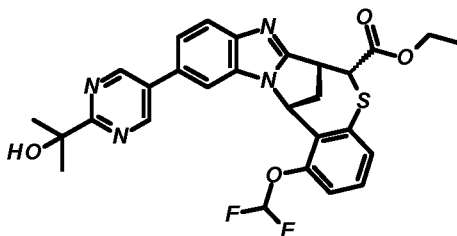
EXAMPLE 115



- 15 Ethyl (7R,14S)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate

To a solution of *Intermediate 188* (1.57 g, 2.87 mmol) in THF (30 mL) at 0 °C was added potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (4.4 mL, 4.4 mmol) and reaction stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour. The reaction was quenched with water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (4 x 100
20 mL), the combined organics dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an orange oil. Purification by column chromatography (SiO₂, 11-22% EtOAc in DCM) and freeze drying from acetonitrile/water gave the *title compound* (607 mg, 47 %) as an orange solid.

- LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 451 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.51 minutes.
25 LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 451 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.49 minutes.

EXAMPLE 118

Ethyl (7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate

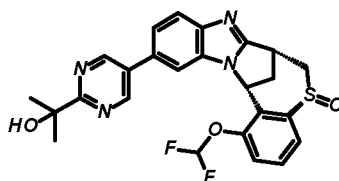
- 5 The *title compound* was prepared in accordance with the Method described for *Example 88* from. *Example 115* (200 mg, 0.44 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (21 mg, 0.022 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (21 mg, 0.055 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (190 mg, 0.72 mmol) and K₃PO₄ (282 mg, 1.33 mmol). The crude material was purified by column
- 10 chromatography (SiO₂, 0-20 % MeOH in DCM) and further purified by preparative HPLC to give *Example 118* (3 mg, 1.2 %) as a white solid.

Example 118 - Ethyl (7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-

- 15 *d*][1,5]benzothiazocine-6-carboxylate

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES⁺) 553 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.18 minutes

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES⁺) 553 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.18 minutes

EXAMPLE 119

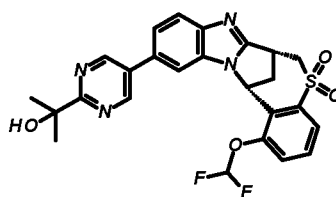
20

2-{5-[(5R,7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxido-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 163* (45 mg, 0.1 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (6 mg, 0.0064 mmol),
- 25 tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (6 mg, 0.016 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (43 mg, 0.16 mmol), K₃PO₄ (64 mg, 0.30 mmol) dissolved in water (40 μL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) by the method of *Example*

89. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (15 mL) and DCM (50 mL), acidified to pH 4 using acetic acid, layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (4 x 15 mL). The combined organic phases were dried (phase separator) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was then dissolved in DMSO (450 μ L) and water (50 μ L) and lithium chloride (20 mg, 0.47 mmol) added and the reaction mixture heated at 130 ° C in a sealed microwave vial for 1.5 hours. The material was purified by preparative HPLC to give the *title compound* (9 mg, 19 %) as a white solid. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.03 (s, 2H), 7.82 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.71 – 7.65 (m, 1H), 7.65 – 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.57 – 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.48 (t, J = 73.2 Hz, 1H), 6.21 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 5.07 (s, 1H), 4.01 (t, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.96 – 3.86 (m, 1H), 3.78 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 3.41 – 3.30 (m, 1H), 2.51 (d, J = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 1.51 (s, 6H). LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 497 (M+H) $^+$, RT 1.63 minutes. LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 497 (M+H) $^+$, RT 1.60 minutes

EXAMPLE 120



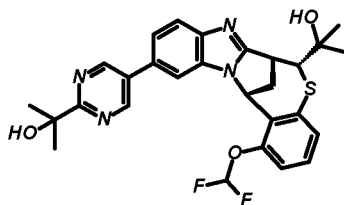
15

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,5-dioxido-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

The *title compound* can be prepared from *Intermediate 162*, and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester by the Method of *Example 89* to provide, after purification by column chromatography (SiO₂, 80-100% EtOAc in DCM, followed by 0-10% MeOH in EtOAc), the *title compound* as a white solid.

Note: The ester is observed to decarboxylate during the reaction conditions to provide the desired product. If decarboxylation is not complete it can be further enabled by hydrolysis of the ester to the carboxylic acid followed by acid catalysed decarboxylation. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.05 (s, 2H), 7.94 (dd, J = 6.6, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.72 (q, J = 8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.63 (t, J = 72 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (dd, J = 8.4, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.51 (d, J = 1.2 Hz, 2H), 6.34 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 5.09 (s, 1H), 4.37 (dd, J = 14.6, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 4.18 – 3.95 (m, 2H), 3.56 – 3.43 (m, 1H), 2.77 (d, J = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 1.53 (s, 6H). LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 513 (M+H) $^+$, RT 1.65 minutes. LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 513 (M+H) $^+$, RT 1.62 minutes

30

EXAMPLE 121

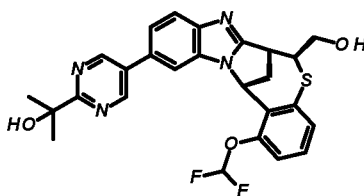
2-{5-[(6R,7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 164* (27 mg, 0.062 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (3 mg, 0.0032 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (2.8 mg, 0.007 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (27 mg, 0.10 mmol), K₃PO₄ (40 mg, 0.19 mmol) suspended in a mixture of water (40 μ L) and 1,4-dioxane (220 μ L) in
10 accordance with the method of *Example 89*. The reaction mixture was partitioned between DCM (10 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (10 mL), layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic phases were dried (phase separator) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative HPLC-MS to give the *title compound* (2 mg, 6 %) as
15 an off-white solid.

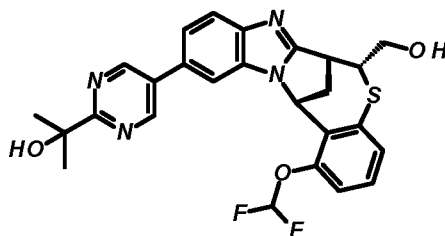
¹H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol-*d*₄) δ 8.96 (s, 2H), 7.80 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (dd, *J* = 8.9, 1.8 Hz, 2H), 7.32 – 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.15 (t, *J* = 73.0 Hz, 1H), 6.40 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 4.36 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (s, 1H), 3.51 (dt, *J* = 12.4, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 3.32 (m, 1H), 2.32 (d, *J* = 12.9 Hz, 1H), 1.62 (s, 6H), 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.50 (s, 3H).

- 20 LCMS: *Method 3* (ES⁺) 539 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.07 minutes.

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES⁺) 539 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.99 minutes.

EXAMPLE 122

- 25 2-{5-[(6S,7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

EXAMPLE 123

2-{5-[(6R,7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 *Intermediate 165* (30 mg, 0.07 mmol), 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (33 mg, 0.12 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (4 mg, 0.01 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (4 mg, 0.01 mmol) and 1,4-dioxane (0.25 mL) were added to a microwave tube, degassed, then K₃PO₄ (50 mg, 0.23 mmol) dissolved in water (40 µL) was added the mixture degassed and then heated at
- 10 130 °C under nitrogen in the microwave for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between water (10 mL) and DCM (10 mL), the layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organics phases were dried (phase separator) and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography (SiO₂, 50-100 % EtOAc in hexane, followed by 0-20 % MeOH in
- 15 EtOAc) gave *Example 122* (7 mg, 19 %) as a white solid and *Example 123* (3 mg, 8 %) as a white solid.

Example 122: 2-{5-[(6S,7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 20 ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.00 (s, 2H), 7.77 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (t, *J* = 73.6 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (d, *J* = 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.27 – 7.19 (m, 3H), 6.23 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 5.29 – 5.22 (m, 1H), 5.07 (s, 1H), 4.01 (dd, *J* = 7.6, 4.6 Hz, 1H), 3.81 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 3.66 – 3.54 (m, 1H), 3.45 (dt, *J* = 9.7, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 3.26 – 3.13
- 25 (m, 1H), 2.53 (d, *J* = 9.6 Hz, 1H), 1.52 (s, 6H).

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 511 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.81 minutes.

LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 511 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.75 minutes.

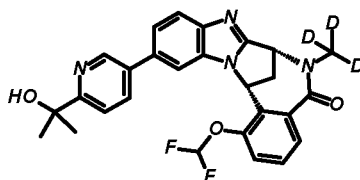
Example 123: 2-{5-[(6R,7R,14S)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,5]benzothiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.99 (s, 2H), 7.77 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.57 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.50 (t, *J* = 73.5 Hz, 1H) 7.38 (s, 1H), 7.26 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 3H), 6.26 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 5.34 (s, 1H), 5.07 (s, 1H), 4.01 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 3.95 – 3.86 (m, 1H), 3.87 – 3.71 (m, 1H), 3.66 – 3.51 (m, 1H), 3.53 – 3.39 (m, 1H), 2.35 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 1.52 (s, 6H).

LCMS: *Method 3* (ES+) 511 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.84 minutes.

10 LCMS: *Method 4* (ES+) 511 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.77 minutes.

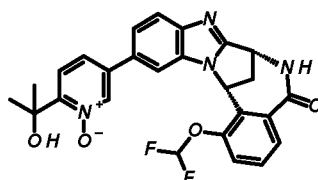
EXAMPLE 124



(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 166 (750 mg, 1.37 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) and cooled to -78°C under nitrogen. Potassium *bis*(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.50 mL, 1.50 mmol, 1 mol/L) was added drop wise at -78°C and stirred for 30 minutes before the addition of iodotridermethylmethane (0.13 mL, 2.1 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours with warming to room temperature. 2M HCl (aq) (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 hours to remove the trimethylsilyl protecting group. The mixture was treated with 2M NaOH (15 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (50 mL). The organic layer was dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by

25 chromatography (silica, 0 to 10% MeOH in dichloromethane) gave the *title compound* as a white solid after drying under vacuum (500 mg, 74% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.74 (dd, *J* = 2.4, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 8.34 – 8.20 (m, 1H), 7.99 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.80 – 7.68 (m, 3H), 7.67 (t, 1H, *J*_{H-F} 75 Hz), 7.60 – 7.46 (m, 3H), 6.29 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 3.52 (dt, *J* = 14.1, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 2.83 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.48 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.77 minutes, *m/z* 494.

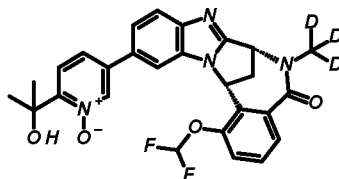
EXAMPLE 125

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyridin-3-yl]-6,7-
dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 166 (240 mg, 0.437 mmol) was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and 2 mL of 2M aqueous HCl added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes.

LCMS shows complete removal of TMS group. The mixture was partitioned between DCM and saturated aqueous sodium carbonate solution and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was redissolved in DCM (10 mL) and mCPBA (103 mg, 0.46 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was washed with 2M sodium hydroxide (10 mL) and the organic layer concentrated *in vacuo*. The residual solid was purified by chromatography (silica 10g, 0 to 15% MeOH in DCM gradient) to give the *title*

compound as an off-white solid, (100 mg, 46% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.14 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.54 (t, *J* = 1.1 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 3.3 Hz, 1H), 7.77 – 7.68 (m, 4H), 7.66 (t, 1H, *J*_{H-F} 73.5 Hz) 7.56 – 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.00 (s, 1H), 6.36 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.89 (m, 1H) 3.49 (dt, *J* = 13.7, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.75 (d, *J* = 13.3 Hz, 1H), 1.61 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.57 minutes, *m/z* 493.

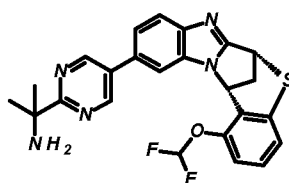
EXAMPLE 126

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-1-oxidopyridin-3-yl]-6-
trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-
5(14H)-one

Example 124 (276 mg, 0.56 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (15 mL) and 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (1.05 equiv., 0.59 mmol, 77%) was added and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The mixture was then diluted with dichloromethane (50 mL), washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution

(50 mL), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (silica, 0 to 15% methanol gradient in dichloromethane). The product fractions were concentrated *in vacuo* and the residues freeze dried from acetonitrile/water to give the *title compound* as a white solid, (165 mg, 58% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.54 (t, *J* = 1.1 Hz, 1H), 8.34 – 8.18 (m, 1H), 7.97 – 7.34 (m, 8H), 6.99 (s, 1H), 6.30 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.52 (dt, *J* = 14.2, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.83 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.61 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.67 minutes, *m/z* 510.

EXAMPLE 127



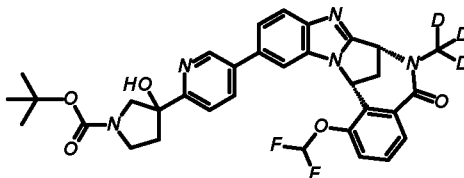
10

2-{5-[(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H,12H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-2-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-amine, dihydrochloride salt

Intermediate 114 (300 mg, 0.95 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloride dichloromethane complex (0.05 equiv., 0.0474 mmol), potassium acetate (4 equiv., 3.80 mmol) and bis(pinacolato)diboron (292 mg, 1.14 mmol) were dissolved in dry dioxane (10ml) and the mixture heated to reflux for 2 hours. The mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane and water and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to give the crude boronate. The intermediate was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (2.5ml) and added to a microwave tube containing *Example 88* (300 mg, 0.822 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (39 mg, 0.041 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (38 mg, 0.1 mmol) and a solution of potassium phosphate (523 mg, 2.47 mmol) in water (0.5ml). The mixture was degassed and refilled with nitrogen twice then heated to 140°C in the microwave for 2 hours. After cooling the mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane (50 mL) and water (50 mL) and the organic layer dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (silica, 0 to 100% EtOAc gradient in DCM) to give the BOC protected amine of the *title compound* as a pale brown solid. The solid was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) and 4.0M HCl in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) added and the mixture stirred for 2 hours. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between DCM and water. The aqueous layer was washed with DCM (5 mL) and the aqueous phase was freeze dried to give the *title compound* as an off-white solid, (330 mg, 75% yield). ¹H

NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.20 (s, 2H), 8.89 – 8.54 (br m, 3H, R-NH $_3^+$), 7.95 – 7.66 (m, 3H), 7.58 (dt, J_{H-F} = 75Hz, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.39 – 7.21 (m, 1H), 6.98 (dd, J = 8.1, 2.6 Hz, 2H), 6.14 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 3.55 – 3.43 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, J = 12.3 Hz, 1H), 1.71 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.62 minutes, m/z 466.

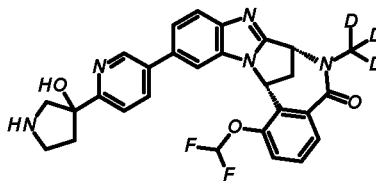
5

EXAMPLE 128

tert-Butyl 3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

To a mixture of *Intermediate 159* (200 mg, 0.41 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (19 mg, 0.021 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (16 mg, 0.041 mmol) and *Intermediate 167* (170 mg, 0.50 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (1.5 mL) was added a solution of potassium phosphate tribasic (271 mg, 1.24 mmol) in water (0.15 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 110 °C in the microwave for 3 hours. cooled, partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL) and the organic layer dried (sodium sulphate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by chromatography (silica, 100% EtOAc then to 7% MeOH in EtOAc gradient) to give the *title compound* as a white solid (128mg, 50% yield). ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.79 (s, 1H), 8.27 (dd, J = 5.8, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 8.05 (dd, J = 8.2, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.85 – 7.68 (m, 3H), 7.67 (t, J_{H-F} = 73.4Hz, 1H), 7.60 – 7.45 (m, 3H), 6.30 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.71 (s, 1H), 5.24 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.72 (t, J = 10.6 Hz, 1H), 3.64 – 3.38 (m, 2H), 2.83 (d, J = 13.7 Hz, 1H), 1.76 (s, 2H), 1.40 (9H, s), 1.33 – 1.06 (m, 2H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.18 minutes, m/z 621.

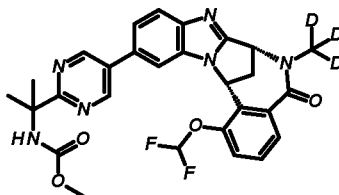
25

EXAMPLE 129

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(3-hydroxypyrrolidin-3-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one, dihydrochloride salt

Example 128 (120mg, 0.193 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) and 4M HCl in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After removing the solvent *in vacuo* the residue was treated with diethyl ether (5 mL) and isohexanes (5 mL). The resultant solid was filtered off, washed with diethyl ether (10 mL) and dried under high vacuum for 1 hour to give the *title compound* as an off-white solid (88 mg, 72%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.56 (s, 1H), 9.41 (s, 1H), 8.88 – 8.76 (m, 1H), 8.28 (dd, *J* = 6.0, 3.4 Hz, 1H), 8.21 – 8.04 (m, 1H), 7.98 – 7.32 (m, 4H), 7.68 (t, *J*_{H-F} = 73.5 Hz, 1H) 6.34 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.31 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.76 – 3.27 (m, 4H), 2.87 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 2.40 (t, *J* = 11.1 Hz, 1H), 2.28-2.22 (m, 1H), 1.89-1.83 (m, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.32 minutes, *m/z* 521.

15

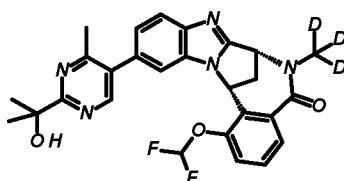
EXAMPLE 130

Methyl (2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)carbamate

Intermediate 168 (226 mg, 0.826 mmol) and *Intermediate 159* (200 mg, 0.4130 mmol) were coupled in accordance with the method of *Example 128*. Purification by chromatography (silica, 0 to 10% MeOH in DCM) and freeze drying of the residue gave the *title compound* as a white solid (197 mg, 87% yield). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.01 (s, 2H), 8.37 – 8.19 (m, 1H), 7.81 – 7.71 (m, 2H), 7.68 (dd, *J*_{H-F} = 72.6, 73.8 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.49 (d, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 2H), 6.31 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.56 – 3.47 (m, 1H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 2.84 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.61 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.95 minutes, *m/z* 552.

25

EXAMPLE 131

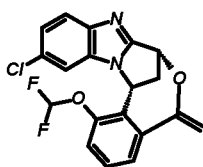


(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

5 The *title compound* was synthesised from *Intermediate 110* (400 mg, 1.018 mmol) and *Intermediate 62* (1.2 equivalents) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 128*. Purification by column chromatography (silica, DCM/EtOAc gradient) gave the desired product as a white solid.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.59 (s, 1H), 8.28 (dt, *J* = 8.3, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 7.86 – 7.24 (m, 6H), 6.27 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 1H), 3.61 – 3.40 (m, 1H), 2.83 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 1.53 (s, 6H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 509, retention time 1.85 minutes.

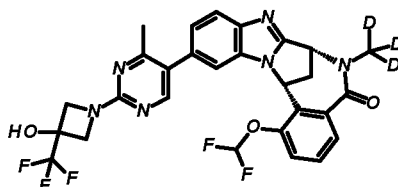
EXAMPLE 132



(7R,14R)-11-chloro-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-methylidene-5,14-dihydro-7H-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][2,5]benzoxazocine

Intermediate 169 (37.0 mg, 0.08 mmol) was dissolved in THF (2 mL), and sodium hydride (20.0 mg, 0.83 mmol) was added at 0°C and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Water was added to quench the reaction and the mixture was partitioned between water and DCM (2 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC-MS to give the *O*-alkylated product (3.5 mg, 12%).

25 ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 7.78 – 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.53 – 7.14 (m, 5H), 6.19 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.68 (d, *J* = 4.1 Hz, 1H), 4.73 (dd, *J* = 13.8, 0.9 Hz, 2H), 3.27 – 3.13 (m, 1H), 2.79 (d, *J* = 13.7 Hz, 1H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 375, retention time 2.36 minutes.

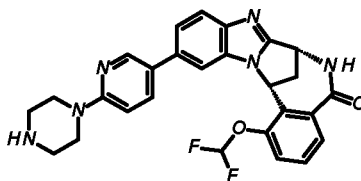
EXAMPLE 133

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-hydroxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)azetidin-1-yl]-4-methyl pyrimidin-5-yl}-6-trideutero-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5] benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A mixture of *Intermediate 133* (600 mg, 0.84 mmol), *Intermediate 110* (314 mg, 0.80 mmol), K₃PO₄ (594 mg, 2.80 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (37 mg, 0.1 mmol) and *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (90 mg, 0.1 mmol) were suspended in a mixture of 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) and water (0.4 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ before heating in a microwave at 140 °C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL). The combined organic phases were dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*.

The crude product was purified by column chromatography (0-10% MeOH in DCM) to give the *title compound* (200 mg, 42%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.28 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 7.80 – 7.31 (m, 6H), 7.20 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 6.25 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.31 (d, *J* = 10.1 Hz, 2H), 4.09 (d, *J* = 10.1 Hz, 2H), 3.52 (dt, *J* = 14.1, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.82 (d, *J* = 13.7 Hz, 1H), 2.29 (s, 3H).

LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 590, retention time 1.97 minutes.

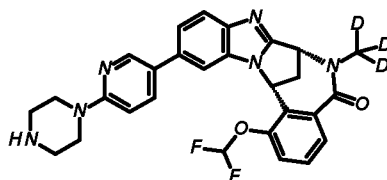
EXAMPLE 134

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(piperazin-1-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A mixture of 1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]piperazine (277 mg, 0.96 mmol), *Example 11* (300 mg, 0.79 mmol), K₃PO₄ (600 mg, 2.83 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (37 mg, 0.1 mmol) were suspended in a

mixture of 1,4-dioxane (3 mL) and water (0.3 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ before the addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (75 mg, 0.08 mmol). The mixture was degassed for 10 minutes before heating in a microwave at 105 °C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL). The aqueous phase was basified with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ solution and extracted with DCM (3 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by column chromatography (0-30% MeOH in DCM) to give the *title compound* (57 mg, 14%). The HCl salt was prepared by addition of 2 equivalents of HCl followed by freeze-drying. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, Deuterium Oxide) δ 8.13 (dd, *J* = 7.2, 2.3 Hz, 1H), 8.06 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (dd, *J* = 9.2, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.48 – 7.27 (m, 3H), 7.00 (d, *J* = 9.4 Hz, 2H), 6.54 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 3.82 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 4H), 3.56 – 3.34 (m, 5H), 2.90 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 503, retention time 1.41 minutes.

15

EXAMPLE 135

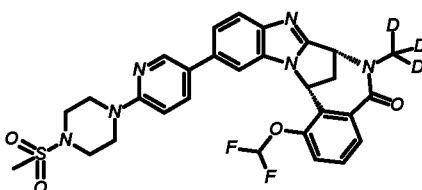
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-[6-(piperazin-1-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A mixture of 1-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]piperazine (277 mg, 0.96 mmol), *Intermediate 110* (300 mg, 0.80 mmol), K₃PO₄ (600 mg, 2.83 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (37.0 mg, 0.1 mmol) were suspended in a mixture of 1,4-dioxane (3 mL) and water (0.3 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ before the addition of tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (75 mg, 0.08 mmol). The mixture was degassed for 10 min before heating in a microwave at 105°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ solution and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL). The combined organic phases were acidified with aqueous HCl (2N), extracted with water (3 × 10 mL), and the aqueous phase neutralised with NaOH solution (10%) and extracted with DCM (3 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the *title compound* (170 mg, 43%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.38 (d, *J* = 2.6 Hz,

30

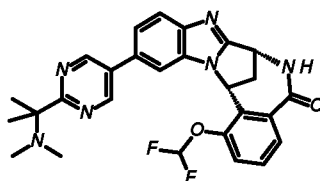
1H), 8.33 – 8.22 (m, 1H), 7.94 – 7.36 (m, 7H), 6.88 (d, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 1H), 6.27 (d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.60 – 3.39 (m, 5H), 2.88 – 2.68 (m, 5H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH^+ 520, retention time 1.45 minutes.

5

EXAMPLE 136

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-{6-[4-(methanesulfonyl)piperazin-1-yl]pyridine-3-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

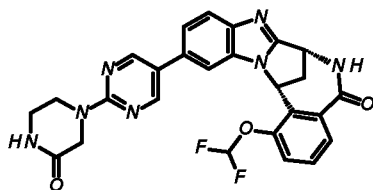
- 10 *Example 135* (80 mg, 0.15 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (5 mL) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (55 μ L, 0.31 mmol) was added to the mixture at 0°C. The mixture was stirred for 5 minutes before the addition of methanesulfonyl chloride (18 μ L, 0.23 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour before the completion of the reaction. The mixture was quenched with saturated NH_4Cl solution and extracted with DCM (3 $\times$
- 15 10 mL). The organic phases were combined, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC-MS to give the *title compound* (30 mg, 32%). ^1H NMR (300 MHz, $DMSO-d_6$) δ 8.42 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.27 (dd, $J = 6.0, 3.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.97 – 7.39 (m, 7H), 7.01 (d, $J = 8.9$ Hz, 1H), 6.27 (d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.69 (t, $J = 5.1$ Hz, 4H), 3.50 (dt, $J = 14.2, 7.3$ Hz,
- 20 1H), 3.21 (t, $J = 5.1$ Hz, 4H), 2.91 (s, 3H), 2.81 (d, $J = 13.8$ Hz, 1H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH^+ 598, retention time 1.95 minutes.

EXAMPLE 137

- 25 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[2-(dimethylamino)propan-2-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A solution of *Intermediate 171* (175 mg, 0.37 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) was added to a mixture of *Intermediate 170* (120 mg, 0.49 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium (II) dichloromethane complex (16.0 mg, 0.0196 mmol), potassium phosphate tribasic (240 mg, 1.11 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) and water (0.3 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ before heating at 110°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ solution and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL). The organics were combined, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product purified by column chromatography (0-40% MeOH in DCM (1% Et₃N)) to give the *title compound* (18 mg, 9%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.16 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 6.3, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 8.03 – 7.37 (m, 6H), 6.37 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.90 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.59 – 3.39 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, *J* = 13.5 Hz, 1H), 2.13 (s, 6H), 1.51 (s, 6H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH⁺ 505, retention time 1.44 minutes.

15

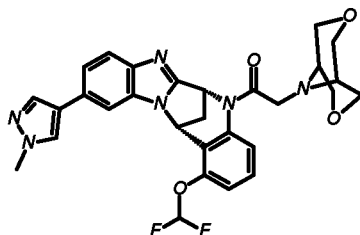
EXAMPLE 138

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A mixture of [2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid (310 mg, 1.40 mmol), *Example 11* (350 mg, 0.93 mmol), K₃PO₄ (592 mg, 2.80 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (36 mg, 0.1 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone) dipalladium(0) (85 mg, 0.1 mmol) were suspended in a mixture of 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) and water (0.5 mL). The mixture was degassed and purged with N₂ before heating in an oil bath at 105°C for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 10 mL), and the combined organics were dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography (0%-10% MeOH in DCM) afforded the *title compound* (130 mg, 27%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.12 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.69 (s, 2H), 8.29 – 8.16 (m, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H), 7.74 – 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.60 (dd, *J* = 1.8, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.39 (m, 3H), 6.33 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 2H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 3.96 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz,

2H), 3.47 (dt, $J = 13.5, 6.9$ Hz, 2H), 2.73 (d, $J = 13.3$ Hz, 1H). LC/MS: *Method 3* ESI MH^+ 518, retention time 1.54 minutes.

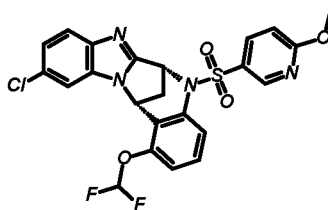
EXAMPLE 139



1-[(6*R*,12*R*)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-(1-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12*H*)-yl]-2-(3,7-dioxo-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)ethanone

The *title compound* was prepared from 1-methyl-4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)-1*H*-pyrazole, and *Preparative Example 40* in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by preparative HPLC a white solid (2 mg, 4% yield). LC/MS: *Method 3* RT 1.72 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 563$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol- d_4) δ 8.19 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.93 (s, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.70 – 7.55 (m, 2H), 7.49 – 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.25 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.13 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 6.94 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.35 (d, $J = 4.0$ Hz, 1H), 6.14 (d, $J = 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.37 (s, 2H), 4.24 (d, $J = 11.6$ Hz, 2H), 4.11 (d, $J = 11.5$ Hz, 2H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.86 (dd, $J = 11.5, 6.7$ Hz, 4H), 3.29 – 3.20 (m, 1H), 2.76 – 2.62 (m, 3H).

EXAMPLE 140



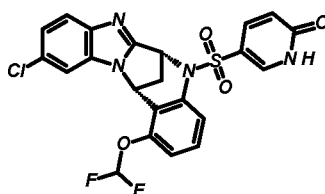
(6*R*,12*R*)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-[(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)sulfonyl]-7,12-dihydro-6*H*-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine

To *Intermediate 172* (630 mg, 1.050 mmol) was added anhydrous cesium acetate (2000 mg, 10.41 mmol), cuprous iodide (510 mg, 2.62 mmol) and dimethyl sulfoxide (1.0 mL). The mixture was sealed and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was

stirred for 45 minutes at 160°C. The reaction mixture was cooled at room temperature the solid was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under vacuum. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 133 mg (25% yield) of the *title compound* as a brown solid.

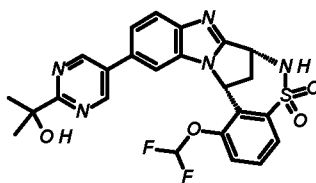
LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.07 min, $[M+H]^+ = 519$. δ ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.86 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.39 (dd, $J = 8.9, 2.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.69 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.49 – 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.40 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H). 7.27 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.21 (d, $J = 2.1$ Hz, 1H). 6.99 – 6.92 (m, 1H), 6.89 (d, $J = 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.28 (d, $J = 3.7$ Hz, 1H), 6.04 (d, $J = 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.23 – 3.13 (m, 1H), 2.54 (d, $J = 11.9$ Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 141



5-([(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-7(12H)-yl]sulfonyl}pyridin-2(1H)-one

- To a solution of *Example 140* (120 mg, 0.23 mmol) in acetonitrile (3.4 mL) was added chloromethyltrimethylsilane (0.15 mL, 1.2 mmol) in acetonitrile (3.4 mL) and potassium iodide (195 mg, 1.17 mmol) and the reaction mixture heated at 80°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue diluted with EtOAc, washed with water and $Na_2S_2O_3$ 10% aq. solution. The combined organic layers were washed with brine and filtered through a phase separator and evaporated under vacuum. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, yielding 106 mg (91% yield) of the *title compound* as a pale brown solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.06 min, $[M-H]^+ = 503/505$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 12.46 (s, 1H), 8.32 (s, 1H), 7.89 (s, 1H), 7.72 – 7.62 (m, 1H), 7.50 – 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.41 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.33 – 7.13 (m, 2H), 6.89 (d, $J = 8.0$ Hz, 1H), 6.28 (d, $J = 9.7$ Hz, 1H), 6.16 (d, $J = 3.7$ Hz, 1H), 6.03 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.17 (d, $J = 12.4$ Hz, 1H), 2.56 (d, $J = 12.4$ Hz, 1H).

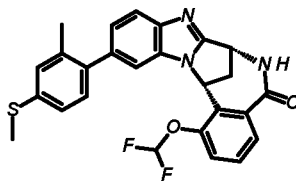
EXAMPLE 142

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5,5-dioxido-6,7-dihydro-14H-7,14-

methanobenzimidazo[2,1-d][1,2,5]benzothiadiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-ol

- 5 To a solution of *Intermediate 175* (10 mg, 0.024 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (0.1 mL), 2-[5-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl]propan-2-ol (9.6 mg, 0.036 mmol), potassium phosphate, (13 mg, 0.061 mmol),
- tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium (0) (1.2 mg, 0.0013 mmol),
- tricyclohexylphosphonium trifluoroborate (1.1 mg, 0.003 mmol) and water (10 μ L) were
- 10 added. The reaction mixture was de-gassed and stirred at 140°C for 5 hours in the microwave. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the residue washed successively with EtOAc, and 20% MeOH in DCM. The filtrate was evaporated under vacuum and the crude material was purified by preparative HPLC-MS (pH 10) yielding 1.2 mg (16% yield) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT
- 15 1.42 min, $[M-H]^+ = 514$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, Methanol- d_4) δ 9.03 (s, 2H), 7.89 (dd, $J = 6.9, 2.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.85 (d, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.70 (d, $J = 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.67 – 7.55 (m, 3H), 7.30 (t, $J = 72.8$ Hz, 1H), 6.60 (d, $J = 7.8$ Hz, 1H), 5.02 (d, $J = 4.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.44 (ddd, $J = 13.2, 7.8, 5.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.07 (d, $J = 13.6$ Hz, 1H), 1.64 (s, 6H). (OH and NH signals are missing).

20

EXAMPLE 143

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-methyl-4-(methylsulfanyl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-
methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- To a solution of 4-bromo-3-methylthioanisole (500 mg, 2.23 mmol), in 1,4-dioxane (8
- 25 mL), *bis*(pinacolato)diboron (1.2 g, 4.46 mmol) potassium acetate (885 mg, 8.92 mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene-palladium(II)dichloridedichloromethanecomplex (92 mg, 0.11 mmol) were added and the solution was degassed and heated at 100 °C, using a preheated oil bath, for 1 hour. The reaction was quenched by the addition of water

and the mixture extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated to give 590 mg (99%) of 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-(2-methyl-4-methylsulfanyl-phenyl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane which was used in the next step without further purification. LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 265

5 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.70 minutes.

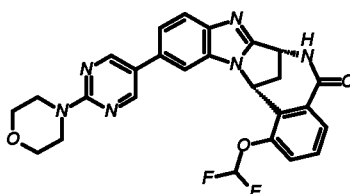
To a solution of 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-2-(2-methyl-4-methylsulfanyl-phenyl)-1,3,2-dioxaborolane (590 mg, 2.23 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (3.8 mL) were added *Example 11* (400 mg, 1.06 mmol), potassium phosphate (567 mg, 2.67 mmol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (52 mg, 0.138 mmol) and

10 tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium (0) (108 mg, 0.114 mmol). The reaction mixture was degassed for 10 mins before heating to 140°C degree in a microwave for 2 hours. The reaction was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (x3). The combined organic layers were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated to give a crude residue. Purification by column chromatography on silica eluting with EtOAc:

15 MeOH (0 to 20%) gave the *title compound* (80 mg) as a white solid. LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 478 (M+H)⁺, RT 2.42 minutes. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.14 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.24 (dd, J = 5.8, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (dd, J = 8.4, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.48 (t, J = 83.2 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (dd, J = 1.7, 0.7 Hz, 1H), 7.23 – 7.08 (m, 4H), 6.29 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (t, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (dt, J = 13.5, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.72 (d, J = 13.3

20 Hz, 1H), 2.5 (s, 3H), 2.19 (d, J = 0.6 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 144

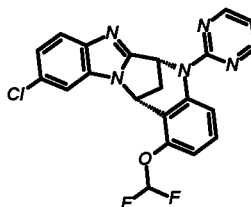


25 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(morpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 11* (450 mg, 1.20 mmol) and 2-morpholinopyrimidin-5-yl)boronic acid (380 mg, 1.82 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) then

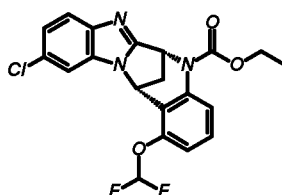
30 DCM:MeOH (0 to 20%) as eluent, the *title compound* (300 mg, 50% yield) as a pale

yellow solid. LCMS (ES+) *Method 3*: 505 (M+H)⁺, RT 1.89 minutes. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.12 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 8.66 (s, 2H), 8.22 (t, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 7.68 (d, J = 2.7 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (t, J = 79.0 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.40 (m, 3H), 6.33 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (t, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.80 – 3.65 (m, 8H), 3.58 – 3.39 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, J = 13.3 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 145

(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-7-(pyrimidin-2-yl)-7,12-dihydro-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine

To *Intermediate 176* (200 mg, 0.39 mmol) was added cesium acetate anhydrous (600 mg, 3.12 mmol), cuprous iodide (192 mg, 1.0 mmol) and dimethyl sulfoxide (0.4 mL). The mixture was sealed and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at 160°C. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature the solid was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under vacuum. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, followed by a second purification by preparative HPLC, yielding 2 mg (1% yield) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.37 min, [M+H]⁺ = 426. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.71 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 2H), 8.00 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.59 – 7.43 (m, 2H), 7.42 (t, J = 73.7 Hz, 1H), 7.28 – 7.11 (m, 3H), 6.82 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.66 (s, 1H), 6.08 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 3.17 (d, J = 11.9 Hz, 1H), 2.60 (d, J = 12.0 Hz, 1H).

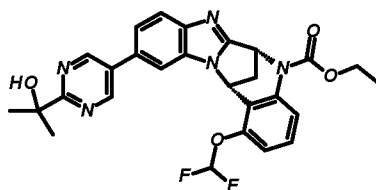
EXAMPLE 146

Ethyl-(6R,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-7(12H)-carboxylate

To *Intermediate 177* (260 mg, 0.52 mmol) was added sodium acetate (167 mg, 2.04 mmol), cuprous iodide (101 mg, 0.52 mmol) and dimethyl sulfoxide (6.4 mL). The

mixture was sealed and purged 3 times with nitrogen. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 100°C. Additional sodium acetate (167 mg, 2.03 mmol) and cuprous iodide (101 mg, 0.52 mmol) were added and the reaction was stirred at 160 °C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, the solid was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated under vacuum. The crude material was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using hexane / ethyl acetate (0 to 100%) as eluent, followed by a second purification by preparative HPLC, yielding 12 mg (6% yield) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3*: RT 2.47 min, $[M+H]^+ = 420/422$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.02 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.63 (d, $J = 8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.45 (d, $J = 2.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.42 (t, $J = 73.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.29 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.19 (dd, $J = 8.7, 2.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.90 (dd, $J = 8.4, 1.0$ Hz, 1H), 6.04 (m, 2H), 4.38 – 4.23 (m, 2H), 3.10 (dt, $J = 12.1, 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 2.56 (d, $J = 12.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.38 (t, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 147



15

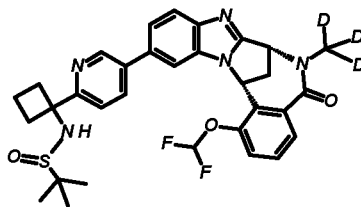
Ethyl-(6R,12R)-11-(difluoromethoxy)-2-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6H-6,12-methanobenzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-7(12H)-carboxylate

The *title compound* was prepared from 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl) pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester, and *Example 146* in accordance with the Method for *Example 20* to give, following purification by preparative HPLC a white solid (1.2 mg, 8% yield).

LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.18 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 522$

^1H NMR (300 MHz, Methanol- d_4) δ 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.17 (d, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.87 – 7.73 (m, 2H), 7.58 (dd, $J = 8.5, 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.25 (t, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.14 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.93 – 6.84 (m, 1H), 6.20 (d, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 2H), 4.43 (m, 2H), 3.20 (dt, $J = 12.1, 4.4$ Hz, 1H), 2.65 (d, $J = 12.0$ Hz, 1H), 1.65 (s, 6H), 1.49 (t, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 3H).

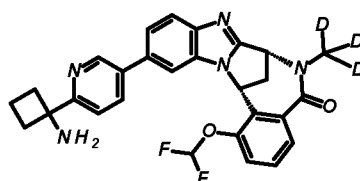
25

EXAMPLE 148

N-(1-{5-[(*7R*,*14R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}cyclobutyl)-2-
 5 methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 178* (300 mg, 0.91 mmol) and *Intermediate 159* (751 mg, 1.09 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by column chromatography in silica gel (Hexane: EtOAc (from 0 to 100%) then DCM :MeOH(from 0 to 15%) a yellow solid
 10 (600 mg, 98% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 2.03 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 609$.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.81 (s, 1H), 8.32 – 8.25 (m, 1H), 8.01 (d, $J = 6.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, $J = 8.3$ Hz, 2H), 7.76 (t, $J = 73.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d, $J = 8.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.57 (d, $J = 8.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.53 – 7.44 (m, 2H), 6.31 (d, $J = 6.9$ Hz, 1H), 5.91 (s, 1H), 3.56-3.50 (m, 1H), 2.84 (d, $J = 13.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.41-2.45 (m, 2H), 1.75-1.8 (m, 2H), 1.97-2.03 (m, 2H),
 15 1.15 (s, 9H).

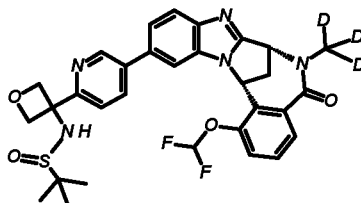
EXAMPLE 149

(*7R*,*14R*)-11-[6-(1-aminocyclobutyl)pyridin-3-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-
 20 trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-
5(*14H*)-one

Example 148 (600 mg, 0.89 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (4.5 mL) and HCl 4N in dioxane (0.50 mL, 2.0 mmol) was added at room temperature, the reaction was stirred for 5 hours. The solvent was evaporated and the crude mixture was dissolved in water and
 25 DCM. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (x2) and then freeze dried to give the *title compound* as an HCl salt and a white solid (460 mg, 99% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.65 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 505$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.91 (dd, J

= 2.4, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 8.89 (bs, 3H, NH₃⁺), 8.34 – 8.15 (m, 2H), 7.96 – 7.76 (m, 3H), 7.73 – 7.63 (m, 1H), 7.69 (t, J = 73.3 Hz, 1H), 7.53 – 7.49 (m, 2H), 6.36 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.34 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.56 (dt, J = 14.2, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.88 (d, J = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 2.63 (q, J = 7.3 Hz, 2H), 2.35-2.12 (m, 2H), 2.11 – 1.93 (m, 2H).

5

EXAMPLE 150

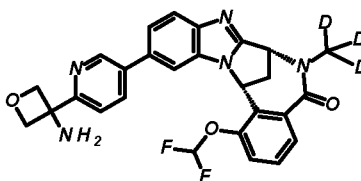
N-(3-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

10

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 159* (890 mg, 1.65 mmol), and *Intermediate 179* (500 mg, 1.5 mmol) in accordance with the method described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by column chromatography in silica gel (hexanes: EtOAc from 0 to 100% then DCM :MeOH from 0 to 15%), a yellow solid (750 mg, 82%). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.82 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 611. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.88 (d, J = 2.3 Hz, 1H), 8.34 – 8.22 (m, 1H), 8.08 (dd, J = 8.3, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.76 (dd, J = 5.1, 3.3 Hz, 2H), 7.70 – 7.63 (m, 1H), 7.67 (t, J = 73.3 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (dd, J = 8.6, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 2H), 6.48 (s, 1H), 6.31 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 5.04 – 4.75 (m, 3H), 3.53 (dt, J = 14.3, 7.4 Hz, 1H), 2.83 (d, J = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.17 (d, J = 1.2 Hz, 9H).

15

20

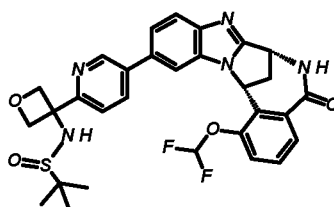
EXAMPLE 151

(7R,14R)-11-[6-(3-aminooxetan-3-yl)pyridin-3-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

25

Example 150 (249 mg, 0.4077 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (8 mL) and HCl 4N in dioxane (0.2 mL, 0.8 mmol) was added at 0 °C and the reaction was kept in the fridge overnight. A saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ was added at 0 °C and the reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated to give the *title compound* (120 mg, 58%) as a pale brown solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.49 mins, [M+H]⁺ = 507. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.85 (dd, J = 2.4, 0.8 Hz, 1H), 8.34 – 8.21 (m, 1H), 8.05 (dd, J = 8.3, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 – 7.71 (m, 3H), 7.67 (t, J = 73.3 Hz, 1H), 7.61 – 7.44 (m, 3H), 6.30 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.93 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 4.59 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 3.60 – 3.44 (m, 1H), 2.83 (d, J = 13.8 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 152

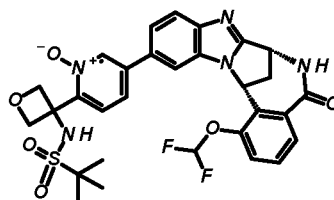


N-(3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfinamide

The *title compound* was obtained as a by-product of the preparation of *Example 150*. LC/MS: RT 1.75 mins (pH 10), [M+H]⁺ = 594.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.14 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.88 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.08 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.78 – 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.69 (t, J = 73.3 Hz, 1H), 7.62 – 7.40 (m, 2H), 6.47 (s, 1H), 6.37 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 4.93 – 4.81 (m, 4H), 3.28 (s, 2H), 3.56 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 1.17 (s, 9H).

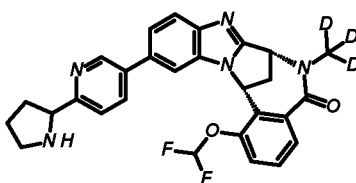
EXAMPLE 153



N-(3-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]-1-oxidopyridin-2-yl}oxetan-3-yl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

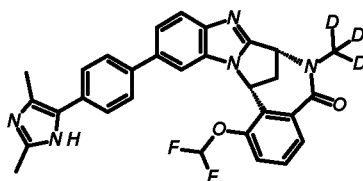
To a solution of *Example 152* (18 mg, 0.03 mmol) in dichloromethane (0.3 mL), 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (5.2 mg, 0.03 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred overnight. More 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (10.4 mg, 0.060 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was directly purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexanes: EtOAc from 0 to 100% then DCM :MeOH from 0 to 15% to give the *title compound* as a white solid (12mg, 63% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.78 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 626$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.16 (d, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 8.27 – 8.18 (m, 1H), 7.89 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.77 – 7.64 (m, 3H), 7.67 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.63 – 7.46 (m, 2H), 6.36 (d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 5.02 – 4.88 (m, 2H), 4.87 (d, $J = 7.8$ Hz, 3H), 3.56 (m, 1H), 2.77 (s, 1H), 1.14 (s, 9H).

EXAMPLE 154



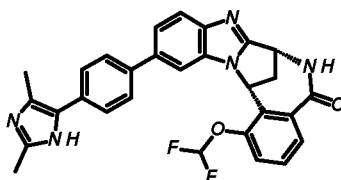
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6-trideuteromethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocine-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 159* (600mg, 1.24 mmol), and 5-bromo-2-pyrrolidin-2-yl-pyridine (352 mg, 1.55 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20* to give, following purification by column chromatography in silica gel (Hex: EtOAc from 0 to 100% then DCM :MeOH with 2% of NH_3 from 0 to 20%) and subsequent SCF purification, a white solid (20 mg, 3.2 % yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.62 minutes, $[M+H]^+ = 505$. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.74 (d, $J = 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.27 (dd, $J = 5.9, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 8.01 – 7.93 (m, 1H), 7.78 – 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.67 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.58 – 7.44 (m, 4H), 6.29 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.24 (d, $J = 7.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.52 (dt, $J = 14.0, 7.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.11 – 2.87 (m, 2H), 2.83 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 1H), 2.18 (m, 2H), 1.74 (m, 2H).

EXAMPLE 155

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6-trideuteriomethyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 159* (466 mg, 0.9622 mmol), and *Intermediate 180* (200 mg, 0.789 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20*. The reaction mixture was filtered and the solid was washed with dichloromethane and water to give the *title compound* (110 mg, 27 % yield) as a white solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.72 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 529$. Free base: ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 8.32 – 8.23 (m, 1H), 7.75 – 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.68 (t, $J = 73.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.63 (s, 4H), 7.57 – 7.46 (m, 3H), 6.29 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.58 – 3.46 (m, 1H), 2.82 (d, $J = 13.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 2.27 (s, 3H).

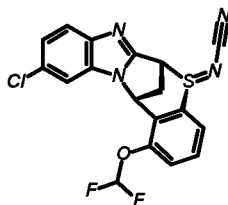
EXAMPLE 156

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(2,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 171* (114 mg, 0.2196 mmol), and *Intermediate 180* (50 mg, 0.2 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20*. The reaction mixture was diluted in dichloromethane:MeOH (10%) and extracted with water. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane:MeOH (10%) five times and the combined organic layer was filtered through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid obtained was triturated in dichloromethane and water to give the *title compound* (75 mg, 73 % yield) as a yellow solid. HCl in methanol was added and the solid was freeze dried to give the HCl salt of the *title compound*. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.65 mins, $[M+H]^+ = 512$.

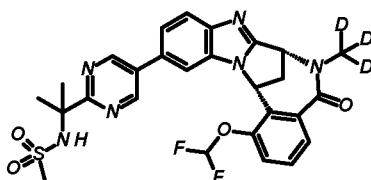
¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 14.24 (s, 1H), 14.13 (s, 1H), 9.15 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.24 (t, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 7.85 – 7.64 (m, 5H), 7.68 (t, J = 73.3 Hz, 1H), 7.62 – 7.47 (m, 3H), 6.37 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 4.91 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 3.50-3.45 (m, 1H), 2.78 (m, 1H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.46 (s, 3H).

5

EXAMPLE 157

[(6R,7E,12R)-2-chloro-11-(difluoromethoxy)-6H-6,12-methano-7λ-4-benzimidazo[2,1-c][1,4]benzothiazepin-7(12H)-ylidene]cyanamide

- 10 To a solution of *Example 88* (200 mg, 0.55 mmol) and cyanamide (34 mg, 0.81 mmol) in acetonitrile (5 mL) at 0°C, was added iodobenzene diacetate (388 mg, 1.21 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 3 hours at 0°C. The solvent was evaporated and the crude mixture was purified by column chromatography on silica gel, hexane : EtOAc (0 to 100%) to give the *title compound* (145 mg) as a yellow solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.98 mins,
- 15 [M+H]⁺ = 405. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 7.75 – 7.62 (m, 3H), 7.57 (t, J = 73.1 Hz, 1H), 7.68 – 7.50 (m, 1H), 7.43 (d, J = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 7.27 (dd, J = 8.7, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 6.24 (t, J = 2.9 Hz, 1H), 5.85 (dd, J = 3.2, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (t, J = 3.5 Hz, 2H).

EXAMPLE 158

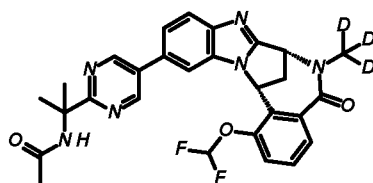
20

N-(2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)methanesulfonamide

- To a solution of *Example 62* (350mg, 0.66 mmol) cooled to 0°C in DCM (5mL) was
- 25 added sequentially, 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.1 equiv., 0.066 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (2.2 equiv., 1.45 mmol) followed by drop wise addition of methane sulphonyl chloride (1.1 equiv., 0.73 mmol) and the mixture allowed to stir at ambient

temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched by addition of water (20mL), the organic phase separated, dried over sodium sulphate, filtered and the solvents removed *in vacuo*. The crude residue was purified by preparative HPLC to afford the *title compound* as an off white solid (200mg). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.08 (s, 2H), 8.27 (t, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 8.01 – 7.72 (m, 2H), 7.71 – 7.59 (m, 1H), 7.57 – 7.35 (m, 3H), 6.31 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.53 (dt, J = 14.1, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.86 (m, 4H), 1.70 (s, 6H). LCMS *Method 3* RT = 1.85 minutes (M+H)⁺ 572, LCMS *Method 4* RT = 1.79 minutes (M+H)⁺ 572.

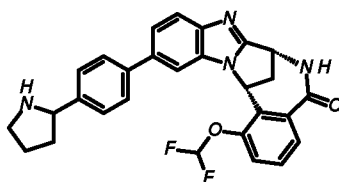
10

EXAMPLE 159

N-(2-{5-[(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl)acetamide

The *title compound* was synthesised from *Example 62* (350mg, 0.66 mmol) and acetyl chloride (1.1 eq, 0.73 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 158*. Purification by preparative HPLC gave an off white solid (50 mg). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.99 (s, 2H), 8.39 – 8.13 (m, 2H), 8.01 – 7.66 (m, 3H), 7.61 (dd, J = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.53 – 7.41 (m, 2H), 6.30 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.53 (dt, J = 14.1, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.84 (d, J = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.80 (s, 3H), 1.60 (s, 6H). LCMS *Method 4* RT = 1.62 minutes 536 (M+H)⁺. LCMS *Method 3* RT = 1.68 minutes 536 (M+H)⁺

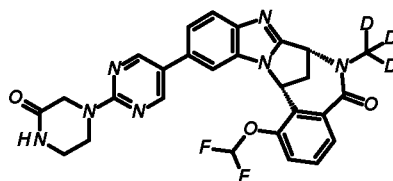
20

EXAMPLE 160

25

(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(pyrrolidin-2-yl)phenyl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

Intermediate 182 (275 mg, 0.42 mmol) was dissolved in HCl/ dioxane (4M) (10 mL) and stirred for 3 hrs at room temperature. After this time the solution was evaporated *in vacuo*. The mixture was separated between DCM (20 mL) and aqueous HCl (0.5M) (20 mL) and the DCM layer was discarded. The aqueous layer was then made basic with sodium carbonate solution and then extracted into DCM (2x50mL) and the combined organics were dried (phase separator) and evaporated *in vacuo*. to provide the *title compound* as the HCl salt (90 mg, 44%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.13 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 5.9, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 7.70 – 7.61 (m, 2H), 7.60 – 7.37 (m, 7H), 6.33 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 4.06 (t, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (dt, *J* = 13.5, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.11 – 2.82 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.14 (dtd, *J* = 12.1, 7.5, 4.8 Hz, 1H), 1.77 (dq, *J* = 13.2, 7.8, 7.4 Hz, 1H), 1.60 – 1.41 (m, 1H), 0.91 – 0.76 (m, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.76 minutes, *m/z* 487.2

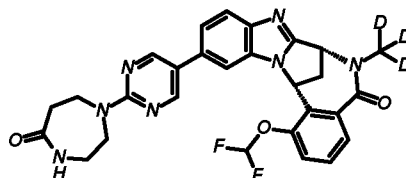
EXAMPLE 161

15

(7*R*,14*R*)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideutero-methyl-11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-*b*][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14*H*)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 110* (350 mg, 0.89 mmol) and [2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid (296 mg, 1.33 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20*. The product was purified by crystallisation from EtOAc to afford the *title compound* (245 mg, 51%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.69 (s, 2H), 8.26 (dd, *J* = 6.2, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 8.14 (s, 1H), 7.70 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.56 – 7.41 (m, 3H), 6.28 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (s, 2H), 3.96 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 2H), 3.60 – 3.42 (m, 2H), 3.30 (s, 1H), 2.82 (d, *J* = 13.7 Hz, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.50 minutes, *m/z* 535.2

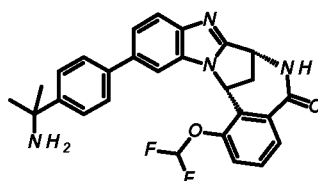
25

EXAMPLE 162

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-methyl-11-[2-(5-oxo-1,4-diazepan-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

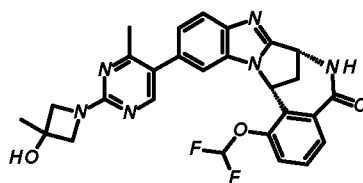
The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 110* (350 mg, 0.89 mmol) and [2-(5-oxo-1,4-diazepan-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid (315 mg, 1.33 mmol) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 20*. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 10% gradient of MeOH in DCM) and then crystallisation from EtOAc afforded the *title compound* (245 mg, 51%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.67 (s, 2H), 8.27 (dd, *J* = 5.9, 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.76 – 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 7.56 – 7.40 (m, 3H), 6.27 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.97 (q, *J* = 4.3, 3.8 Hz, 4H), 3.50 (dt, *J* = 14.1, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.24 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 2.82 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 2.54 (s, 2H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.63 minutes, *m/z* 549.2

EXAMPLE 163



(7R,14R)-11-[4-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 182(a) (0.10 g, 0.13 mmol) (75% pure) was dissolved in HCl dioxane (4M, 10 mL) and stirred for 18 hrs at r.t. and before being evaporated *in vacuo*. The mixture was separated between DCM (20 mL) and sodium carbonate (20 mL) and the organic layer was then dried (phase separator) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel (0 to 10% gradient of MeOH in DCM) and freeze drying from HCl (0.5M) to obtain the HCl salt of the *title compound* as a white powder. (36 mg, 58%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.13 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 6.0, 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.72 – 7.54 (m, 5H), 7.59 – 7.32 (m, 7H), 6.34 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.87 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.60 – 3.43 (m, 1H), 2.73 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 1.44 (s, 6H), 1.24 (s, 1H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.80 minutes, *m/z* 475.2

EXAMPLE 164

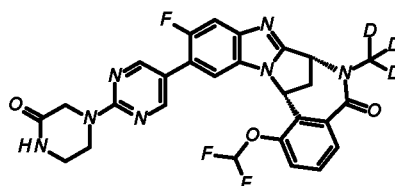
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxy-3-methylazetidin-1-yl)-4-

5 methylpyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-
5(14H)-one

The *title compound* can be prepared from *Intermediate* 171 (0.35 g, 0.93 mmol, 1eq) and 1-(5-bromo-4-methyl-pyrimidin-2-yl)-3-methyl-azetidin-3-ol (1eq) in accordance with the Method described for *Example 137*. The product was purified by column

10 chromatography on silica gel (EtOAc in DCM (0 to 100% gradient) and then MeOH in EtOAc (0 to 15% gradient)) to afford the free base of the *title compound* as a brown solid. The solid could be further purified by dissolving into aqueous 0.5M HCl (20mL) and then washing the aqueous solution with DCM (2x25mL). Sodium carbonate solution was then added until precipitation was observed and the mixture extracted into DCM (3x 50mL).

15 The organics were dried (phase separator) and evaporated *in vacuo* before being again dissolved into aqueous 0.5M HCl and freeze dried to afford the HCl salt of the *title compound* (215 mg, 42%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.14 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, *J* = 5.8, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.71 – 7.45 (m, 4H), 7.41 – 7.27 (m, 1H), 7.17 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 6.31 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.90 (t, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.93 (d, *J* = 1.9 Hz, 4H), 3.60 – 3.32 (m, 1H), 2.74 (d, *J* = 13.3 Hz, 1H), 2.26 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 3H).
 20 LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.58 minutes, *m/z* 519.2.

EXAMPLE 165

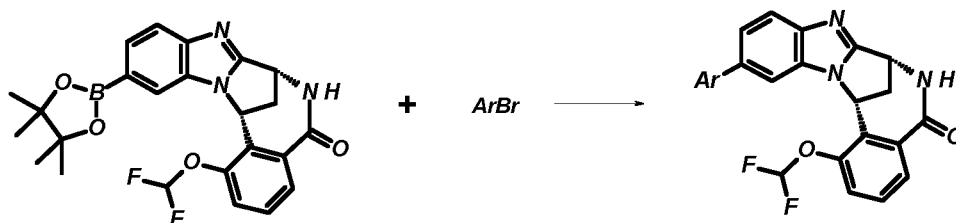
25

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6- trideutero-methyl -11-[2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-
yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-
5(14H)-one

Intermediate 187 (120 mg, 0.18 mmol) was suspended in 2-propanol (20 mL) and treated with hydrochloric acid (5 mL, 20 mmol, 4M in 1,4-dioxane) and stirred for 3 hours at ambient temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residual solid used without further purification.

- 5 The residue was suspended in acetonitrile (10 mL), cooled to 0°C and 4-methylmorpholine (0.1 mL, 0.9 mmol) added followed by COMU (87 mg, 0.197 mmol) and the mixture allowed to stir and reach ambient temperature. After 1 hour the mixture was diluted with water (25 mL) and extracted into EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). Combined organics were washed with water (20 mL) and dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a crude
- 10 beige solid. Purification by column chromatography eluting with 0 to 100% DCM/EtOAc and then a gradient of DCM/MeOH 1 to 10% before freeze drying afforded the *title compound* as a white solid (46 mg, 47%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.56 (t, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 2H), 8.27 (dd, *J* = 7.0, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.66 – 7.56 (m, 2H), 7.56 – 7.35 (m, 3H), 6.27 (d, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 3.96 (t, *J* = 5.4
- 15 Hz, 2H), 3.50 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.31 (s, 2H), 2.82 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H). LC/MS Method 3: RT 1.52 minutes, *m/z* 553.2

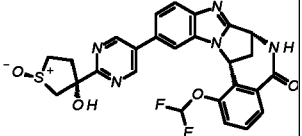
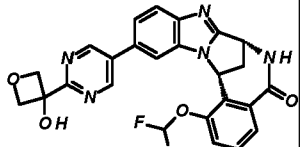
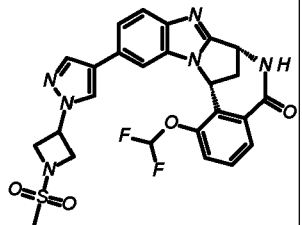
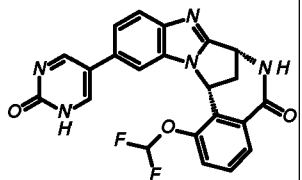
General Method A: Suzuki Coupling between *Intermediate 171* and Aryl Bromides

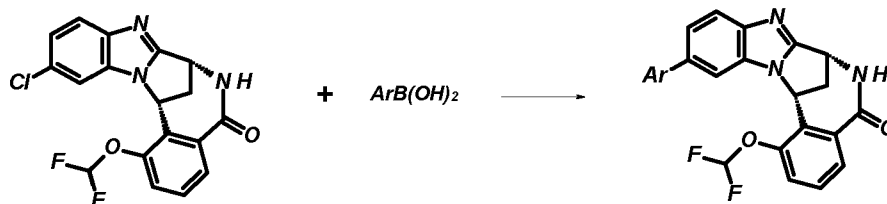


- To a degassed suspension of *Intermediate 171* (0.08mmol), Pd₂dba₃ (5%mol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (12%mol) and K₃PO₄ (2.5eq) in 1,4-dioxane/water (2mL/0.1mL) was added the appropriate aryl bromide (1.5eq). The resultant
- 25 mixture was stirred in an Anton Paar microwave at 110°C for 2 hours and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved into EtOAc, washed with water, concentrated *in vacuo* and subsequently purified by preparative HPLC in basic mode to afford the *title compounds* described in *Table 1*.

TABLE 1: EXAMPLES 166 to 173

Exempl e	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
166		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1-oxidothiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	537.1	3.6
167		(7R,14R)-11-[2-(4,4-difluoro-1-hydroxycyclohexyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	554.1	4.67
168		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxy-1,1-dioxidotetrahydrothiophen-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	554.1	3.66
169		(3R)-3-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-hydroxytetrahydrothiophenium-1-olate	538.1	3.35

Exempl e	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
170		(3S)-3-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-hydroxytetrahydrothiophenium-1-olate	538.1	3.33
171		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-hydroxyoxetan-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	492.1	3.58
172		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{1-[1-(methylsulfonyl)azetidin-3-yl]-1H-pyrazol-4-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	541.1	3.8
173		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-hydroxypyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	436.1	3.06

General Method B: Suzuki Coupling between *Example 11* and Aryl Boronic Acids

- 5 To a degassed suspension of *Example 11* (0.1mmol), Pd₂dba₃ (5%mol), tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (12%mol) and K₃PO₄ (2.5eq) in 1,4-dioxane/water (2ml/0.1mL) was added the appropriate aryl boronic acid or pinacalato ester (1.5eq). The resultant mixture was stirred in an Anton Paar microwave at 110°C for 2 hours and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved into EtOAc, washed
- 10 with water, concentrated *in vacuo* and subsequently purified by preparative HPLC in basic mode to afford the *title compounds* described in *Table 2*.

TABLE 2: EXAMPLES 174 to 185

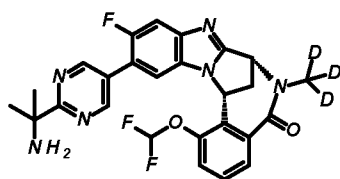
15

Example	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
174		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1,4-dihydroxy-4-methylcyclohexyl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	548.2	3.88
175		2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-2-methylpropanenitrile	487.2	4.49

Example	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
176		1-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}-3-methylazetidine-3-carbonitrile	514.2	4.18
177		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[(1S,4S)-2-oxa-5-azabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	517.1	3.94
178		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(thiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	521.1	4.86
179		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-{2-[3-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)azetidin-1-yl]pyrimidin-5-yl}-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	533.2	3.86

Example	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
180		(7R,14R)-11-[2-(3,3-difluoroazetidin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	511.1	4.47
181		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(3-oxa-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1]oct-8-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	531.2	4.39
182		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(7-oxo-3,6-diazabicyclo[3.2.2]non-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	558.2	3.73
183		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(1,1-dioxidothiomorpholin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	553.1	4.02

Example	Structure	IUPAC_NAME	LCMS Method 4	
			Mass	RT (mins)
184		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(1-methyl-6-oxo-1,6-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	449.1	3.48
185		(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[2-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one	504.1	4.05

EXAMPLE 186

5

(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-trideutero methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

10

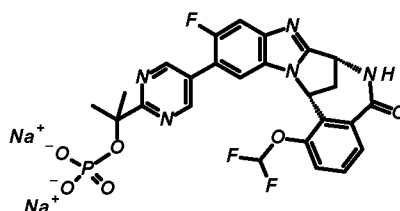
Intermediate 191 (420 mg, 0.70 mmol) was dissolved in HCl (4M in 1,4-dioxane) 10mL and stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. After 3 hours the solution was concentrated *in vacuo*.

The mixture was separated between DCM and aqueous HCl (0.5M) and the DCM layer was discarded. The aqueous layer was then made basic with sodium carbonate solution and then extracted with DCM (3 x 50mL) and the combined organics were dried

(MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The product was purified by column chromatography on silica eluting with 0 to 15% MeOH in DCM to afford an off-white solid. The compound was freeze dried with an equivalent of hydrochloric acid to afford the *title compound* as an HCl salt (275 mg, 72%).

- 5 ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.10 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 2H), 8.61 (bs, 3H, NH₃⁺), 8.29 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 7.82 – 7.70 (m, 1H), 7.60 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 2H), 7.57 – 7.45 (m, 2H), 6.29 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.29 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.54 (dt, *J* = 14.0, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 2.86 (d, *J* = 13.8 Hz, 1H), 1.70 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.67 minutes, *m/z* 512.2

10

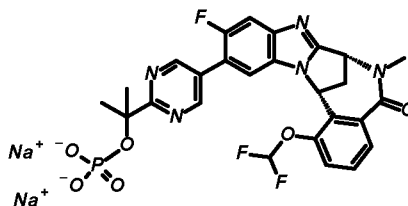
EXAMPLE 187

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl phosphate, disodium salt

- 15 To a solution of *Intermediate 192* (31.0 g, 41.0 mmol) in a mixture of ethanol (450 mL) and sodium hydroxide (410 mL, 82.0 mmol, 0.200 mol/L) was added 10% Pd/C (3.10 g). The reaction mixture was degassed under vacuum and placed under a hydrogen atmosphere using a balloon. The reaction mixture was stirred vigorously until LCMS analysis showed the reaction was complete. It was necessary to add a further portion of
- 20 Pd/C catalyst (775mg, 2.5%w/w) after 1 hour and the mixture stirred under hydrogen for a further 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was degassed with nitrogen, filtered through a pad of celite which was washed with EtOH/H₂O (1/1, 1000 mL), collecting the colourless eluent. The ethanol was removed *in vacuo* and the aqueous reduced to ~400mL volume *in vacuo*. The aqueous was washed with dichloromethane (3 x 250 mL) which was
- 25 discarded, before further concentrating the aqueous solution *in vacuo* to a 200mL volume. The aqueous layer was stirred with phosphonics MTU resin (15g) for 2.5 hours to remove palladium residues. After filtration to remove the resin, the aqueous was concentrated down to ~100mL *in vacuo* and then freeze dried to give the *title compound* as a white solid (23.15g, 91%). ¹H NMR: (D₂O, 300 MHz) 1.76 (s, 6H), 2.61 (d, 1H, *J*=13.6 Hz),
- 30 3.16 (m, 1H), 4.83 (d, 1H, *J*=6.5 Hz), 6.19 (d, 1H, *J*=7.0 Hz), 6.84 (m, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H,

J=73.3 Hz) 7.12 (m, 1H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.93 (dd, 1H, J=8.2, 0.9 Hz), 8.56 (d, 2H, J=1.2Hz). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.00 minutes, *m/z* 576.

EXAMPLE 188



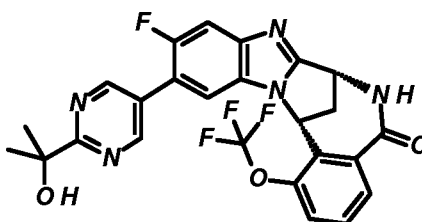
5

2-{5-[(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6-methyl-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-11-yl]pyrimidin-2-yl}propan-2-yl phosphate, disodium salt

To a solution of *Intermediate 193* (3.2 g, 4.2 mmol) in a mixture of ethanol (60 mL) and sodium hydroxide solution (330 mg in 42 mL of water) was added 10% Pd/C (480 mg). The reaction was degassed and placed under a hydrogen atmosphere, and stirred vigorously for 40 minutes before the reaction completed. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite, washed with EtOH / H₂O (1:1, 200 mL), and most of the EtOH was removed *in vacuo*. The aqueous was washed with DCM (5 × 50 mL) before being further concentrated *in vacuo*, and treated with MTU resin (1.5g) to remove palladium impurities and stirred for 1.5 hours before filtration through a pad of celite. The water was removed *in vacuo* and further dried on freezer-drier to give the desired product as the disodium salt (2.43 g, 92%). ¹H NMR (D₂O, 400 MHz) δ 8.65 (s, 2H), 8.01 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.43 (d, J=6.7 Hz, 1H), 7.3-6.9 (m, 4H), 6.16 (d, J=7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.04 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 3.27 (m, 1H), 2.67 (d, J=14.0 Hz, 1H), 1.76 (s, 6H). LC/MS *Method 3*: ES⁺ (M+H)⁺ 590, retention time 0.91 minutes.

20

EXAMPLE 189



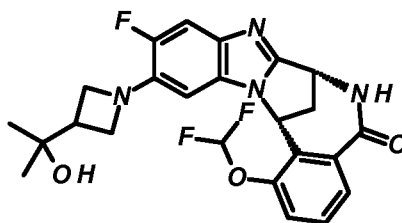
(7R,14R)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(trifluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

A 0.6M solution of phenol in anhydrous DMSO (1.15 ml, 0.69 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 206* (0.300 g, 0.57 mmol) in anhydrous DMSO (5 ml). Potassium carbonate (0.120 g, 0.86 mmol), dried 4Å molecular sieves (0.360 g), dichloro-
5 [bis(dicyclohexylphosphino)propane]palladium(II) (0.035 g, 0.057mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was heated to 100°C under 3 bars of carbon monoxide for 48 hours.

Water (50 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (1x 150 ml). The organic phase was then washed with brine (2x 300 ml), dried over sodium
10 sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting crude residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 95/5) as eluent to give a brown solid. The solid was treated with iPr₂O (10 ml), filtered, and dried under reduced pressure at 45°C to give the *title compound* (0.110 g, 37% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 1.02 min., 514 [M+H]⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆)
15 1.55 (s, 6 H), 2.82 (d, J=13.5 Hz, 1 H), 3.51 (m, 1 H), 4.95 (t, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H), 5.15 (s, 1 H), 6.32 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.42 (d, J=6.8 Hz, 1 H), 7.58 (t, J=8.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.69 (d, J=11.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.72 (m, 1 H), 8.38 (dd, J=1.3 and 8.3 Hz, 1 H), 8.92 (d, J=1.8 Hz, 2 H), 9.21 (d, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 190



20

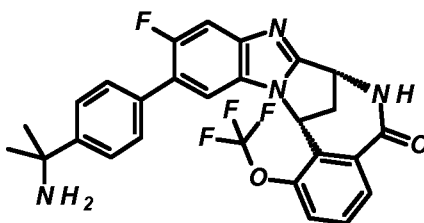
(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(3-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)azetidin-1-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 208* (0.265 g, 0.55 mmol) in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 191*. Purification by SiO₂
25 flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 95/5) as eluent to give a pink solid. This solid was treated with iPr₂O (10 ml) and the resulting suspension was filtered, and

before being dried under reduced pressure at 45°C, the isolated solid was washed with iPr₂O (2x 10 ml) and with pentane (3x 10 ml) to give the *title compound* (0.082 g, 36% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.88 min., 473 [M+H]⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆)
5 1.05 (s, 6 H), 2.66 (d, J=13.5 Hz, 1 H), 2.69 (m, 1 H), 3.40 (m, 1 H), 3.71-3.85 (m, 4 H),
4.38 (s, 1 H), 4.77 (t, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H), 6.18 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1 H), 6.49 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 1 H),
7.27 (d, J=13.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.49 (m, 2 H), 7.63 (t, J=74.3 Hz, 1 H), 8.21 (m, 1 H), 9.05 (d,
J=6.9 Hz, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 191



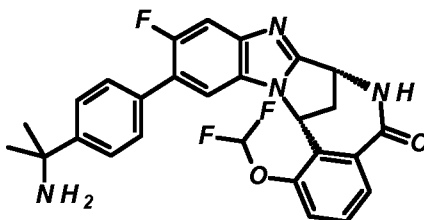
10

(7R,14R)-11-((2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-10-fluoro-1-(trifluoromethoxy)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 210* (0.195 g, 0.38 mmol) in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 189* to give after
15 purification by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH/NH₄OH (100/0/0 to 94.5/5/0.5) as eluent followed flash chromatography on amino modified silica eluting with DCM/MeOH (100/0 to 98/8) as eluent and subsequent trituration with iPr₂O to give (0.055 g, 26% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 0.65 min., 511 [M+H]⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆)
20 1.42 (s, 6 H), 2.25 (broad m, 2 H), 2.81 (d, J=13.5 Hz, 1 H), 3.50 (m, 1 H), 4.91 (t, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H), 6.30 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.32 (d, J=7.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.40 (broad d, J=8.5 Hz, 2 H), 7.54 (d, J=12.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.57 (t, J=8.3 Hz, 1 H), 7.63 (d, J=8.5 Hz, 2 H), 7.70 (broad d, J=8.3 Hz, 1 H), 8.49 (dd, J=1.2 and 8.3 Hz, 1 H), 9.20 (d, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H).

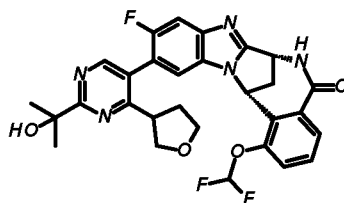
25

EXAMPLE 192

(7R,14R)-11-((2-aminopropan-2-yl)phenyl)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 5 The *title* compound was prepared from *Intermediate 212* (0.240 g, 0.48 mmol) in accordance with the synthetic procedure described for *Example 191*. Purification by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH/NH₄OH (100/0/0 to 94.5/5/0.5) as eluent gave a pink solid. This solid was purified with preparative HPLC using C18 Nucleodur gravity 250x 4.6 mm Macherey-Nagel column and a gradient of acetonitrile (B) in water (A) containing 0.1% TFA (B/A 5/95 to 1/1 in 23min, 1 ml/min) to afford the *title compound* (0.041 g, 17% yield).

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES⁺) RT 0.60 min., 493 [M+H]⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1.68 (s, 6 H), 2.74 (d, J=13.5 Hz, 1 H), 3.48 (m, 1 H), 4.90 (t, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H), 6.31 (d, J=7.2 Hz, 1 H), 7.47-7.54 (m, 3 H), 7.58 (t, J=73.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (m, 3 H), 7.65 (d, J=8.5 Hz, 2 H), 8.24 (m, 1 H), 9.15 (d, J=6.9 Hz, 1 H).

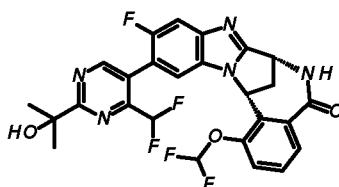
EXAMPLE 193

- (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)-4-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 1* (100 mg, 0.202 mmol), tetrahydrofuran-3-sulfonyl chloride (106 mg, 0.6026 mmol) and [Ir(DF(CF₃)PPY)₂(DTBPY)]PF₆ (4.5 mg, 0.0040 mmol) in acetonitrile / TFA (1/1) (2

mL) , following the General procedure for the late stage trifluoromethylation described for *Example 107*. The crude reaction was purified by LC-2D MS chromatography in acidic mode (formic acid) *Method 14* yielding to 6,6 mg (6%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 15* (ES+) RT 5.23 min., 566 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.05 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.62 (s, 1H), 8.26 (dd, J = 6.3, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (d, J = 10.6 Hz, 1H), 7.53 – 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.46 (t, J = 73.6 Hz, 1H), 7.36 (t, J = 5.9 Hz, 1H), 6.34 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.04 – 4.77 (m, 2H), 4.02 – 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.80 – 3.60 (m, 2H), 3.52 (dd, J = 13.8, 6.9 Hz, 1H), 3.42 – 3.27 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.5 Hz, 1H), 2.28 – 2.08 (m, 1H), 2.07 – 1.90 (m, 1H), 1.57 (s, 6H).

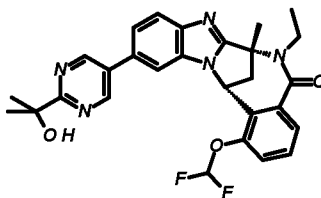
10

EXAMPLE 194

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[4-(difluoromethyl)-2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-10-fluoro-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

15 The *title compound* was prepared from *Example 1* (100 mg, 0,202 mmol), difluoromethanesulfonyl chloride (54 μL, 0,61 mmol) and [IR[DF(CF₃)PPY]₂(DTBPY)]PF₆ (4,5 mg, 0,0040 mmol) in acetonitrile / TFA (1/1) (2 mL) , following the General procedure for the late stage trifluoromethylation described for *Example 107*. The crude reaction was taken up in methanol (4 mL) before addition of
20 potassium carbonate (170 mg, 1,218 mmol) and stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by LC-2D MS chromatography *Method 14* yielding to 13.7 mg (13%) of the *title compound* as a white solid. LCMS *Method 15* (ES+) RT 5.40 min., 546 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.17 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.98 (s, 1H), 8.25 (dd, J = 6.6, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d, J = 10.3 Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.49 (m, 2H), 7.48 (t, J = 73.1 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 6.83 (t, J = 53.0 Hz, 1H), 6.33 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 5.28 (s, 1H), 4.93 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 3.51 (dd, J = 13.6, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 2.76 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 1.60 (s, 6H).

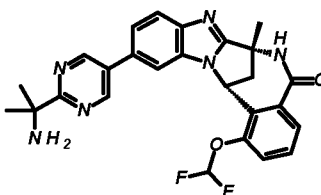
25

EXAMPLE 195

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-ethyl-11-[2-(2-hydroxypropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

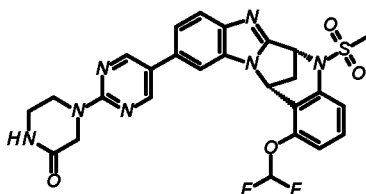
- 5 The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 194* (5 mg, 0,012 mmol) and 2-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (6.58 mg, 0,024 mmol), following the synthetic protocol described for *Example 101*. TPurification over silica gel (heptane / ethyl acetate 25/75 to 0/100) to afforded 3 mg (48%) of the *title compound* as an off-white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 2.32 min, [M+H]⁺ = 520.2.

10

EXAMPLE 196

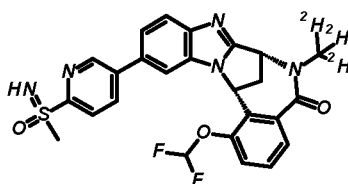
(7R,14R)-11-[2-(2-aminopropan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]-1-(difluoromethoxy)-7-methyl-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

- 15 *Intermediate 150* (7 mg, 0.012 mmol) was added to a solution of DCM / trifluoroacetic acid (1:1, 0.17 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour before addition of a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO₃ (1 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 2 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*, yielding 6 mg (100%) of the *title compound*
- 20 as a white solid. LCMS *Method 3* (ES⁺): RT 3.04 minutes, [M+H]⁺ = 491.

EXAMPLE 197

5 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-{2-[di(prop-2-en-1-yl)amino]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from [2-(3-oxopiperazin-1-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]boronic acid pinacol ester, and *Example 23* in accordance with *General Method B* to give, following purification by preparative HPLC, a white solid (30 mg, 15% yield). LC/MS *Method 3*: RT 1.84 mins (pH 10), [M+H]⁺ = 568. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.71 (s, 2H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 7.72 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.65 – 7.25 (m, 4H), 7.33 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (d, J = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.93 (d, J = 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 3.96 (t, J = 5.4 Hz, 2H), 3.35-3.28 (m, 2H), 3.32 – 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.06 (s, 3H), 2.66 (d, J = 12.2 Hz, 1H).

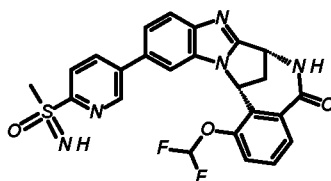
EXAMPLE 198

15

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-6-trideuteriomethyl-11-[6-(S-methylsulfonylimidoyl)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

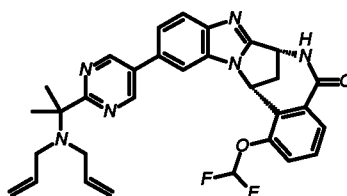
The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 159* (0.5 g, 1.03 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL, 116 mmol) and *N*-[(5-bromopyridin-2-yl)(methyl)oxido-λ6-sulfanylidene]-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide (0.42 g, 1.29 mmol) in accordance with *General Method A*. Purification by flash chromatography on silica in ethyl acetate/ DCM (gradient from 0 to 100%) and then methanol in ethyl acetate (0 to 15 %) gave the *title compound* as a white solid (50 mg, 9%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.96 (d, J = 2.2 Hz, 1H), 8.30 (m, 2H), 8.15 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 7.79 (m, 2H), 7.71 – 7.59 (m, 2H), 7.59 – 7.46 (m, 2H), 6.32 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 4.47 (s, 1H), 3.54

(dt, $J = 14.1, 7.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.22 (d, $J = 1.1$ Hz, 3H), 2.85 (d, $J = 13.8$ Hz, 1H). LC/MS
 Method 3: RT 1.45 mins (pH 10), $[M+H]^+ = 513.2$

EXAMPLE 199

5 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-[6-(S-methylsulfonylimido)pyridin-3-yl]-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

The *title compound* was prepared from *Intermediate 171* (250 mg, 0.43 mmol) and , *N*-[(5-bromopyridin-2-yl)(methyl)oxido- λ 6-sulfanylidene]-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide (216 mg, 0.652 mmol), in accordance with *General Method A*. Purification by preparative
 10 HPLC gave the *title compound* (66 mg, 31%) as a white solid. LC/MS *Method 3*: ESI $MH^+ 496$, retention time 0.76 minutes (pH 10). ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.15 (d, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 8.96 (dd, $J = 2.3, 0.8$ Hz, 1H), 8.31 (dd, $J = 8.3, 2.3$ Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, $J = 5.8, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 8.14 (dd, $J = 8.3, 0.8$ Hz, 1H), 7.95 – 7.66 (m, 3H), 7.61 (dd, $J = 8.6, 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.47 (m, 2H), 6.38 (d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 4.91 (t, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 4.47
 15 (s, 1H), 3.50 (dt, $J = 13.6, 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.21 (d, $J = 1.1$ Hz, 3H), 2.76 (d, $J = 13.4$ Hz, 1H).

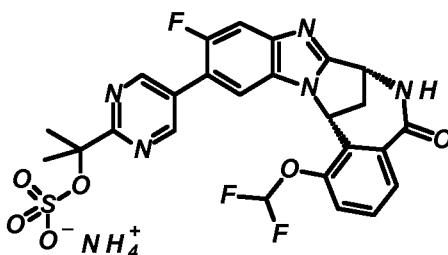
EXAMPLE 200

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-11-(2-{2-[di(prop-2-en-1-yl)amino]propan-2-yl}pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzimidazo[1,2-b][2,5]benzodiazocin-5(14H)-one

Intermediate 171 (400 mg, 0.86 mmol), *Intermediate 213* (254 mg, 0.86 mmol), *tris*(dibenzylideneacetone)-dipalladium(0) (39.2mg,0.043mmol) and tricyclohexylphosphonium tetrafluoroborate (32.5 mg, 0.086 mmol) were added to a microwave tube and dioxane (2.5 ml) was added, followed by potassium phosphate

tribasic (562 mg, 2.57 mmol) dissolved in water (0.5 ml). The mixture was degassed and refilled with nitrogen then heated to 105 °C for 2 hours. The mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (50 ml) each. The organic layer was dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by flash chromatography (silica, 0 to 10% methanol in dichloromethane) afforded *the title compound* as an off-white solid (200 mg, 42% yield). LCMS *Method 3* (ES+) RT 2.62 minutes, 557.2 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.14 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 9.03 (s, 2H), 8.23 (dd, J = 6.4, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 7.83 – 7.70 (m, 2H), 7.68 (t, JH-F = 73.4Hz, 1H), 7.60 (dd, J = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.55 – 7.45 (m, 2H), 6.37 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 5.87 – 5.60 (m, 2H), 5.05 (dt, J = 17.1, 1.8 Hz, 2H), 4.95 – 4.82 (m, 3H), 3.61 – 3.41 (m, 1H), 3.22 (dt, J = 6.0, 1.6 Hz, 4H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 1.57 (s, 6H).

EXAMPLE 201



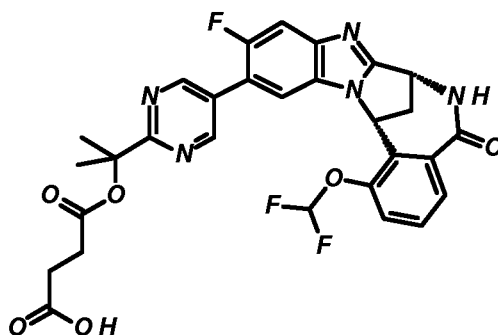
Ammonium 2-(5-((7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzo[f]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a][1,4]diazocin-11-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-yl sulfate.

A 4 mL reaction vial was charged with *Example 1* (100 mg, 0.202 mmol), sulfur trioxide trimethylamine complex (56.2 mg, 0.404 mmol) and pyridine (1 mL). The vial was closed and heated at 130 °C for 20 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC (Reveleris Prep; Detection: UV (220 nm), Column: XSelect™ CSH C18, 145x25mm, Flow: 40 mL/min, Gradient: t₀ = 5% B, t_{1min} = 5% B, t_{2min} = 20% B, t_{17min} = 60% B, t_{18min} = 100% B, Post time: 5 min 100% B, Eluent A: 10mM ammoniumbicarbonate in water (pH=9.0), Eluent B: 99% acetonitrile + 1% 10mM ammoniumbicarbonate in water in acetonitrile) to afford the *title compound* (71 mg, 61%) as a white solid after lyophilisation of the product fractions.

LCMS (*Method 9*): RT=1.69 minutes; [M-NH₄⁺]⁻ = 574.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 9.15 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.88 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 2H), 8.23 (dd, J = 7.7, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.66 (d, J = 11.5 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (dd, J = 72.2, J = 1.6 Hz, 1H), 7.57 – 7.46 (m, 3H), 7.07 (bs, 4H), 6.36 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.91 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.54 – 3.44 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 1.75 (s, 6H).

5

EXAMPLE 202

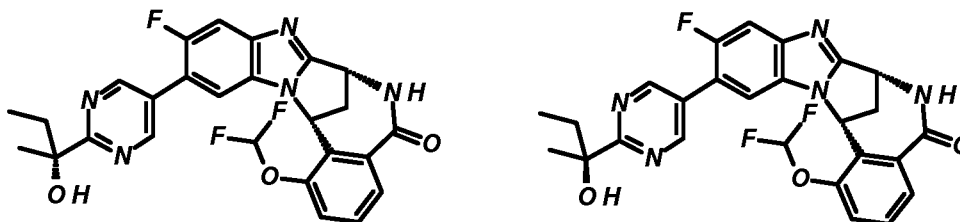
10 4-((2-(5-((7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-5-oxo-5,6,7,14-tetrahydro-7,14-methanobenzo[f]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a][1,4]diazocin-11-yl)pyrimidin-2-yl)propan-2-yl)oxy)-4-oxobutanoic acid.

A mixture of *Example 1* (1.5 g, 3.03 mmol), succinic anhydride (1.82 g, 18.2 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (555 mg, 4.54 mmol) in acetonitrile (20 mL) was heated to reflux temperature for 6 days. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between aqueous HCl solution (1M) and EtOAc and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with aqueous HCl solution (1M) and brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford a brown residue. The material was purified by flash column chromatography (silica (80 g); 5-10% MeOH in DCM) to afford the *title compound* (515 mg, 28%) as a white solid after trituration with Et_2O .

LCMS (*Method 10*): RT=3.09 minutes; $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+ = 596$.

^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 12.20 (bs, 1H), 9.16 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.92 (d, J = 1.6 Hz, 2H), 8.23 (dd, J = 6.8, 2.6 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d, J = 11.5 Hz, 1H), 7.62 (t, J = 72.5 Hz, 1H), 7.57 – 7.47 (m, 3H), 6.35 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.91 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.54 – 3.44 (m, 1H), 2.75 (d, J = 13.4 Hz, 1H), 2.58 – 2.47 (m, 2H, coincides with DMSO), 2.42 (t, J = 6.7 Hz, 2H), 1.74 (s, 6H).

25

EXAMPLE 203 and EXAMPLE 204

(7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(2-((2R*)-hydroxybutan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzo[f]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a][1,4]diazocin-5(14H)-one

5 (7R,14R)-1-(difluoromethoxy)-10-fluoro-11-(2-((2S*)-hydroxybutan-2-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl)-6,7-dihydro-7,14-methanobenzo[f]benzo[4,5]imidazo[1,2-a][1,4]diazocin-5(14H)-one

1M Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (8.46 ml, 8.46 mmol) was added to a solution of *Intermediate 216* (0.176 g, 0.28 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature over 15 days.

- 10 Water (50 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x 50 ml). The organic phase was washed with brine (50 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting crude residue was purified by SiO₂ flash chromatography with DCM/MeOH (98/2) as eluent to afford the expected product as a mixture of diastereoisomers.
- 15 The mixture was purified by preparative chiral HPLC using Chiralcel OD 10μm 250 x 30mm with EtOH/MeOH/Triethylamine (50/50/0.1) as eluent and with 45 ml/min flow in 18 min to afford each pure diastereoisomer.

Diastereomer A Example 203:

- 12.8 mg: Analytical Chiral HPLC Chiralcel OD 10μm 250 x 4.6mm with
- 20 EtOH/MeOH/Triethylamine (50/50/0.1) as eluant and with 1 ml/min flow over 15 minutes with RT = 7.7 min.

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES⁺) RT 1.04 min., 510 [M+H]⁺.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 0.75 (t, J=7 Hz, 3 H), 1.50 (s, 3 H), 1.80-2.00 (m, 2 H), 2.75 (d, J=13 Hz, 1 H), 3.49 (m, 1 H), 4.90 (t, J=7 Hz, 1 H), 5.00 (s, 1 H), 6.35 (d, J=7

Hz, 1 H), 7.50 (m, 2 H), 7.56 (d, J=6 Hz, 1 H), 7.62 (t, J=73 Hz, 1 H), 7.68 (d, J=9 Hz, 1 H), 8.23 (m, 1 H), 8.97 (d, J=2 Hz, 1 H), 9.15 (d, J=6 Hz, 1 H).

Diastereomer B Example 204:

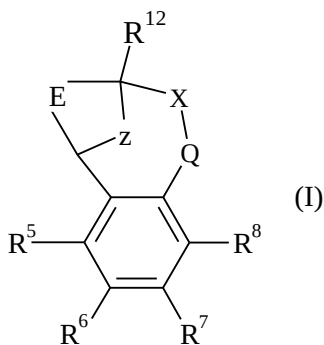
- 10.7 mg: Analytical Chiral HPLC Chiralcel OD 10 μ m 250 x 4.6mm with
5 EtOH/MeOH/Triethylamine (50/50/0.1) as eluent and with a 1 ml/min flow rate over 15 minutes with RT = 12.9 minutes.

LCMS (*Method 20*, ES+) RT 1.04 min., 510 [M+H]⁺.

- ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 0.75 (t, J=7 Hz, 3 H) ; 1.50 (s, 3 H) ; 1.80 à 2.00 (m, 2 H) ; 2.75 (d, J=13 Hz, 1 H) ; 3.49 (m, 1 H) ; 4.90 (t, J=7 Hz, 1 H) ; 5.00 (s, 1 H) ; 6.35 (d, J=7 Hz, 1 H) ; 7.50 (m, 2 H) ; 7.56 (d, J=6 Hz, 1 H) ; 7.62 (t, J=73 Hz, 1 H) ; 7.68 (d, J=9 Hz, 1 H) ; 8.23 (m, 1 H) ; 8.97 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1 H) ; 9.15 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H).
10

CLAIMS:

1. A compound of formula (I) or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

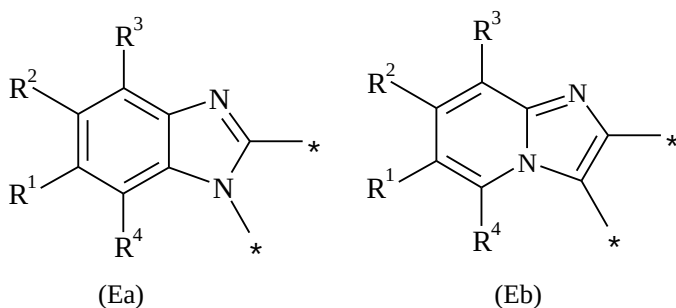


5 wherein

- X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-, -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -CO-N(R^f)-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, -SO₂-N(R^f)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-, -CH₂-CH₂-, -O-CH₂-, -CH₂-O-, -S-CH₂-, -SO-CH₂-, -SO₂-CH₂-, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -CH₂-N(R^g)-, -S(O)(NR^f)-CH₂-, -CH₂-S(O)(NR^f)-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- 10

Z represents methylene;

E represents a fused heteroaromatic ring system selected from the groups of formula (Ea) and (Eb),



15

wherein the asterisk (*) represents the site of attachment of E to the remainder of the molecule;

- R¹ represents hydrogen, halogen, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, -OR^a, -SR^a, -SOR^a, -SO₂R^a, -NR^bR^c, -NR^cCOR^d, -NR^cCO₂R^d, -NHCONR^bR^c, -NR^cSO₂R^e, -COR^d, -CO₂R^d, -CONR^bR^c, -SO₂NR^bR^c, or -S(O)(N-R^b)R^e; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇
- 20

- cycloalkyl, C₄₋₇ cycloalkenyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkenyl, heteroaryl, heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-aryl-, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₇)cycloalkenyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₉)bicycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl-heteroaryl-, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-heteroaryl-, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl- or (C₄₋₉)spiroheterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R¹ represents (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl-, which group may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- 10 R² represents hydrogen, halogen, cyano, nitro, hydroxy, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy or -OR^a; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- R⁵ and R⁸ independently represent hydrogen, halogen, hydroxy, cyano, trifluoromethyl, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, -OR^a, or C₁₋₆ alkylsulphonyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- 15 R⁶ and R⁷ independently represent hydrogen, halogen, trifluoromethyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;
- R¹² represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 20 R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;
- R^b and R^c independently represent hydrogen or trifluoromethyl; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or
- 25 R^b and R^c, when taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are both attached, represent a heterocyclic moiety selected from azetidin-1-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, oxazolidin-3-yl, isoxazolidin-2-yl, thiazolidin-3-yl, isothiazolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl, morpholin-4-yl, thiomorpholin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, homopiperidin-1-yl, homomorpholin-4-yl, homopiperazin-1-yl, (imino)(oxo)thiazinan-4-yl, (oxo)thiazinan-4-yl and
- 30

(dioxo)thiazinan-4-yl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R^d represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, aryl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

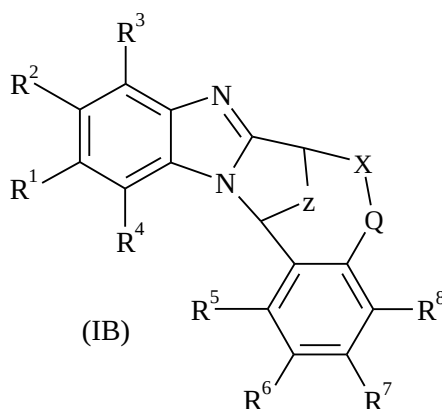
R^e represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents;

R^f represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; and

R^g represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ heterocycloalkyl, -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, or -SO₂-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R^g represents -CO-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl or -SO₂-heteroaryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; or R^g represents heteroaryl or (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

2. A compound as claimed in claim 1 wherein R¹² represents hydrogen.

3. A compound as claimed in claim 1 represented by formula (IB), or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

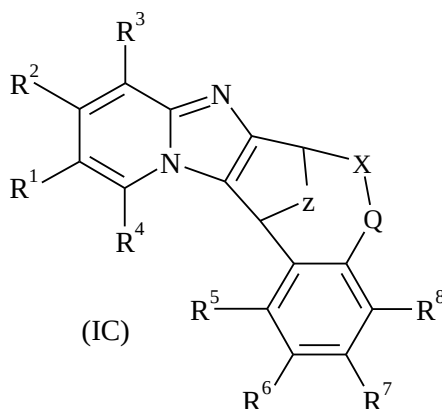


wherein

Z, -X-Q-, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^g and R^f are as defined in Claim 1.

4. A compound as claimed in claim 1 represented by formula (IC), or an *N*-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

5



10 wherein Z, -X-Q-, R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , R^g and R^f are as defined in Claim 1.

5. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein

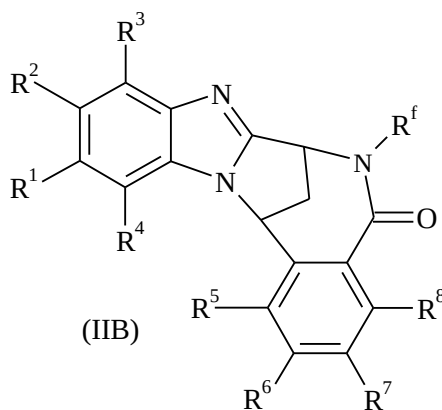
-X-Q- represents -O-, -O-C(O)-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, -SO₂-; or -N(R^g)-, -N(R^f)-CO-, -N(R^f)-SO₂-, O-CH₂-, -, CH₂-S-, -CH₂-SO-, -CH₂-SO₂-, -N(R^g)-CH₂-, -N(R^f)-C(S)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, -O-C(=CH₂)- or -S(=N-CN)-, any of which groups may be optionally substituted;

R^f represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, which group may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents; and

R^g represents hydrogen; or C₁₋₆ alkyl, -CO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SO₂-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CO-(C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, -SO₂-(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, -SO₂-aryl, -SO₂-heteroaryl, heteroaryl or (C₂₋₆)alkoxycarbonyl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.

6. A compound as claimed in claim 5 wherein -X-Q- include -O-, -O-CO-, -O-C(CH₃-CN)-, -S-, -SO-, SO₂-, -NH-, -N(CO-CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-, -N(CH₂-CO-O-CH₂-CH₃)-, -N[(CO-CH₂-(3,7-dioxa-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)]-, -N[CO-(azetidin-3-yl)]-, -N[CO-(methylsulphonyl)azetidin-3-yl)]-, -N(CH₂-COOH), -N[(tert-butyl)(dimethyl)silyloxyethyl]-, -N(SO₂-pyridine-3-yl)-, -N-(SO₂-cyclopropyl)-, -N(CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-, -N(SO₂-phenyl)-, -N[SO₂-(6-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)]-, -NH-CO-, -N(CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂CH₃)-CO-, -N(CH(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CH₂-COOH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CF₃)-CO-, -N(CH₂-CH₂-OH)-CO-, -N(CH₂-C(OH)(CH₃)₂)-CO-, -N(CD₃)-CO-, -

- NH-CH₂-- N(CH₂-COOH)-CH₂-, -NH-CH(CF₃)-, -NH-CH(CH₃)-, -NH-C(S)-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)-CH₂-, -N(CO-CH₃)-CH(CH₃)-, -N=S(O)(CH₃)-, O-CH(CF₃)-, -CH(COOC₂H₅)-S-, -CH₂-S(O)-, -CH₂-S(O)₂-, -CH(CH(OH)(CH₃)₂)-S-, -CH(CH₂OH)-S-, -O-C(=CH₂)-, -N[S(O)₂-(pyridin-1H-2-one)], -NH-S(O)₂-, -N(pyrimidinyl)-, -N(COOC₂H₅)-, -S(=N-CN)-, -N(SO₂-CH₃)- or -N(C₂H₅)-CO-.
- 5 7. A compound as claimed in Claim 5 wherein -X-Q- represents represents -N(R^f)-C(O)- and R^f is as defined in Claim 5.
8. A compound of formula (IIB) or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutical acceptable salt thereof,



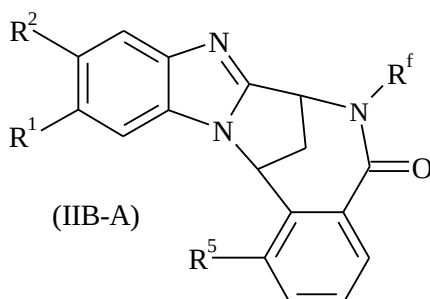
10

wherein

R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, and R^f are as defined in Claim 1.

9. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R¹ represents halogen or cyano; or aryl, heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₄₋₉)heterobicycloalkyl-heteroaryl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl, or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkenyl-aryl, any of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.
10. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R¹ represents aryl or heteroaryl, either of which groups may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents.
11. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R² represents hydrogen or halogen.
12. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R³ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.

13. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R⁴ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.
14. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R⁵ represents halogen, -OR^a, difluoromethoxy or trifluoromethoxy; and
- 5 R^a represents C₁₋₆ alkyl.
15. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R⁶ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl.
16. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R⁷ represents hydrogen or trifluoromethyl.
- 10 17. A compound as claimed in any preceding claim wherein R⁸ represents hydrogen, halogen or trifluoromethyl.
18. A compound as claimed in Claim 1 represented by formula (IIB-A), or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,



15 wherein

R¹ is as defined in claim 10;

R² is as defined in claim 11;

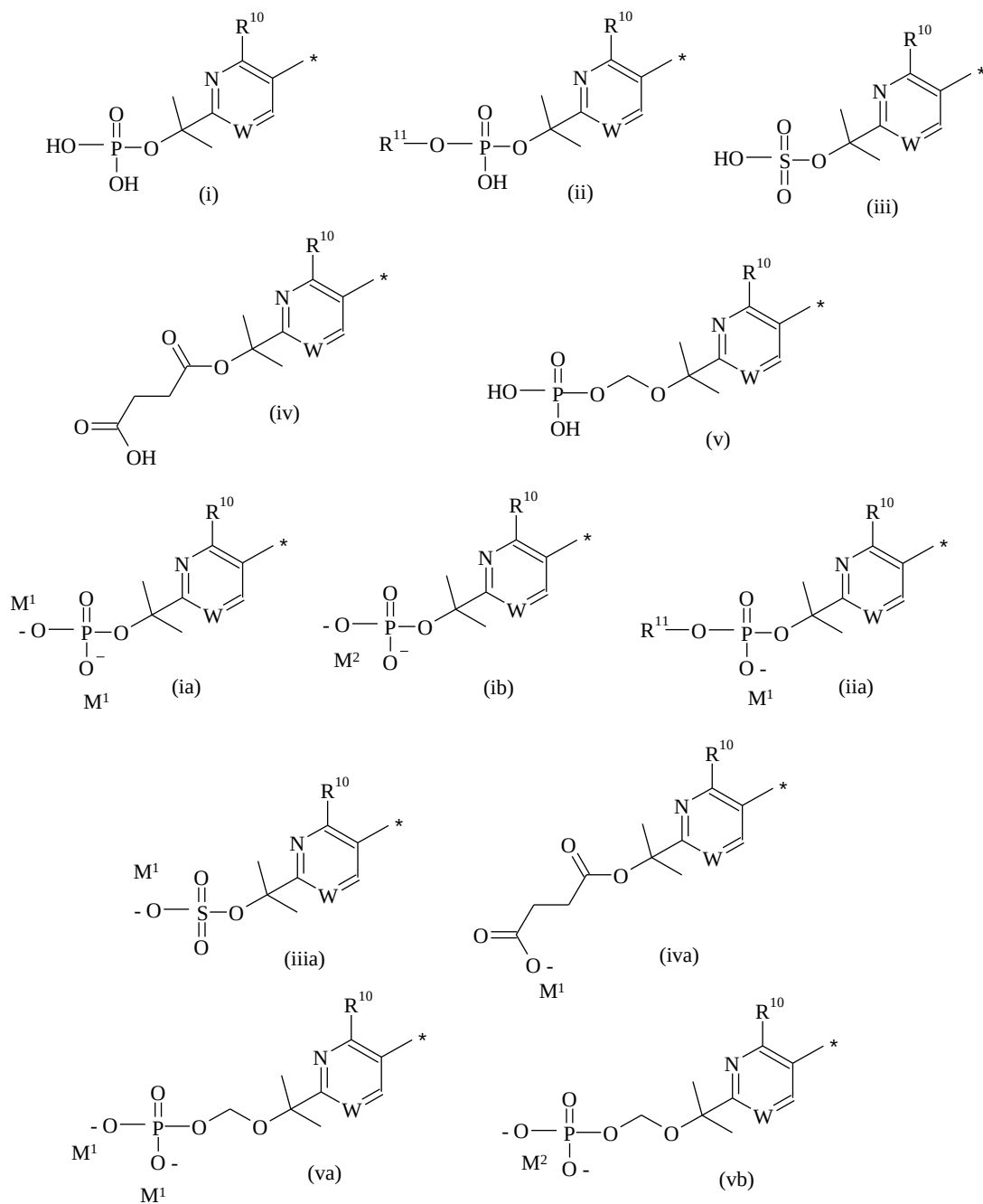
R⁵ is as defined in claim 14; and

R^f are as defined in Claim 5.

20

19. A compound as claimed in any one of the preceding claims wherein R¹ represents a substituted heteroaryl selected from the groups represented by formula (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v), and their respective corresponding salts represented by formula (ia), (ib),

(iia), (iiia), (iva), (va), and (vb) :



wherein

the asterisk (*) represents the site of attachment of R^1 to the remainder of the molecule;

5 R^{10} represents hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl;

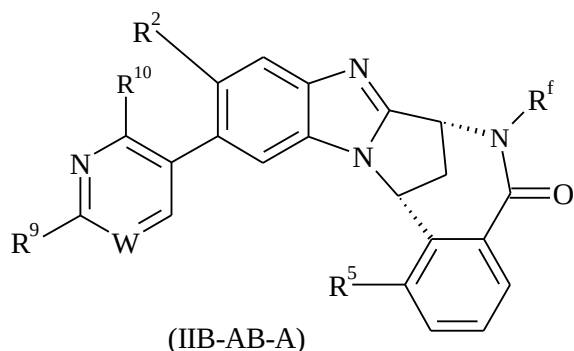
R^{11} represents C_{1-6} alkyl;

W represents N or C-H;

M^1 represents a monovalent cation; and

M² represents a divalent cation.

20. A compound as claimed in claim 18 represented by formula (IIB-AB-A), an N-oxide thereof, or pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,



5 wherein

R⁹ represents amino(C₁₋₆)alkyl, hydroxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl, or (C₁₋₆) alkoxy(C₁₋₆)alkyl;

R¹⁰ represents hydrogen or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R², R⁵ and R^f are as defined in claim 18; and

W is as defined in claim 19.

10 21. A compound as claimed in claim 19 or in claim 20 wherein W represents N.

22. A compound as claimed in claim 19 or in claim 20 wherein R¹⁰ represents hydrogen.

23. A compound as claimed in claim 20 wherein R⁹ represents 2-hydroxy-prop-2-yl.

24. A compound as claimed in any one of the preceding claims wherein R² represents fluoro.

15 25. A compound as claimed in any one of the preceding claims wherein R⁵ represents difluoromethoxy.

26. A compound as claimed in any one of the preceding claims wherein R^f represents hydrogen.

20 27. A compound as claimed in claim 1 as herein specifically disclosed in any one of the Examples.

28. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of the preceding claims, or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in therapy.

29. A compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of the preceding claims or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for use in the treatment and/or prevention of an inflammatory or autoimmune disorder, a neurological or neurodegenerative disorder, pain or a nociceptive disorder, a cardiovascular disorder, a metabolic disorder, an ocular disorder, or an oncological disorder.
30. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula (I) as claimed in any one of the preceding claims, or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
31. The use of a compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 1 or an N-oxide thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament useful for the treatment of an inflammatory or autoimmune disorder, a neurological or neurodegenerative disorder, pain or a nociceptive disorder, a cardiovascular disorder, a metabolic disorder, an ocular disorder, or an oncological disorder.